

```

        skpz
        return

5         bsf    BMW_Recv_STOP_msg
        return

```

The code portion shown in **Table 1** receives a STOP command issued by a BMW stereo, in a format proprietary to BMW stereos. Preferably, the received command is stored in a first buffer, such as BMW_Recv_buff. The procedure

10 “Encode_RD_stop_msg” repetitively applies an XOR function to the STOP command, resulting in a new command that is in a format compatible with the after-market CD player. The command is then stored in an output buffer for dispatching to the CD player.

Additionally, the present invention contains logic for retrieving information

15 from an after-market audio device, and converting same into a format compatible with the car stereo for display thereby. Such logic can be applied to convert any data from the external device for display on the car stereo. For purposes of illustration, a sample code portion is shown in **Table 2**, below, for converting data from a CD changer into a format understandable by a BMW car stereo:

20 *Table 2*

```

;      =====
;      Changer replies with STOP confirmation
;      Encoding 180A68390002003F0001027D message
;      =====

25     Load_CD_stop_msg:
        movlw 0x18
        movwf BMW_Send_buff

30         movlw 0x0A
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+1

        movlw 0x68
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+2

35         movlw 0x39

```

```

movwf BMW_Send_buff+3
off      movlw 0x00          ;current status_XX=00, power
5      movwf BMW_Send_buff+4
off      movlw 0x02          ;current status_YY=02, power
10     movwf BMW_Send_buff+5
        clrfsf BMW_Send_buff+6 ;separate field, always =0
        movfw BMW_MM_stat      ;current status_MM , magazine
15     movwf BMW_Send_buff+7
        clrfsf BMW_Send_buff+8 ;separate field, always =0
20     movfw BMW_DD_stat      ;current status_DD , current
disc     movwf BMW_Send_buff+9
        movfw BMW_TT_stat      ;current status_TT , current
25     movwf BMW_Send_buff+10
        xorwfm BMW_Send_buff+9,W ;calculate check sum
        xorwfm BMW_Send_buff+8,W
        xorwfm BMW_Send_buff+7,W
30     xorwfm BMW_Send_buff+6,W
        xorwfm BMW_Send_buff+5,W
        xorwfm BMW_Send_buff+4,W
        xorwfm BMW_Send_buff+3,W
        xorwfm BMW_Send_buff+2,W
35     xorwfm BMW_Send_buff+1,W
        xorwfm BMW_Send_buff,W
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+11 ;store check sum
        movlw D'12'           ;12 bytes total
40     movwf BMW_Send_cnt
        bsf BMW_Send_on       ;ready to send
        return

```

The code portion shown in **Table 2** receives a STOP confirmation message from the CD player, in a format proprietary to the CD player. Preferably, the received command is stored in a first buffer, such as BMW_Send_buff. The procedure "Load_CD_stop_msg" retrieves status information, magazine information, current disc, and current track information from the CD changer, and constructs a response containing this information. Then, a checksum is calculated

and stored in another buffer. The response and checksum are in a format compatible with the BMW stereo, and are ready for dispatching to the car stereo.

The present invention also includes logic for converting signals from an OEM car stereo system for use with a digital media device such as an MP3, MP4, or Apple iPod player. Shown below are code samples for allowing commands and data to be exchanged between a Ford car stereo and an Apple iPod device:

Table 3

```

//decoding Ford "play" command :41-C0-80-CA-01+
10     if ( ACP_rx_ready == ON ) {
        ACP_rx_ready = OFF;
        ACP_rx_taddr = ACP_rx_buff[1];
        ACP_rx_saddr = ACP_rx_buff[2];
        ACP_rx_data1 = ACP_rx_buff[3];
15     ACP_rx_data2 = ACP_rx_buff[4];
        ACP_rx_data3 = ACP_rx_buff[5];
        if ( (ACP_rx_saddr == 0x80) ) {
            switch ( ACP_rx_taddr ) {
20                 case 0xC0:
                    if ( ACP_rx_data1 == 0xCA)
                    {
                        if ( ACP_rx_data2
25     == 0x01 ) {
                            flags.ACP_play_req = 1;
                                }
                                break;
                                }
                                break;
30     }
        }
    }

```

In the code portion shown in **Table 3**, a "Play" command selected by a user at the controls of a Ford OEM car stereo is received, and portions of the command are stored in one or more buffer arrays. Then, as shown below in **Table 4**, the decoded portions of the command stored in the one or more buffer arrays are used to construct a "Play/Pause" command in a format compatible with the Apple iPod device, and the command is sent to the Apple iPod for execution thereby:

Table 4

```

// encoding iPod "play/pause" command 0xFF 0x55 0x03 0x02 0x00
0x01 0xFA
5         if ( iPod_play_req == ON ) {
           iPod_play_req = OFF;
           iPod_tx_data[0] = 0x55;
           iPod_tx_data[1] = 0x03;
           iPod_tx_data[2] = 0x02;
10        iPod_tx_data[3] = 0x00;
           iPod_tx_data[4] = 0x01;
           iPod_tx_counter = 5;
           iPod_tx_ready = ON;
15        }

```

While the code portions shown in **Tables 1-2** are implemented using assembler language, and the code portions shown in **Tables 3-4** are implemented using the C programming language, it is to be expressly understood that any low or high level language known in the art could be utilized without departing from the spirit or scope of the invention. It will be appreciated that various other code portions can be developed for converting signals from any after-market or OEM car stereo for use by an after-market external audio device, and vice versa.

FIG. 5 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **300** for allowing a user to switch between an after-market audio device, and one or more auxiliary input sources. As was discussed earlier, the present invention allows a user to switch from one or more connected audio devices, such as an external CD player/changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, DAB receiver, or the like, and activate one or more auxiliary input sources. A selection sequence, initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo, allows such switching. Beginning in step **302**, the buttons of the control panel are monitored. In step **304**, a determination is made as to whether a "Track Up" button or sequence has been

initiated by the user. The "Track Up" button or sequence can for a CD player, MP3 player, or any other device. If a negative determination is made, step 306 is invoked, wherein the sensed button or sequence is processed in accordance with the present invention and dispatched to the external audio device for execution.

5 Then, step 302 is re-invoked, so that additional buttons or sequences can be monitored.

In the event that a positive determination is made in step 304, step 308 is invoked, wherein the present invention waits for a predetermined period of time while monitoring the control panel buttons for additional buttons or sequences. In

10 a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the predetermined period of time is 750 milliseconds, but of course, other time durations are considered within the spirit and scope of the present invention. In step 310, a determination is made as to whether the user has initiated a "Track Down" button or sequence at the control panel of the car stereo within the predetermined time period. These sequences can

15 be used for a CD player, MP3 player, or any other device. If a negative determination is made, step 312 is invoked. In step 312, a determination is made as to whether a timeout has occurred (*e.g.*, whether the predetermined period of time has expired). If a negative determination is made, step 308 is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made, step 312 invokes step 306, so that

20 any buttons or key sequences initiated by the user that are not a "Track Down" command are processed in accordance with the present invention and dispatched to the audio device for execution.

In the event that a positive determination is made in step 310 (a "Track Down" button or sequence has been initiated within the predetermined time

period), then step 314 is invoked. In step 314, the audio channels of the audio device are disconnected, and then step 316 is invoked. In step 316, the logic of block 198 of FIG. 4d (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is invoked, so that the user can select from one of the auxiliary input sources in accordance with the present invention. Thus, at this point in time, the system has switched, under user control, from the audio device to a desired auxiliary input. Although the foregoing description of the process 300 has been described with reference to “Track Up” and “Track Down” buttons or commands initiated by the user, it is to be expressly understood that any desired key sequence, keystroke, button depress, or any other action, can be sensed in accordance with the present invention and utilized for switching modes.

When operating in auxiliary mode, the present invention provides an indication on the display of the car stereo corresponding to such mode. For example, the CD number could be displayed as “1”, and the track number displayed as “99,” thus indicating to the user that the system is operating in auxiliary mode and that audio and data is being supplied from an auxiliary input source. Of course, any other indication could be generated and displayed on the display of the car stereo, such as a graphical display (*e.g.*, an icon) or textual prompt.

FIG. 6 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at 320, for determining and handling various device types connected to the auxiliary input ports of the invention. The present invention can sense device types connected to the auxiliary input ports, and can integrate same with the car stereo using the procedures discussed earlier. Beginning in step 322, the control panel buttons of

the car stereo are monitored for a button or sequence initiated by the user corresponding to an auxiliary input selection (such as the disc number method discussed earlier with reference to **FIG. 4d**). In response to an auxiliary input selection, step **324** is invoked, wherein the type of device connected to the selected auxiliary input is sensed by the present invention. Then, step **326** is invoked.

In step **326**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is a CD player/changer. If a positive determination is made, step **328** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **108** of **FIG. 4a** (the CD handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the CD player is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **326**, then step **330** is invoked. In step **330**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is an MP3 player. If a positive determination is made, step **334** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **138** of **FIG. 4b** (the MP3 handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the MP3 player is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **330**, then step **336** is invoked. In step **336**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is a satellite receiver or a DAB receiver. If a positive determination is made, step **338** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **168** of **FIG. 4c** (the satellite/DAB receiver handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the satellite receiver is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **336**, step **322** is re-invoked, so that additional auxiliary input selections can be monitored and processed accordingly. Of course, process **320** can be expanded to allow other types of devices connected to the auxiliary inputs of the present invention to be integrated with the car stereo.

The present invention can be expanded for allowing video information generated by an external device to be integrated with the display of an existing OEM or after-market car stereo. In such a mode, the invention accepts RGB (red/green/blue) input signals from the external device, and converts same to composite signals. The composite signals are then forwarded to the car stereo for display thereby, such as on an LCD panel of the stereo. Additionally, the present invention can accept composite input signals from an external device, and convert same to RGB signals for display on the car stereo. Further, information from the external device can be formatted and presented to the user in one or more graphical user interfaces or menus capable of being viewed and manipulated on the car stereo.

FIG. 7a is a perspective view of a docking station **400** according to the present invention for retaining an audio device within a car. Importantly, the present invention can be adapted to allow portable audio devices to be integrated with an existing car stereo. The docking station **400** allows such portable devices to be conveniently docked and integrated with the car stereo. The docking station **400** includes a top portion **402** hingedly connected at a rear portion **408** to a bottom portion **404**, preferably in a clam-like configuration. A portable audio device **410**, such as the SKYFI radio distributed by DELPHI, Inc., is physically and electrically connected with the docking portion **412**, and contained within the station **100**. A clasp **406** can be provided for holding the top and bottom portions in a closed position to retain the device **410**. Optionally, a video device could also be docked using the docking station **400**, and tabs **413** can be provided for holding the docking station **400** in place against a portion of a car. Conceivably, the docking

station 400 could take any form, such as a sleeve-like device for receiving and retaining a portable audio device and having a docking portion for electrically and mechanically mating with the audio device.

FIG. 7b is an end view showing the rear portion 408 of the docking station 400 of FIG. 7a. A hinge 414 connects the top portion and the bottom portions of the docking station 400. A data port 416 is provided for interfacing with the audio device docked within the station 400, and is in electrical communication therewith. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the data port 416 is an RS-232 serial or USB data port that allows for the transmission of data with the audio device, and which connects with the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating the audio device with an OEM or after-market car stereo. Any known bus technology can be utilized to interface with any portable audio or video device contained within the docking station 400, such as FIREWIRE, D2B, MOST, CAN, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, or any other bus technology known in the art. It should be noted that the present invention can be operated without a docking station, *i.e.*, a portable audio or video device can be plugged directly into the present invention for integration with a car stereo or video system.

FIGS. 8a-8b are perspective views of another embodiment of the docking station of the present invention, indicated generally at 500, which includes the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at 540, incorporated therewith. As shown in FIG. 8a, the docking station 500 includes a base portion 530, a bottom member 515 interconnected with the base portion 530 at an edge thereof, and a top member 510 hingedly interconnected at

an edge to the base portion 530. The top member 510 and the bottom member 515 define a cavity for docking and storing a portable audio device 520, which could be a portable CD player, MP3 player, satellite (*e.g.*, XM, SIRIUS, or other type) tuner, or any other portable audio device. The docking station 500 would be
5 configured to accommodate a specific device, such as an IPOD from Apple Computer, Inc., or any other portable device.

The multimedia device integration system 540, in the form of a circuit board, is housed within the base portion 530 and performs the integration functions discussed herein for integrating the portable device 520 with an existing car stereo
10 or car video system. The integration system 540 is in communication with the portable device 520 via a connector 550, which is connected to a port on the device 520, and a cable 555 interconnected between the connector 550 and the integration system 540. The connector 550 could be any suitable connector and can vary according to the device type. For example, a MOLEX, USB, or any other
15 connector could be used, depending on the portable device. The integration system 540 is electrically connected with a car stereo or car video system by cable 560. Alternatively, the integration system could wirelessly communicate with the car stereo or car video system. A transmitter could be used at the integration system to communicate with a receiver at the car stereo or car video system. Where
20 automobiles include Bluetooth systems, such systems can be used to communicate with the integration system. As can be readily appreciated, the docking station 500 provides a convenient device for docking, storing, and integrating a portable device for use with a car stereo. Further, the docking station 500 could be positioned at

any desired location within a vehicle, including, but not limited to, the vehicle trunk.

As shown in **FIG. 8b**, the top member **510** can be opened in the general direction indicated by arrow **A** to allow for access to the portable audio device **520**.

5 In this fashion, the device **520** can be quickly accessed for any desired purpose, such as for inserting and removing the device **520** from the docking station **500**, as well as for providing access to the controls of the device **520**.

FIG. 9 is a block diagram showing the components of the docking station of **FIGS. 8a-8b**. The docking station **500** houses both a portable audio or video
10 device **520** and a multimedia device integration system (or interface) **540**. The shape and configuration of the docking station **500** can be varied as desired without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

The integration system of the present invention provides for control of a portable audio or video device, or other device, through the controls of the car
15 stereo or video system system. As such, controls on the steering wheel, where present, may also be used to control the portable audio device or other device. Further, in all embodiments of the present invention, communication between the after-market device and a car stereo or video system can be accomplished using known wireless technologies, such as Bluetooth.

20 **FIG. 10** is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at **600**, wherein the interface **630** is incorporated within a car stereo or car video system **610**. The interface **630** is in electrical communication with the control panel buttons **620**, display **615**, and associated control circuitry **625** of the car

stereo or video system 610. The interface 630 could be manufactured on a separate printed circuit board positioned within the stereo or video system 610, or on one or more existing circuit boards of the stereo or video system 610. An after-market device 635 can be put into electrical communication with the interface 630 via a port or connection on the car stereo or video system 610, and integrated for use with the car stereo or video system 610.

The device 635 can be controlled using the control panel buttons 620 of the car stereo or video system 610, and information from the device 635 is formatted by the interface 630 and displayed in the display 615 of the car stereo or video system 610. Additionally, control commands generated at the car stereo or car video device 610 are converted by the interface 630 into a format (protocol) compatible with the multimedia device 635, and are dispatched thereto for execution. A plurality of multimedia devices could be intergrated using the interface 630, as well as one or more auxiliary input sources 640. The after-market device 635 could comprise any audio, video, or telecommunications device, including, but not limited to, a CD player, CD changer, digital media player (*e.g.*, MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, or any other player), satellite radio (*e.g.*, XM, Sirius, Delphi, etc.), video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), cellular telephone, or any other type of device or combinations thereof. Additionally, one or more interfaces could be connected to the interface 630 (“daisy-chained”) to allow multiple products to be integrated. The device 600 could include one or more of the circuits disclosed in FIGS. 3a-3d and modified depending upon the type of the after-market device 635.

FIG. 11a is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **645**, wherein a cellular telephone **670** is intergrated for use with a car stereo. The telephone **670** is in electrical communication with the interface **665**, which receives data from the cellular telephone and formats same for displaying on the display **650** of the car stereo or video system **660**. Commands for controlling the telephone **670** can be entered using the control panel buttons **655** of the car stereo or video system **660**. The commands are processed by the interface **665**, converted into a format (protocol) compatible with the telephone **670**, and transmitted to the telephone **670** for processing thereby. Additionally, audio from the telephone **670** can be channeled to the car stereo or video system **660** via the interface **665** and played through the speakers of the car stereo or video system **660**. For example, if the telephone **670** is provided with the ability to download songs or music, such songs or music can be selected using the car stereo or video system **660** and played therethrough using the interface **665**. It should be noted that control of the cellular telephone could be provided using one or more displays (*e.g.*, LCD) of a car video system. Moreover, control of the cellular telephone **670** is not limited to the use of buttons on the car stereo or video ststem **660**, and indeed, a software or graphically-driven menu or interface can be used to control the cellular telephone. The device **645** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed in **FIGS. 3a-3d** and modified for use with the cellular telephone **670**.

FIG. 11b is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **647**, for integrating a cellular telephone with a car radio. Beginning in step **649**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a

negative determination is made, step 651 is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step 653 is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step 649 is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step 653, a cellular telephone handling process, indicated as block 661, is invoked. Beginning in step 654, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a cellular telephone is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step 657, the audio channels of the cellular telephone are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the cellular telephone to be played through the car stereo. In step 659, data is retrieved by the present invention from the cellular telephone, such as song information corresponding to one or more songs downloaded onto the cellular telephone. After steps 654, 657, and 659 have been executed, control passes to step 663.

In steps 663, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for cellular telephone operational commands. In step 664, if a command is not detected, step 663 is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step 663 invokes step 667, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the cellular telephone connected to the present invention. Once the command has been formatted, step 669 is invoked, wherein the formatted

command is transmitted to the cellular telephone and executed. Step 654 is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 12a is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at 675, wherein an after-market video device 695 is integrated for use with a car video system 685. The after-market video device 695 could comprise a portable DVD player, digital video (DV) camera, digital camera, or any other video device. The interface 690 receives output video signals from the device 695, and converts same for display on one or more displays 680 (e.g., LCD seat-back displays in a minivan, fold-down displays mounted on the roof of a vehicle, vehicle navigation displays, etc.) of the car video system 685. The interface 690 could convert between composite and red/green/blue (RGB) video signals, and vice versa, using commercially-available video format conversion chips such as the TDA8315, TDA4570, TDA3567, TDA3566A, and TDA3569A video conversion chips manufactured by Philips Corp., and the AL251 and AL250 video conversion chips manufactured by Averlogic Technologies, Inc., or any other suitable video conversion chips. Commands issued by a user using the car video system 685 or display(s) 680 for controlling the device 695 are received by the interface 690, converted into a format compatible with the device 695, and transmitted thereto for processing. The device 675 could include one or more of the circuits disclosed in **FIGS. 3a-3d** and modified for use with the video device 695.

FIG. 12b is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at 671, for integrating an after-market video device with a car video system. Beginning in step 673, a determination is made as to whether the existing car video

system is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step 674 is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car video system to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step 677 is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car video system is in a
5 state responsive to signals external to the car video system. If a negative determination is made, step 673 is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step 677, an after-market video device handling process, indicated as block 687, is invoked. Beginning in step 679, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external
10 device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car video system. Importantly, this signal prevents the car video system from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step 681, the audio and video channels of the after-market device are connected (channeled) to the car video system, allowing audio and
15 video from the after-market device to be played through the car video system. In step 684, the display(s) of the car video system are updated with data from the after-market device. After steps 679, 681, and 684 have been executed, control passes to step 683.

In step 683, the present invention monitors the car video system for after-
20 market video device operational commands. In step 689, if a command is not detected, step 683 is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step 689 invokes step 691, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the after-market video device connected to the present invention. Once the command has been formatted, step 693 is invoked, wherein the formatted

command is transmitted to the after-market video device and executed. Step 679 is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 13a is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system 710 of the present invention, wherein configuration jumpers 720 and protocol conversion software blocks 724 are provided for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface. The jumpers 720 can be set to a plurality of different settings, each of which corresponds to an after-market device of a specific type (*e.g.*, CD changer, CD player, digital media player, satellite radio, video device, cellular telephone, etc.) or from a specific manufacturer. Additionally, the jumpers 720 can be used to specify one or more device or manufacturer types for the car stereo or video system 705. The settings of the configuration jumpers 720 correspond to one or more protocol conversion software blocks 724 stored in memory (*e.g.*, programmable flash memory, ROM, EEPROM, etc.) 725 of the interface 710. Each of the software blocks 724 controls the interface circuitry 715 and contains instructions for converting data from the device 707 into a format compatible with the car stereo or video system 705, and vice versa. For example, a first block could contain software for allowing communication between an Apple iPod and an in-dash car stereo manufactured by Sony, and a second block could contain software for allowing communication between a DVD player and a car video system. Any desired number of blocks could be stored in the memory 725 and can be selected as desired by the user via configuration jumpers 720. As such, a single interface 710 can be used for integrating numerous devices of various types and manufactures for use with one or more car stereo or video systems. The device 710 could

include one or more of the circuits shown in **FIGS. 3a-3d**, with modifications depending upon the device types of the devices **705** and **707**.

FIG. 13b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein wiring harnesses **727** and **728** and protocol conversion software blocks **729** are provided for integrating multimedia devices of various types using a single interface **726**. In this embodiment, the electrical configurations (pinouts) of each of the harnesses **727** and **728** correspond to car stereo / video systems and after-market devices of specific types and made by specific manufacturers (*e.g.*, harness **727** could correspond to a BMW car stereo, and harness **728** could correspond to an ALPINE satellite tuner). The electrical configurations (pinouts) of the harnesses are utilized by the interface **726** to retrieve a specific protocol conversion software block **729** that allows communication between the devices. The interface **726** could be provided with a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks pre-loaded into memory in the interface, and could be provided with any desired harnesses. The interface **726** could include one or more of the circuits shown in **FIGS. 3a-3d**, with modification depending upon the device types of the devices attached to the wiring harnesses **727** and **728**.

FIG. 14 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **730**, of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface. In step **735**, the interface determines types of devices that are connected thereto, including the car stereo or video system and one or more after-market devices to be integrated therewith. This could be achieved by the configuration jumper settings

or the harness types connected to the interface and discussed with respect to **FIGS. 13a and 13b**. Then, in step 740, a protocol conversion software block is selected from blocks of conversion software (*e.g.*, from the blocks 725 and 729 shown in **FIGS. 13a and 13b**). In step 745, instructions are converted using the selected
5 conversion block to allow the car stereo or video system to operate with the multimedia device.

FIG. 15 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at 750, of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for allowing a user to specify one or more after-market device types for integration
10 using a single interface. In step 770, a user is provided with one or more lists of devices to be integrated, which are displayed on the display 760 of the car stereo or video device 755. Then, in step 775, using the buttons 765 of the car video device, the user can specify the type of multimedia device to be integrated (*e.g.*, by scrolling through the lists). Additionally, the device type could be specified using
15 a graphical or software menu displayed on the car stereo or car video system. In step 780, a determination is made as to whether a timeout has occurred (*e.g.*, the user has not selected a device type within a predetermined period of time). If a positive determination is made, step 785 occurs, wherein a protocol conversion software block is selected from memory corresponding to the last device type
20 displayed by the car stereo or video system. If a negative determination is made, step 790 is invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether the user has specified a device type. If a negative determination is made, step 775 is re-invoked so that the user can specify a device type. If a positive determination is made, step 795 is invoked, wherein a protocol conversion software block is selected from

memory corresponding to the device specified by the user. In step 800, the protocol conversion software block is mapped to a logical address in memory. Then, in step 805, instructions to be exchanged between the car stereo or video system and the after-market device are converted using the software block to allow communication between the devices using compatible formats. Accordingly, the logic of FIG. 15 allows a single interface having multiple protocol conversion software blocks to be used integrate a plurality of after-market devices with a car stereo or video system.

FIG. 16 is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at 810, for allowing a user to quickly navigate through a list of songs on one or more after-market devices using the controls of a car stereo or video system (fast navigation technique). This method allows a user to quickly select a song from a list of songs available on an after-market device for playing on the car stereo or video system, and could be applied for use with any type of after-market device, including, but not limited to, a digital media player such as an MP3 player or Apple iPod player. Beginning in step 812, a user is provided with a list of alphanumeric characters on a display of the car stereo or video system. This list could include the letters A through Z, as well as the numbers 0 through 9. In step 814, the user can specify a desired alphanumeric character, which can be specified by scrolling through the list using one or more controls of the car stereo or video system and pressing a button once the desired character has been highlighted, or optionally, if an alphanumeric keypad (or touchscreen interface) is provided on the car stereo or video system, the user can directly enter the desired alphanumeric character.

When the desired alphanumeric character has been specified, in step **816** a remote database is queried using the alphanumeric character. The remote database could comprise a list of songs stored in one or more after-market devices integrated
5 by the present invention for use with the car stereo or video system. In step **818**, a list of potentially matching songs is retrieved from the database and presented on the display of the car stereo or video system for perusal by the user. For example, if the user specified the letter "A," the list could include all songs in the remote database having titles (or artists) beginning with the letter "A." In step **820**, a
10 determination is made as to whether a desired song appears in the list and is immediately viewable by the user, without requiring the user to scroll through the list. If a positive determination is made, step **822** is invoked, wherein the desired song is selected by the user and retrieved from the after-market device for playing on the car stereo or video system.

15 In the event that a negative determination is made in step **820**, step **824** is invoked, wherein the user can specify an additional alphanumeric character using the car stereo or video system. For example, if the user initially specified the letter "A" and the desired song is not visible in the list of songs without scrolling, the user can refine the query by adding an additional alphanumeric character. Thus,
20 for example, the user can specify the letters "AN" to search for songs having titles (or artists) beginning with the letters "AN." In step **826**, the remote database of the after-market device is queried using the specified letters. In step **828**, a list of potential matches is presented to the user at the car stereo or video system. In step **830**, a determination is made as to whether the desired song appears in the list and

is immediately viewable without requiring the user to scroll through the list. If a positive determination is made, step 822 is invoked, wherein the user can select the desired song for retrieval from the after-market device and playing on the car stereo or video system. If a negative determination is made, step 832 is invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether a threshold number of alphanumeric characters has been specified by the user. For example, a maximum threshold of 3 alphanumeric characters could be specified, or any other desired number. If a negative determination is made, steps 824-832 are re-invoked in the manner disclosed herein to allow the user to specify additional alphanumeric characters for querying the remote database. If a positive determination is made (threshold met), then processing terminates and the user must scroll through the list of retrieved songs or repeat the processing disclosed in FIG. 16 to begin a new query.

FIG. 17 is a diagram showing an another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at 850, wherein a plurality of external devices are integrated using a single interface 852. Any desired number or combination of devices can be integrated for use with a car stereo or video system using the interface 852. The interface 852 houses a plurality of ports 858 for connecting any desired number of external devices, and a port 856 for connection with a car stereo or video system. The ports 858 and 856 could be any suitable type of input port, and could vary depending upon the types of devices to be integrated. Additionally, the interface 852 includes integration electronics 854, which could include any desired electronics disclosed herein for integrating a plurality of external devices.

As shown in FIG. 17, a CD player 860, a digital media device 862, a satellite tuner 864, a video device 866, a cellular phone 868, and an auxiliary input 870 are connected to the interface 852 and integrated for use with a car stereo or video system. The CD player 860 could comprise any desired CD player or changer. The digital media device 862 could comprise any portable digital media device, such as an Apple iPod, MP3 player, MP4, player, WMV player, portable music center, or any other desired device. The satellite tuner 864 could comprise any desired satellite tuner, such as an XM or Sirius tuner. The video device 866 could comprise any desired video device, such as a DVD player. The cellular phone 868 could comprise any cellular telephone capable of downloading and storing music or video files. The auxiliary input 870 could comprise any desired external device. Any desired number of interfaces 852 could be interconnected (“daisy-chained”). Further, the interface 852 could form part of an existing car stereo or video system. Control of the external devices connected to the interface 852 is provided through the car stereo or video system.

Having thus described the invention in detail, it is to be understood that the foregoing description is not intended to limit the spirit and scope thereof.

CLAIMSWhat is claimed is:

1. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car stereo system;

5 an after-market device external to the car stereo system;

an interface positioned within the car stereo system and connected between the car stereo system and the after-market device for exchanging data and audio signals between the car stereo system and the after-market device;

means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the after-
10 market device from the car stereo system in a format compatible with the after-market device; and

means for processing and displaying data from the after-market device on a display of the car stereo system in a format compatible with the car stereo system.
2. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the after-market device comprises a CD
15 player, CD changer, digital media player, Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receiver, satellite receiver, or a cellular telephone.
3. The apparatus of claim 2, wherein the digital media player comprises an MP3 player, an MP4 player, WMV player, or an Apple iPod.
4. The apparatus of claim 1, further comprising one or more auxiliary input
20 sources connected to the interface.

5. A multimedia device integration system comprising:
- a car stereo system;
 - a cellular telephone external to the car stereo system;
 - 5 an interface connected between the car stereo system and the cellular telephone for exchanging data and audio signals between the car stereo system and the cellular telephone;
 - means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the cellular telephone from the car stereo system in a format compatible with the cellular
 - 10 telephone; and
 - means for processing and displaying data from the cellular telephone on a display of the car stereo system in a format compatible with the car stereo system.
6. The apparatus of claim 5, further comprising songs or music downloadable through the cellular telephone.
- 15 7. The apparatus of claim 6, wherein the songs or music are playable through the car stereo system using the interface.
8. A multimedia device integration system comprising:
- a car video system;
 - a cellular telephone external to the car video system;

an interface connected between the car video system and the cellular telephone for exchanging data, audio, and video signals between the car video system and the cellular telephone;

means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the cellular
5 telephone from the car video system in a format compatible with the cellular telephone; and

means for processing and displaying data from the cellular telephone on a display of the car video system in a format compatible with the car video system.

9. The apparatus of claim 8, further comprising songs or music downloadable
10 through the cellular telephone.

10. The apparatus of claim 9, wherein the songs or music are playable through the car video system using the interface.

11. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car video system;

15 an after-market video device external to the car video system;

an interface connected between the car video system and the after-market video device for exchanging data, audio, and video signals between the car video system and the after-market video device;

means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the after-
20 market video device from the car video system in a format compatible with the after-market video device; and

means for processing and displaying data from the after-market video device on a display of the car video system in a format compatible with the car video system.

12. The apparatus of claim 11, wherein the after-market video device
5 comprises a DVD player.

13. The apparatus of claim 11, wherein the interface is positioned within the car video system.

14. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

an interface in electrical communication with a car stereo system and an
10 after-market device;

a plurality of configuration jumpers in the interface for specifying a first device type corresponding to the car stereo system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device; and

a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the
15 interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo system and for converting signals from the car stereo system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface using settings of the plurality of configuration jumpers.

15. The system of claim 14, wherein the plurality of protocol conversion software blocks allow a plurality of after-market devices to be integrated with the car stereo system.

16. The system of claim 14, wherein the plurality of configuration jumpers are
5 settable by a user.

17. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

an interface in electrical communication with a car video system and an after-market device;

a plurality of configuration jumpers in the interface for specifying a first
10 device type corresponding to the car video system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device; and

a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car video system and for converting signals from the car video
15 system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface using settings of the plurality of configuration jumpers.

18. The system of claim 17, wherein the plurality of protocol conversion software blocks allow a plurality of after-market devices to be integrated with the car
20 video system.

19. The system of claim 17, wherein the plurality of configuration jumpers are settable by a user.

20. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

an interface in electrical communication with a car stereo system and an
5 after-market device;

first and second wiring harnesses attached to the interface, wherein the first wiring harness includes a first electrical configuration corresponding to the car stereo system and the second wiring harness includes a second electrical configuration corresponding to the after-market device; and

10 a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo system and for converting signals from the car stereo system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the
15 interface using the first and second electrical configurations of the first and second wiring harnesses.

21. The system of claim 20, further comprising a plurality of wiring harnesses corresponding to additional device types and connectable to the interface.

22. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

20 an interface in electrical communication with a car video system and an after-market device;

first and second wiring harnesses attached to the interface, wherein the first wiring harness includes a first electrical configuration corresponding to the car video system and the second wiring harness includes a second electrical configuration corresponding to the after-market device; and

5 a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car video system and for converting signals from the car video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface
10 using the first and second electrical configurations of the first and second wiring harnesses.

23. The system of claim 22, further comprising a plurality of wiring harnesses corresponding to additional device types and connectable to the interface.

24. A method for integrating an after-market device for use with a car stereo
15 system comprising:

interconnecting the car stereo system and the after-market device with an interface;

determining a first device type corresponding to the car stereo system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device;

20 loading a protocol conversion software block from memory in the interface using the first and second device types;

converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo system using the protocol conversion software block;

5 converting signals from the car stereo system into a second format compatible with the after-market device using the protocol conversion software block; and

exchanging converted signals between the car stereo system and the after-market device.

25. The method of claim 24, wherein the step of determining the first and
10 second device types comprises determining jumper settings of the interface, wherein the jumper settings correspond to the first and second device types.

26. The method of claim 24, wherein the step of determining the first and
second device types comprises determining electrical configurations of wiring
harnesses attached to the interface, wherein the electrical configurations
15 correspond to the first and second device types.

27. The method of claim 24, wherein the step of determining the first and
second device types comprises allowing the user to specify a device type of the
after-market device using the car stereo system.

28. A method for integrating an after-market device for use with a car video system comprising:

interconnecting the car video system and the after-market device with an interface;

5 determining a first device type corresponding to the car video system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device;

loading a protocol conversion software block from memory in the interface using the first and second device types;

10 converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car video system using the protocol conversion software block;

converting signals from the car video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device using the protocol conversion software block; and

15 exchanging converted signals between the car video system and the after-market device.

29. The method of claim 28, wherein the step of determining the first and second device types comprises determining jumper settings of the interface, wherein the jumper settings correspond to the first and second device types.

30. The method of claim 28, wherein the step of determining the first and second device types comprises determining electrical configurations of wiring harnesses attached to the interface, wherein the electrical configurations correspond to the first and second device types.

5 31. The method of claim 28, wherein the step of determining the first and second device types comprises allowing the user to specify a device type of the after-market device using the car video system.

32. A method for retrieving a song from an after-market device from a car stereo system comprising:

10 allowing a user to specify an alphanumeric character using controls of the car stereo system;

querying a database of songs in the after-market device using the alphanumeric character;

15 displaying a list of potentially matching songs in the after-market device on a display of the car stereo system; and

allowing the user to select a desired song from the list of potentially matching songs for playing the desired song on the car stereo system.

20 33. The method of claim 32, further comprising allowing the user to specify one or more additional alphanumeric characters using the controls of the car stereo system.

34. The method of claim 33, further comprising querying the remote database using the one or more additional alphanumeric characters and displaying a second list of potentially matching songs on the display of the car stereo system.

35. The method of claim 32, wherein the step of allowing the user to specify
5 the alphanumeric character comprises providing the user with a list of alphanumeric characters on the display of the car stereo and allowing the user to select a desired character from the list of alphanumeric characters.

36. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car audiovisual system;

10 a plurality of after-market devices external to the car audiovisual system;

an interface connected between the car audiovisual system and the plurality of after-market devices for exchanging data, audio, and video signals between the car audiovisual system and the plurality of after-market devices;

15 means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the plurality of after-market devices from the car audiovisual system in at least one format compatible with at least one of the plurality of after-market devices; and

means for processing and displaying data from the plurality of after-market devices on a display of the car audiovisual system in a format compatible with the car audiovisual system.

1/29

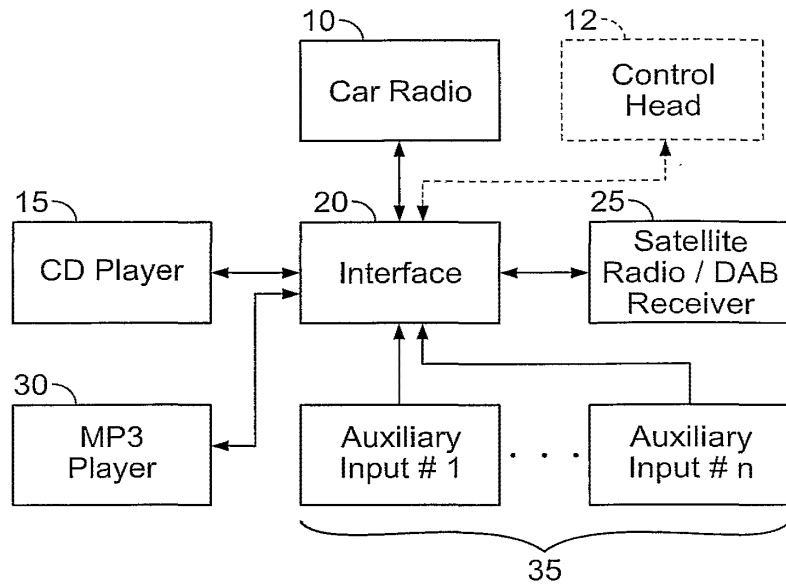


FIG. 1

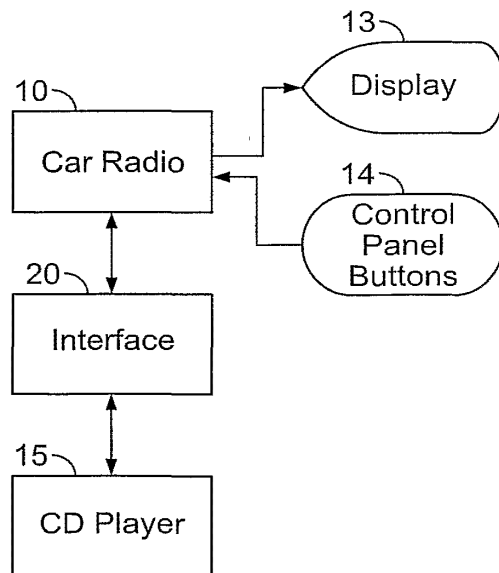


FIG. 2A

2/29

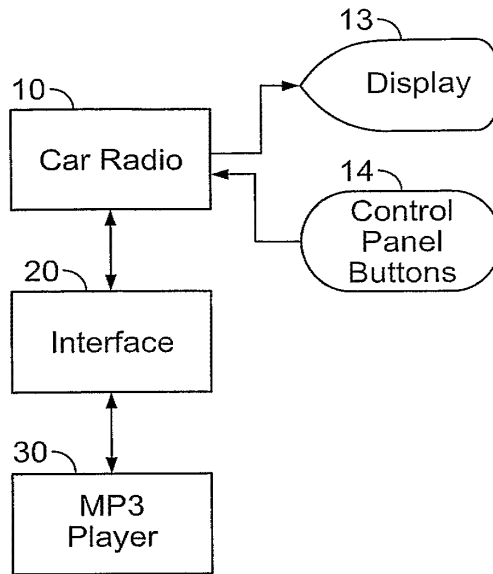


FIG. 2B

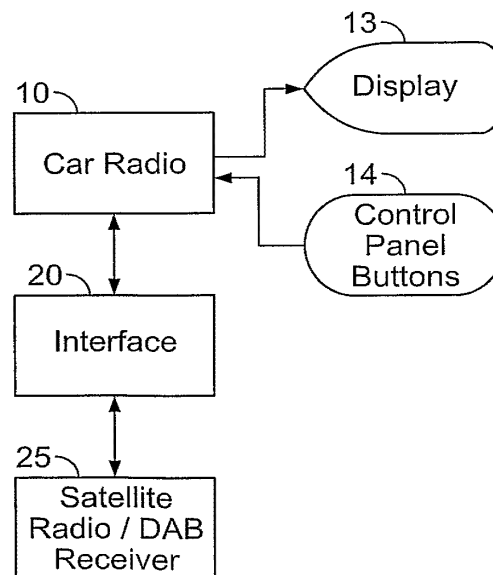


FIG. 2C

3/29

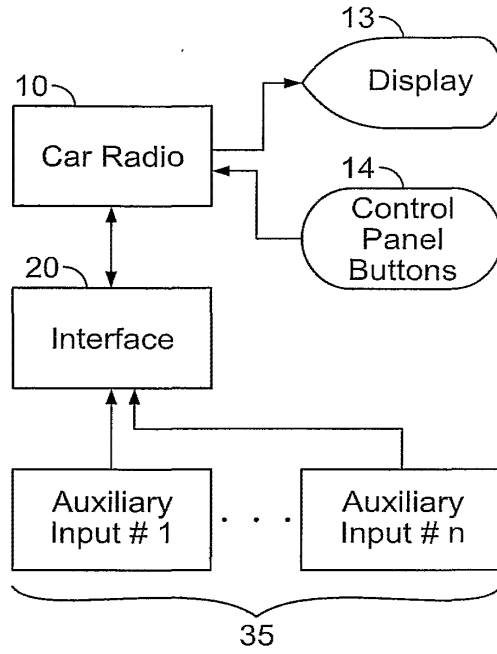


FIG. 2D

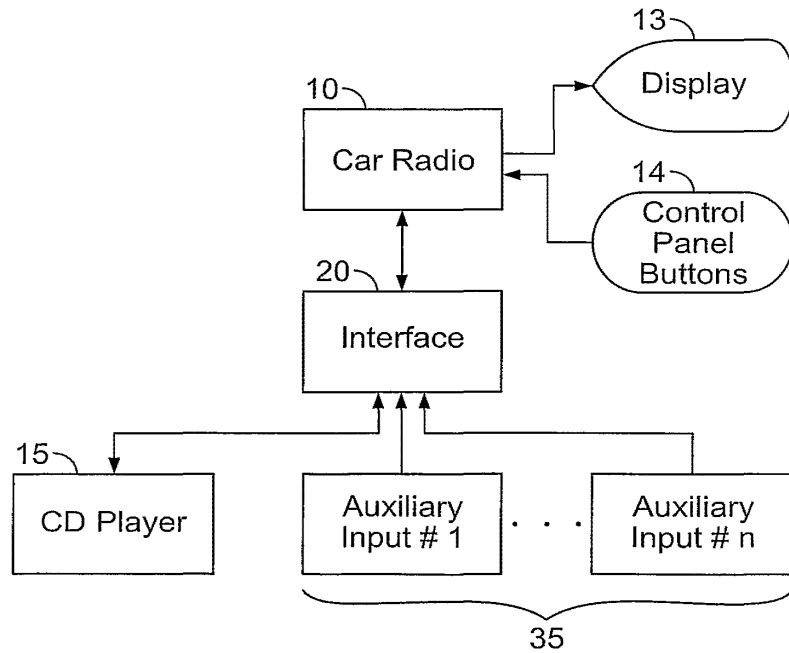


FIG. 2E

4/29

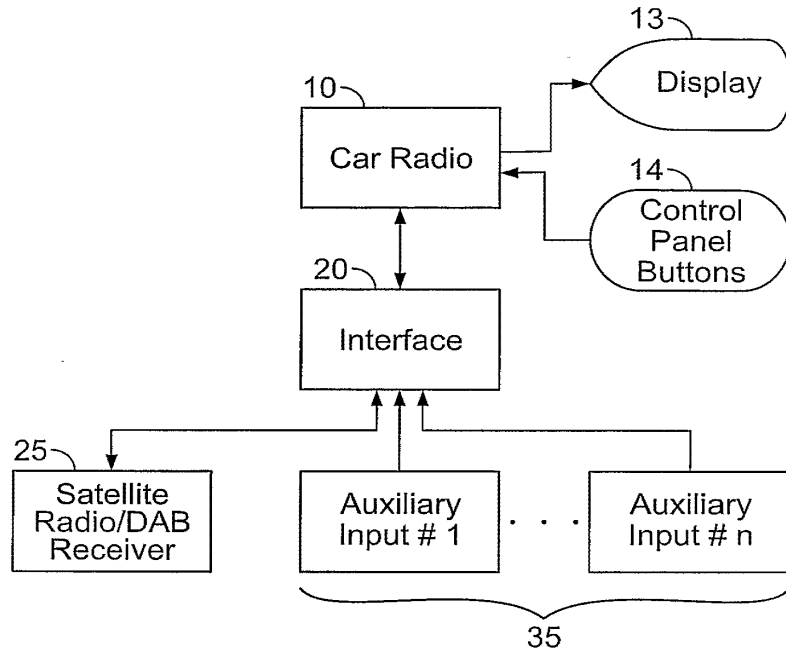


FIG. 2F

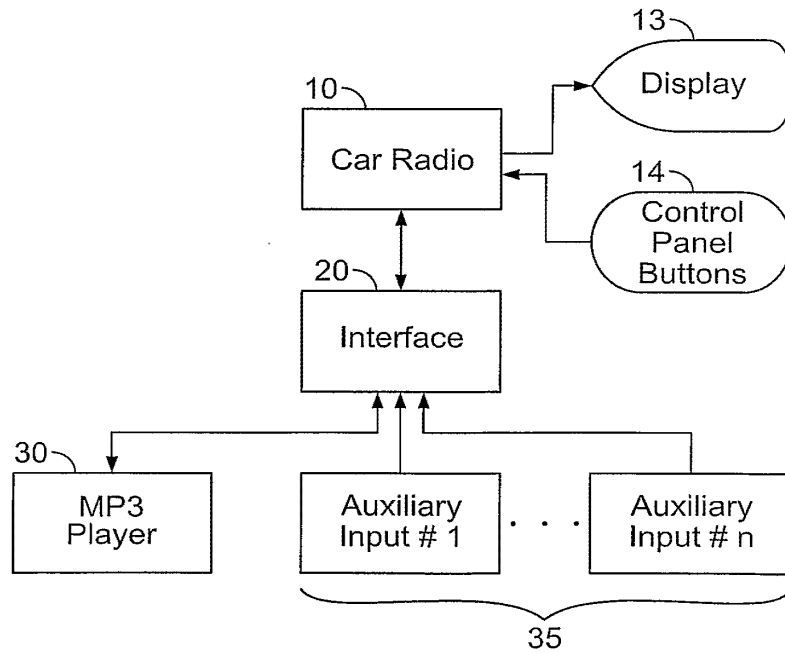


FIG. 2G

5/29

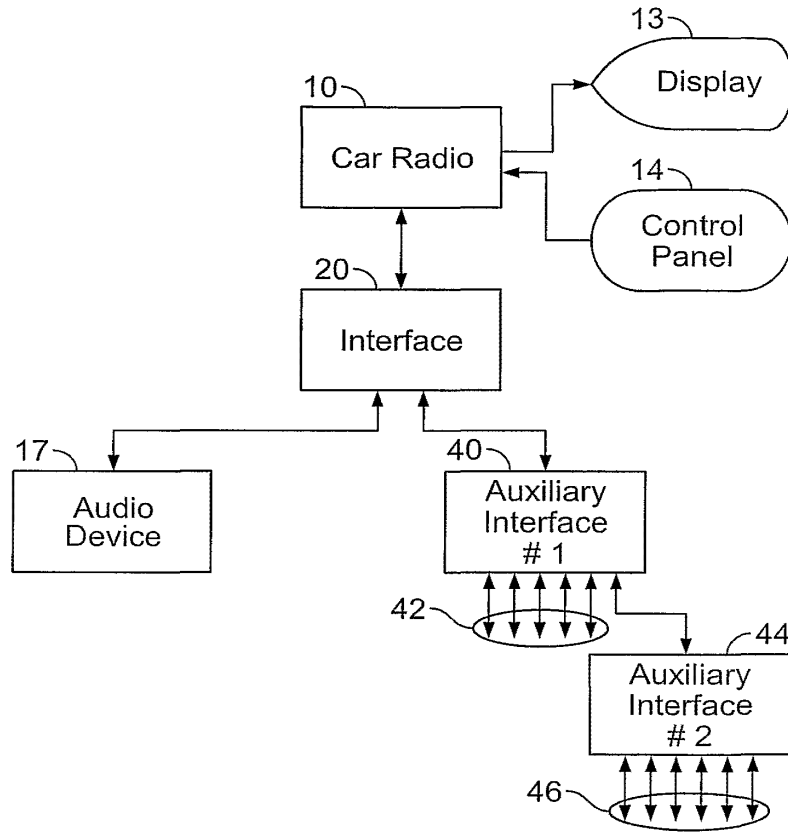


FIG. 2H

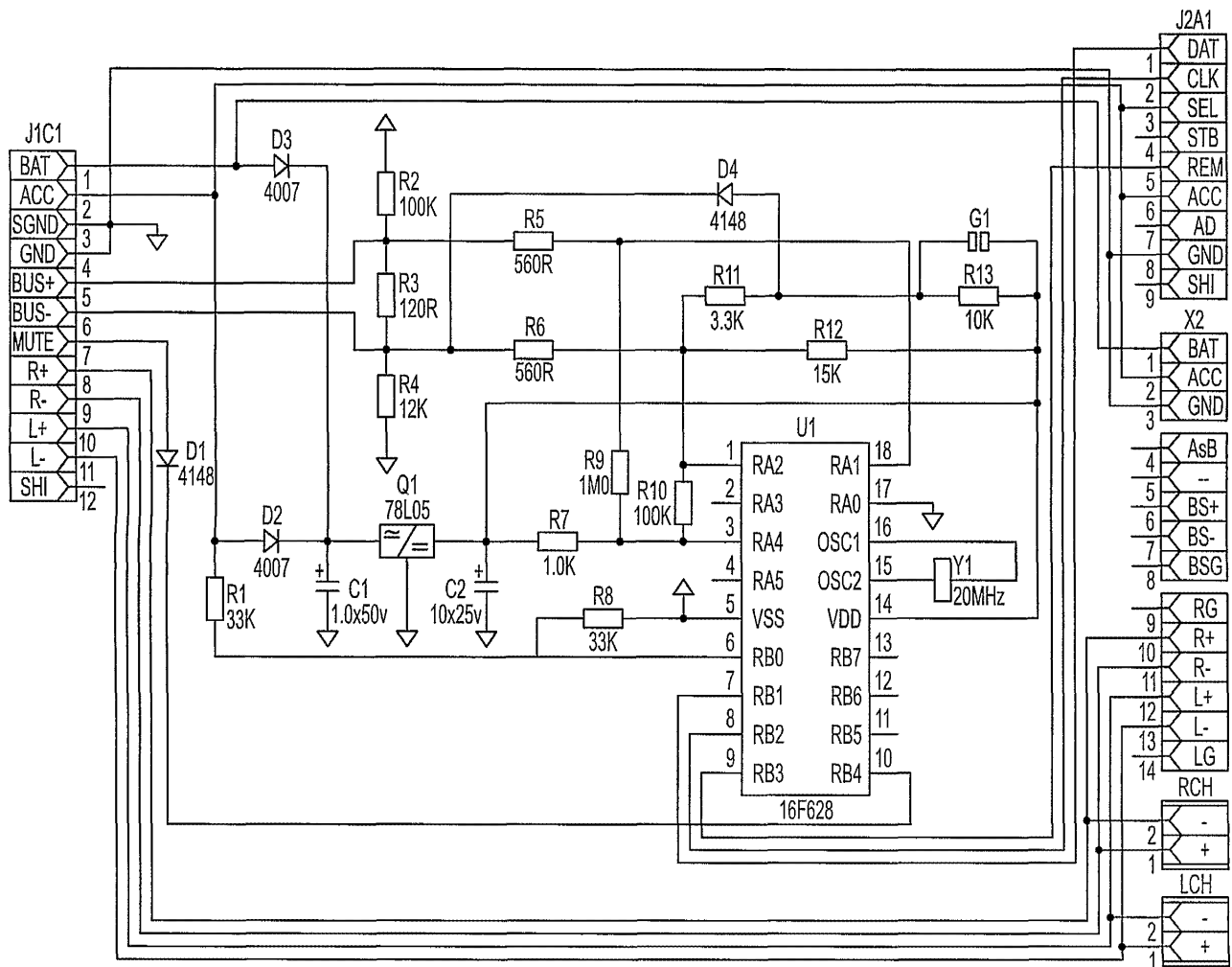


FIG. 3A

6/29

W/O 2006/094281

PCT/US2006/008043

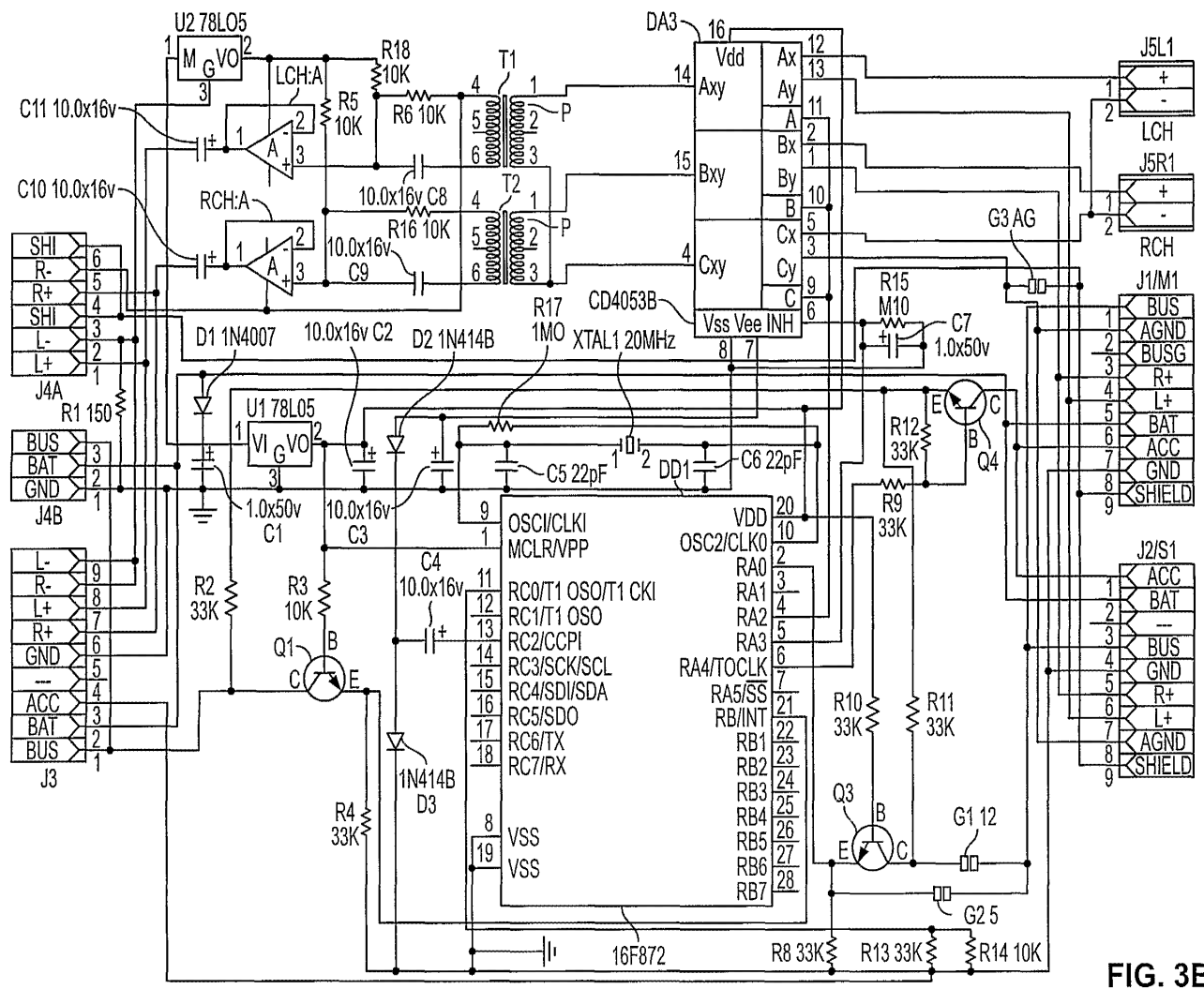


FIG. 3B

7/29

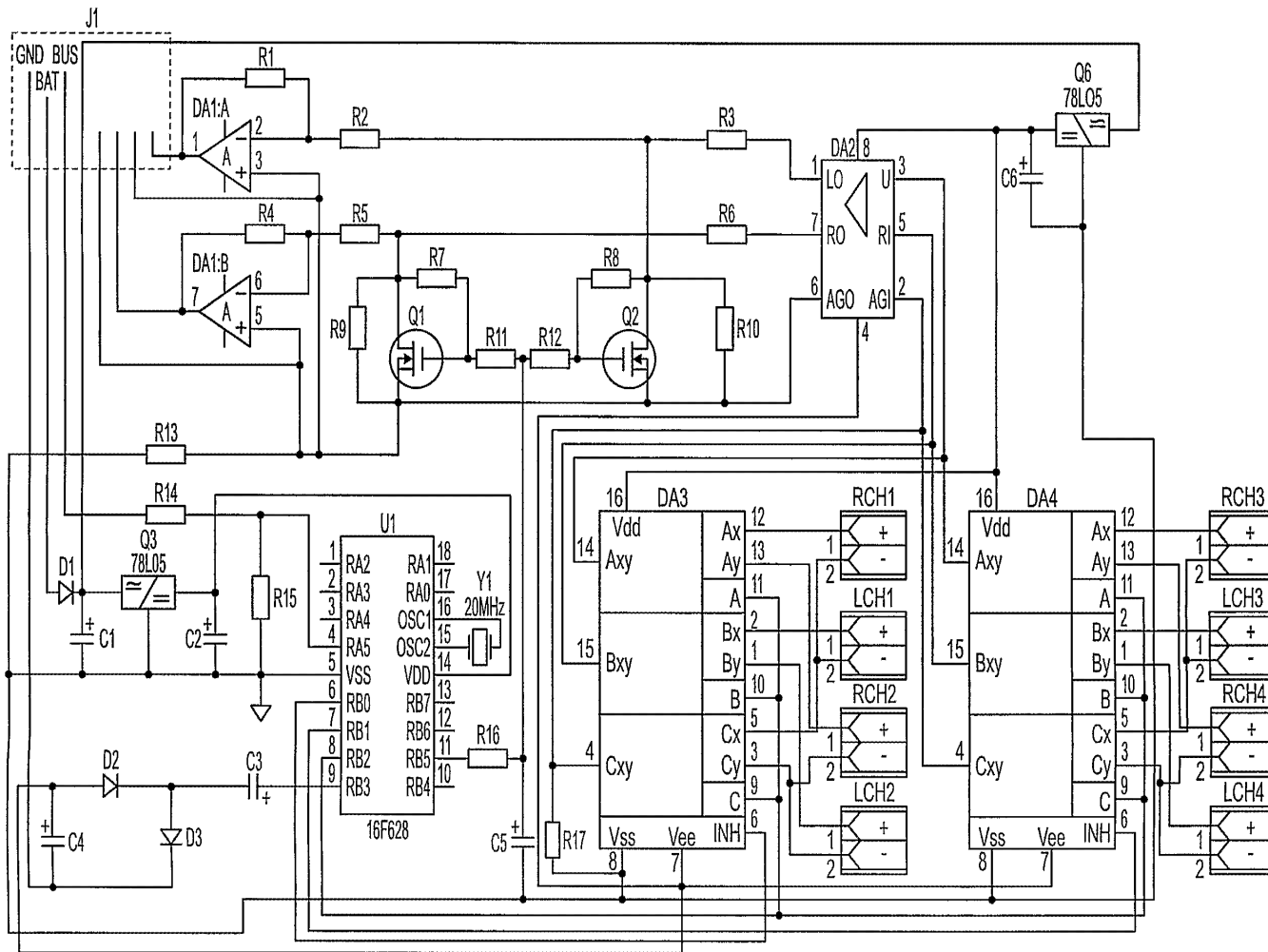


FIG. 3C

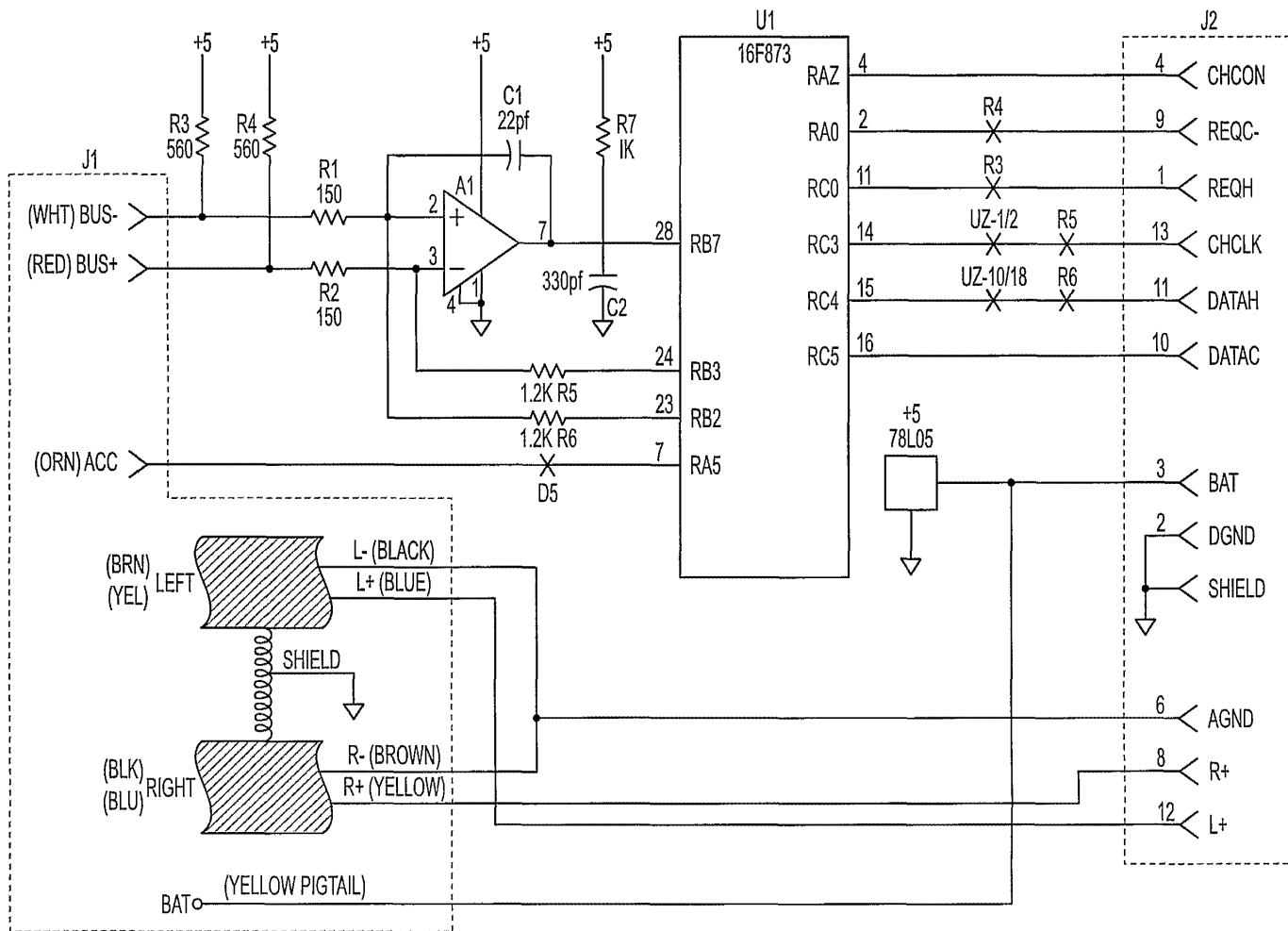


FIG. 3D

10/29

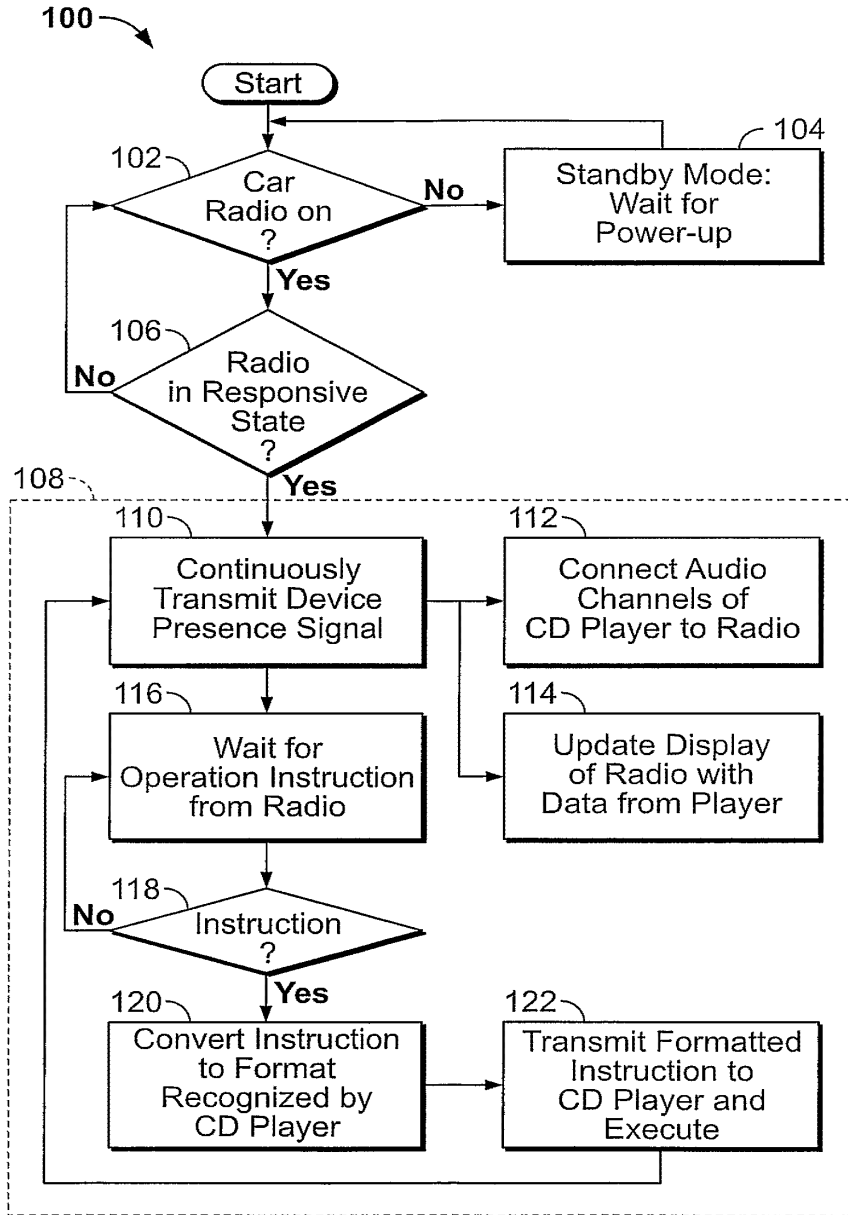


FIG. 4A

11/29

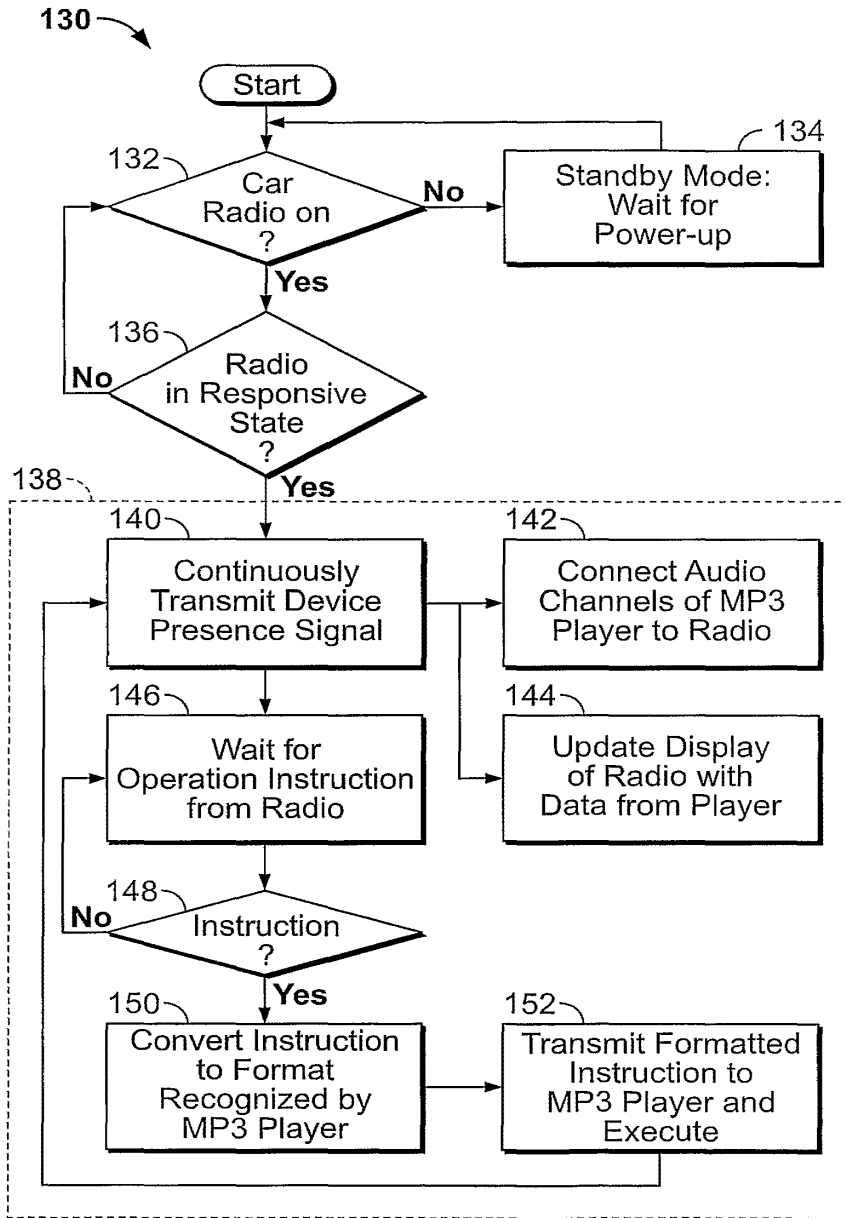


FIG. 4B

12/29

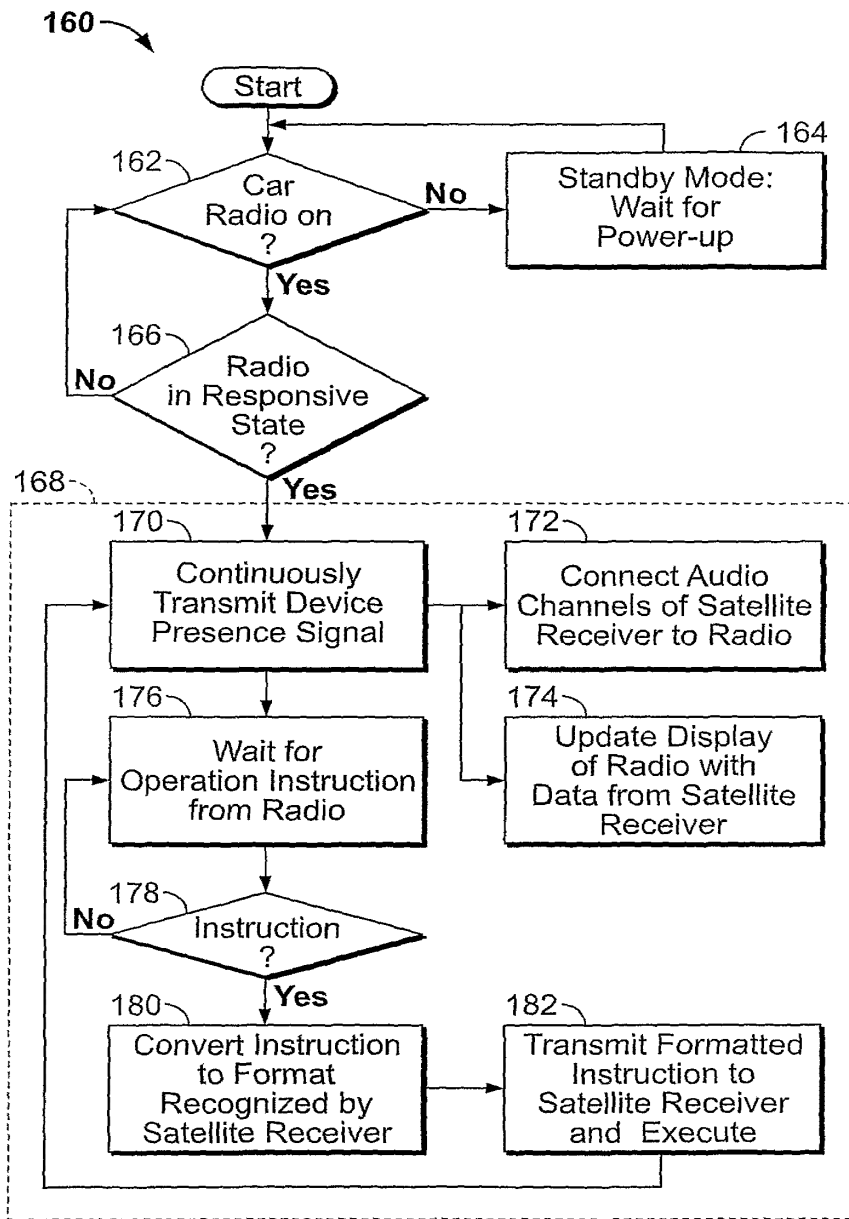


FIG. 4C

13/29

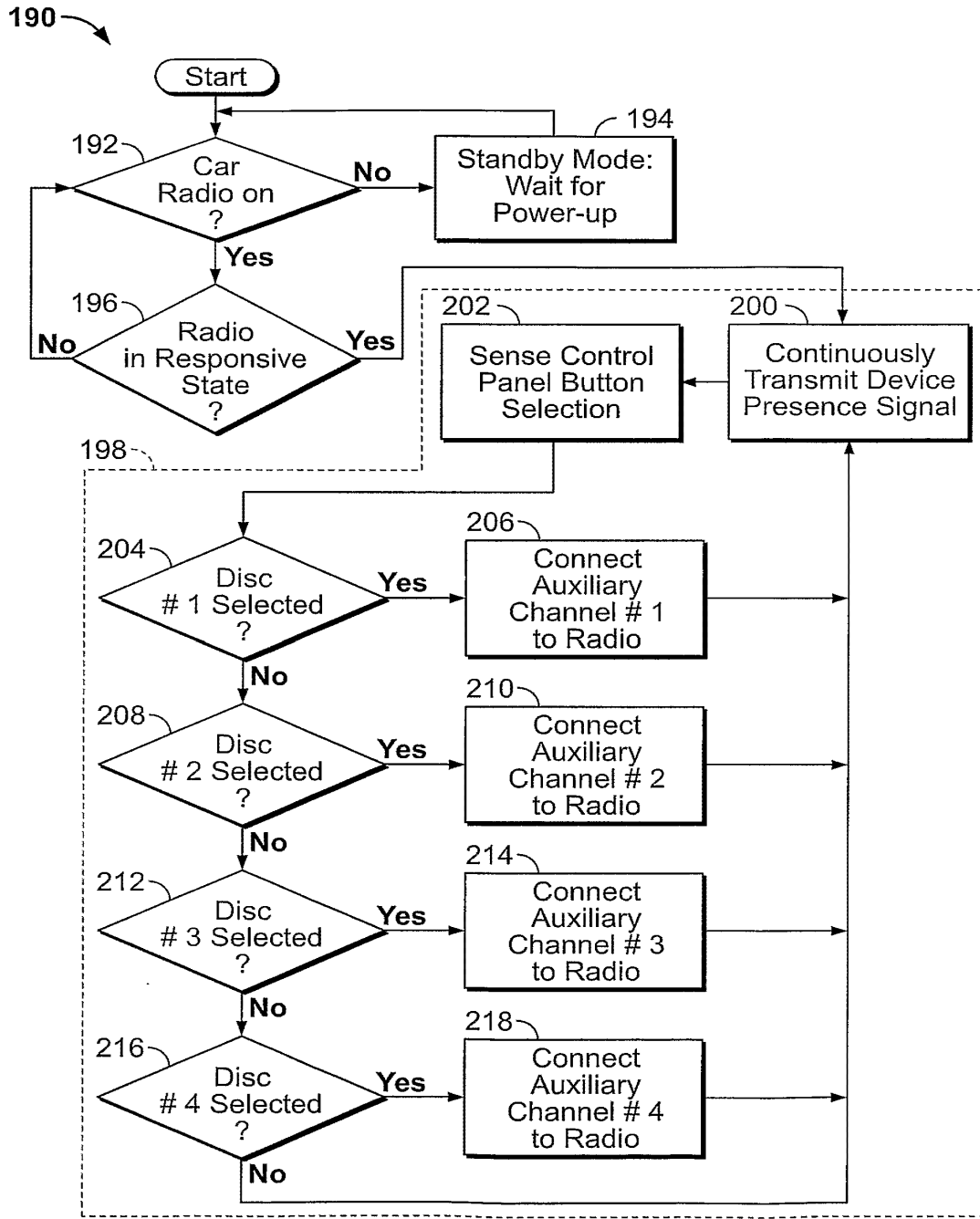


FIG. 4D

14/29

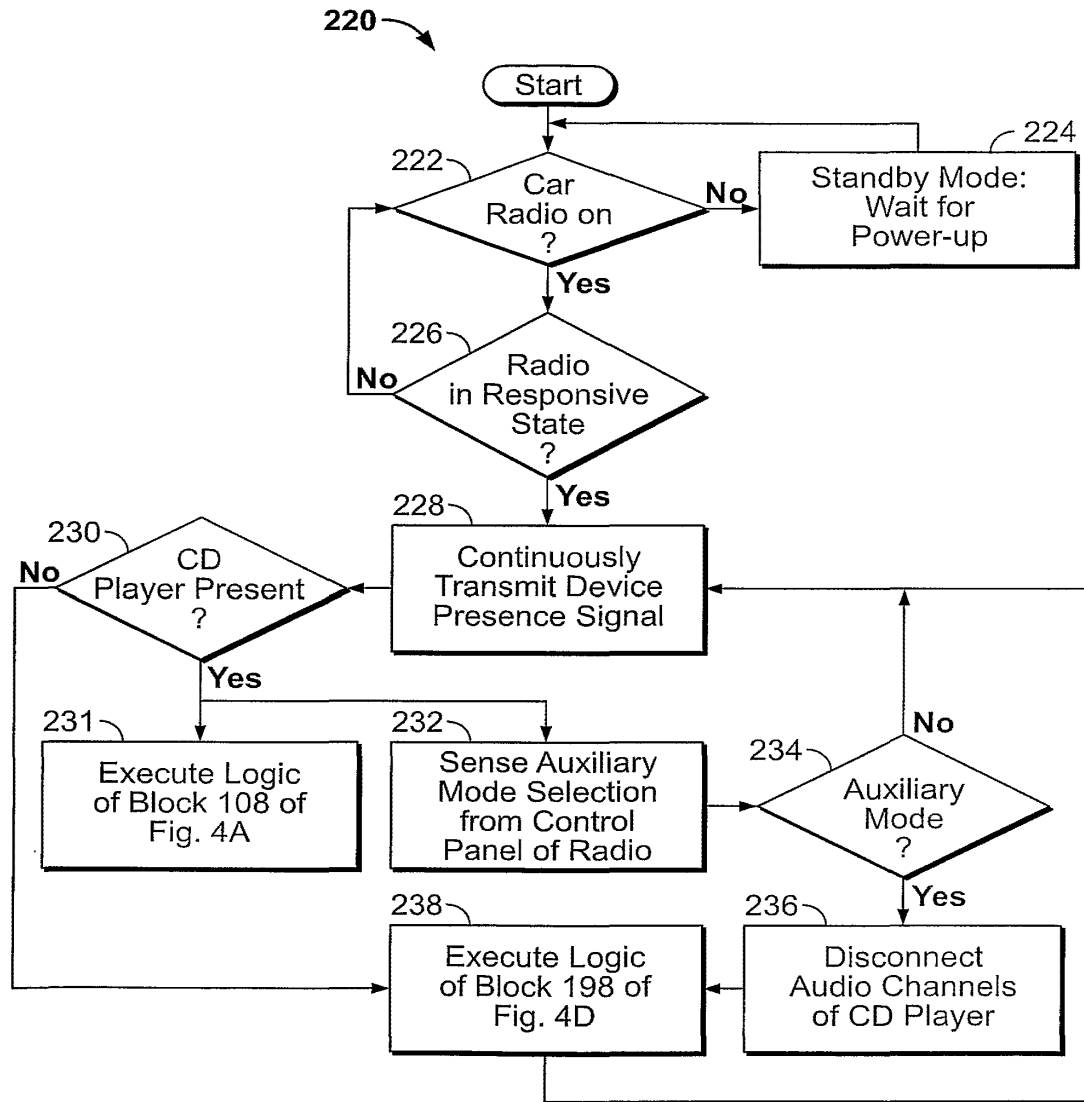


FIG. 4E

15/29

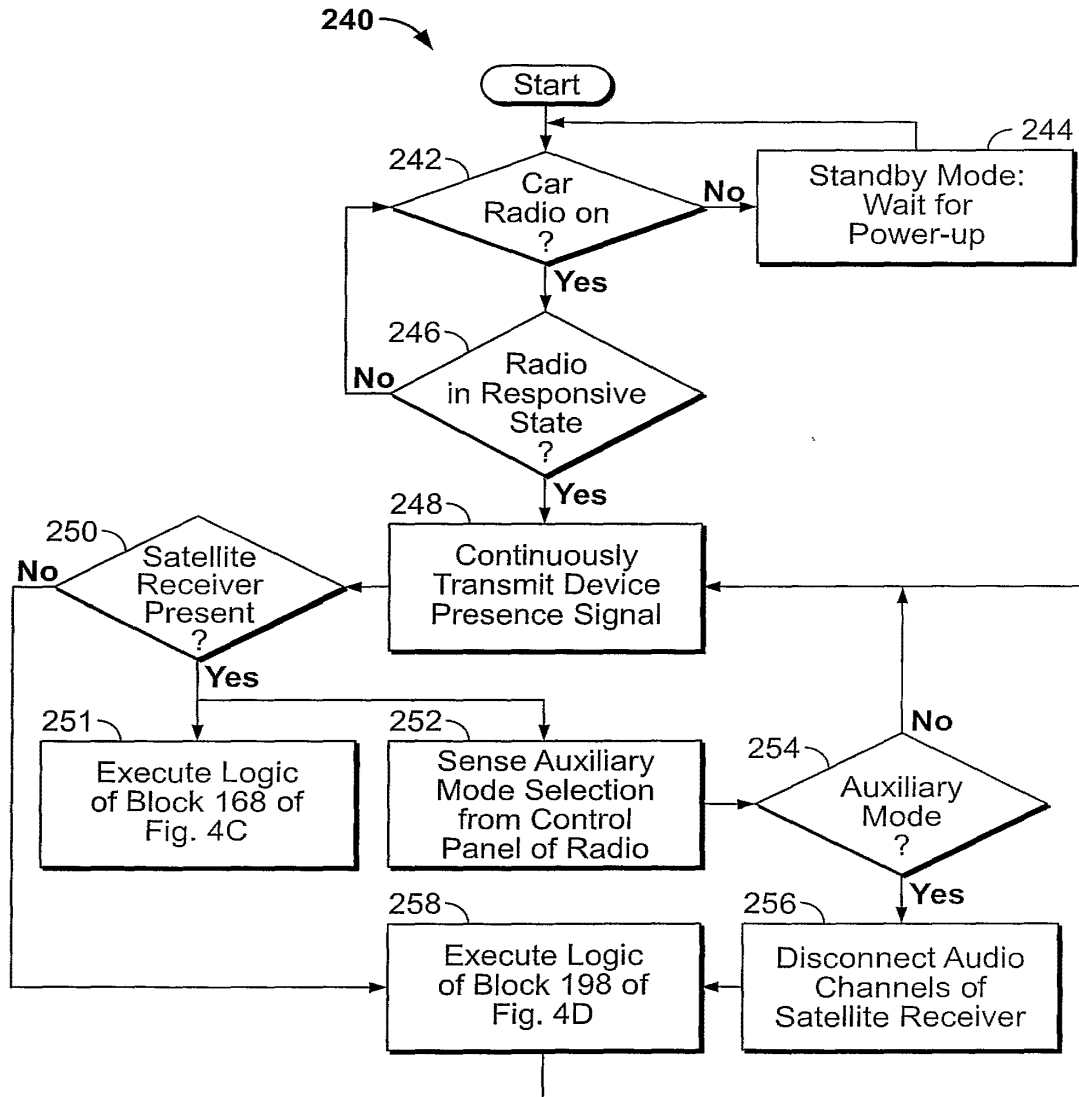


FIG. 4F

16/29

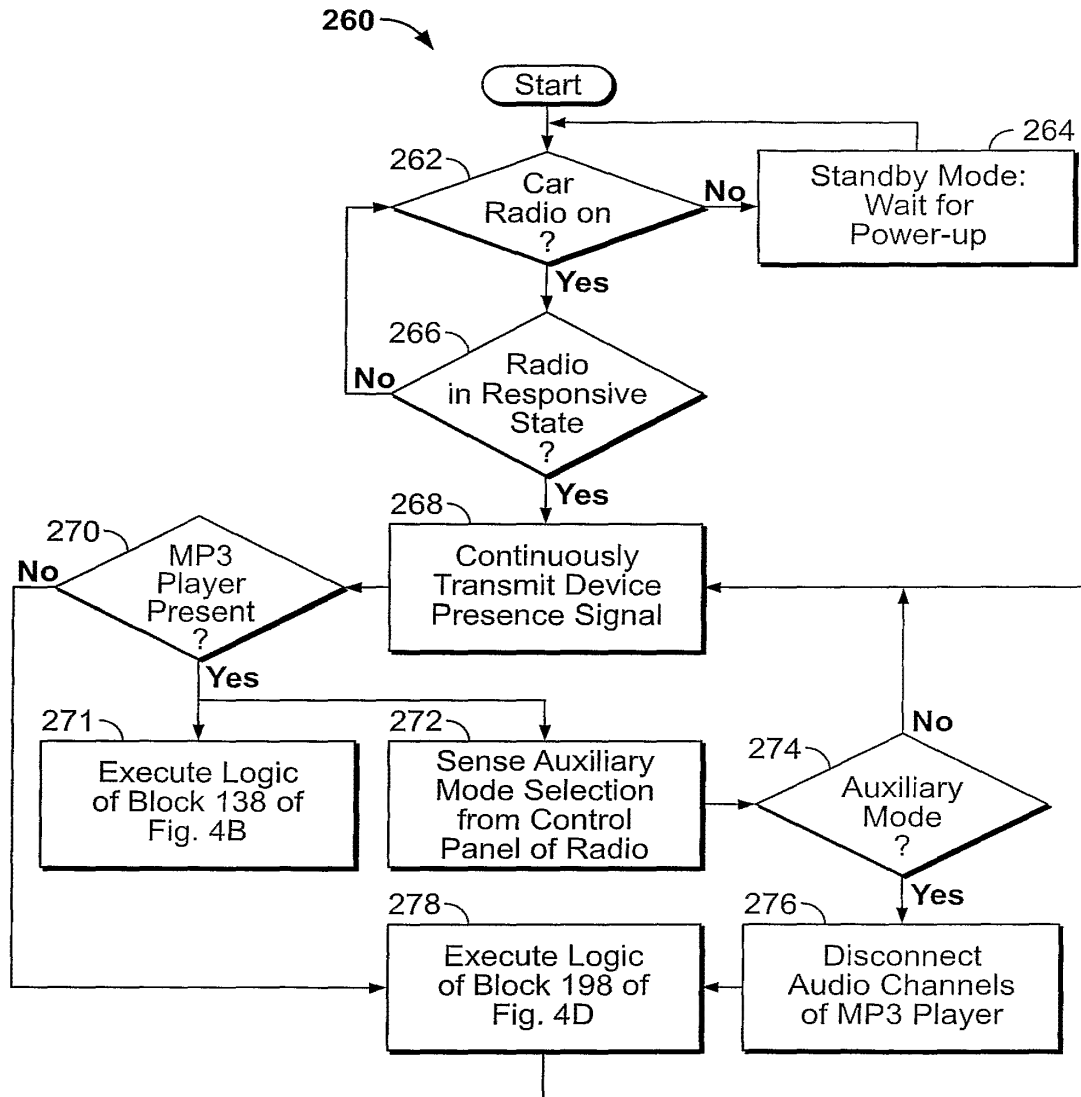


FIG. 4G

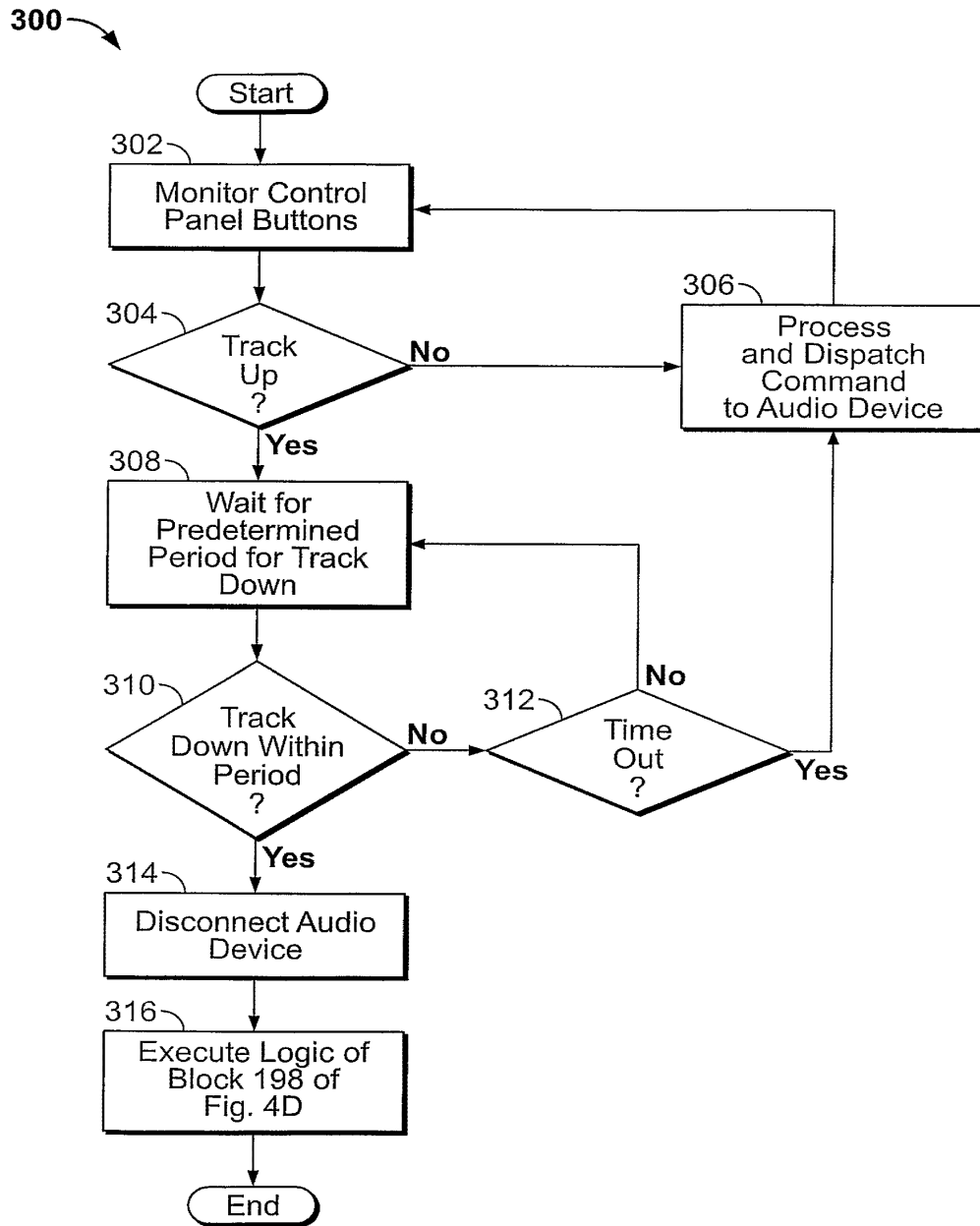


FIG. 5

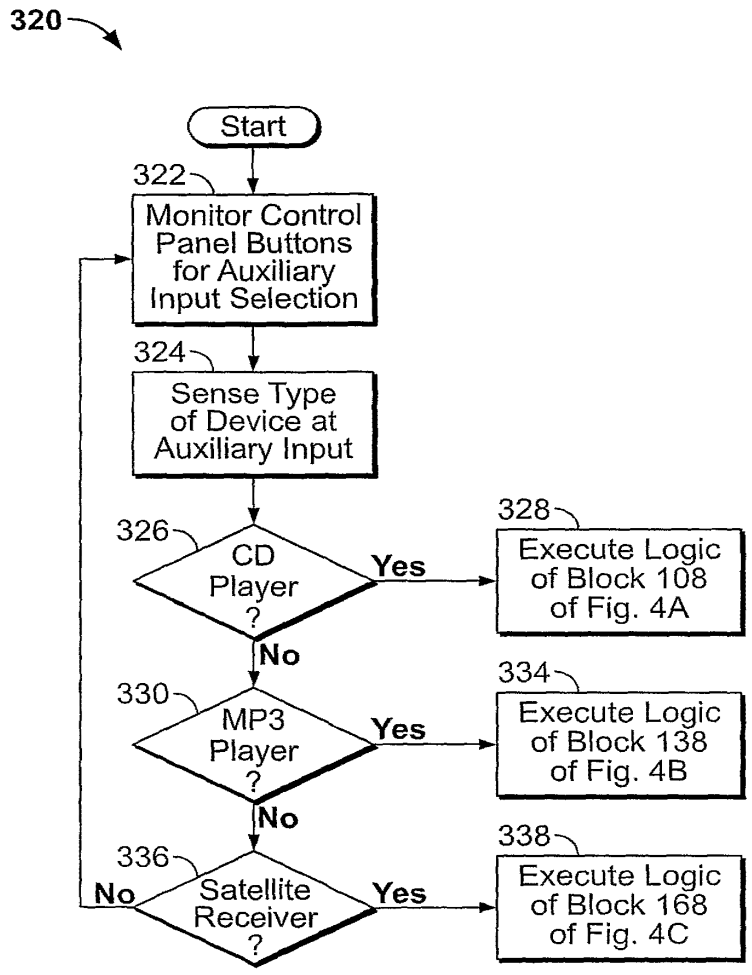


FIG. 6

19/29

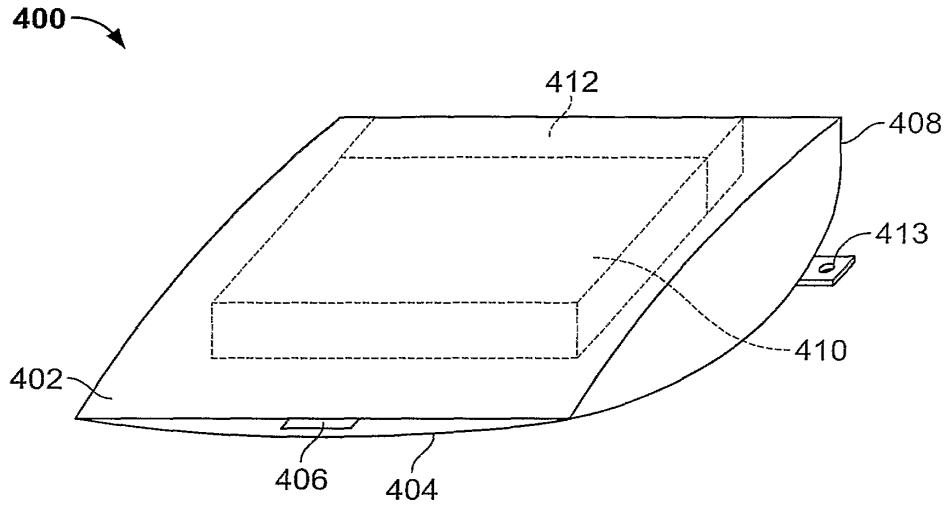


FIG. 7A

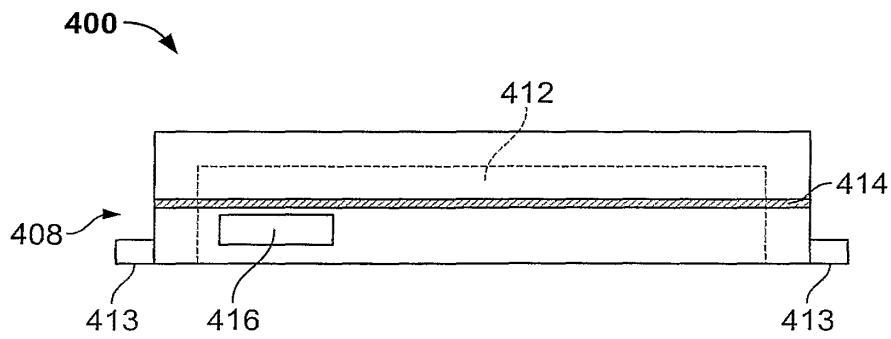


FIG. 7B

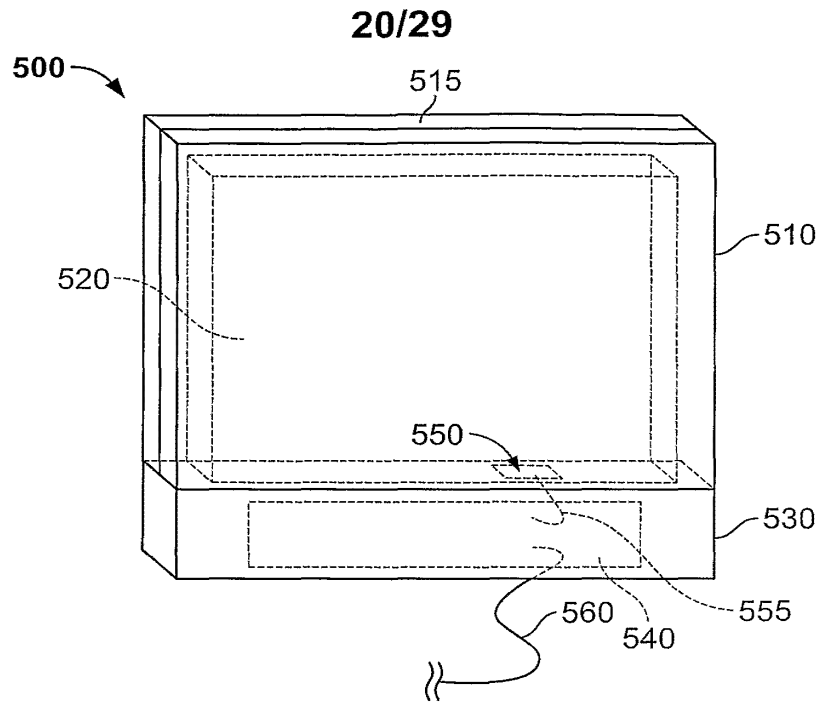


FIG. 8A

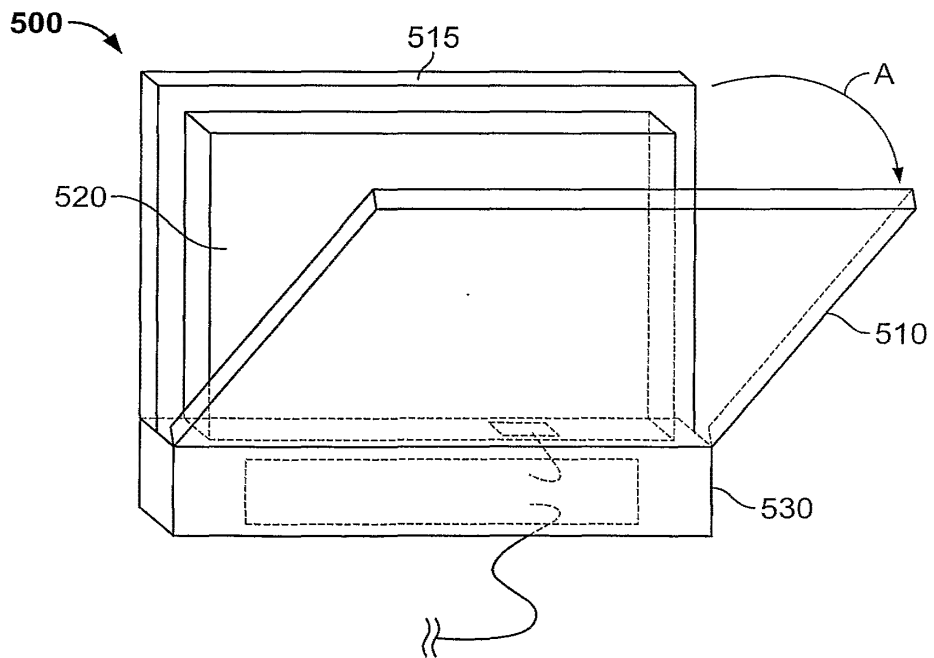


FIG. 8B

21/29

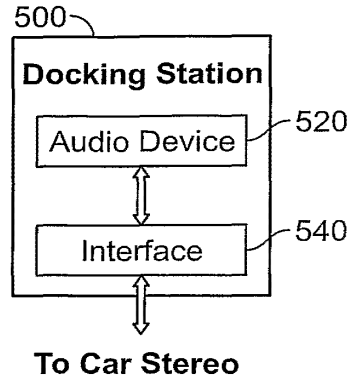


FIG. 9

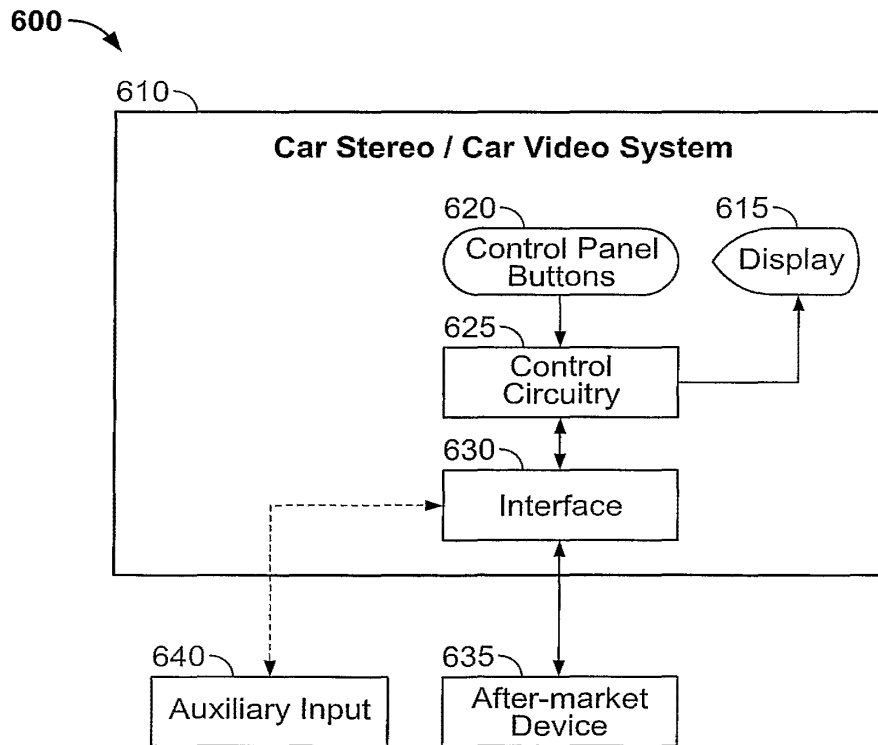


FIG. 10

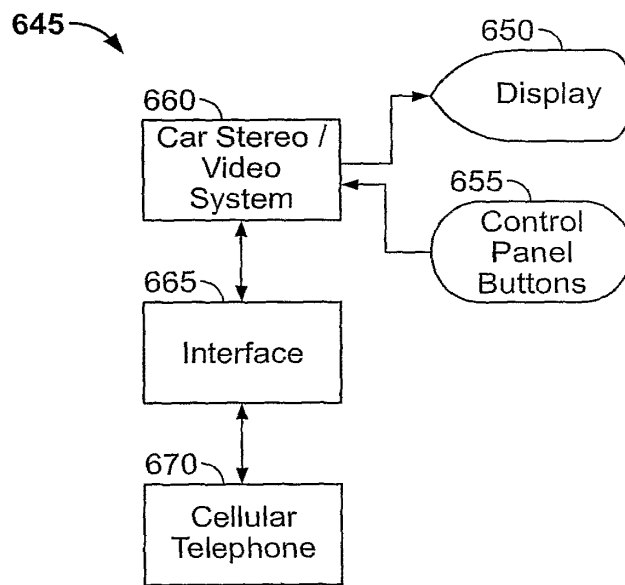


FIG. 11A

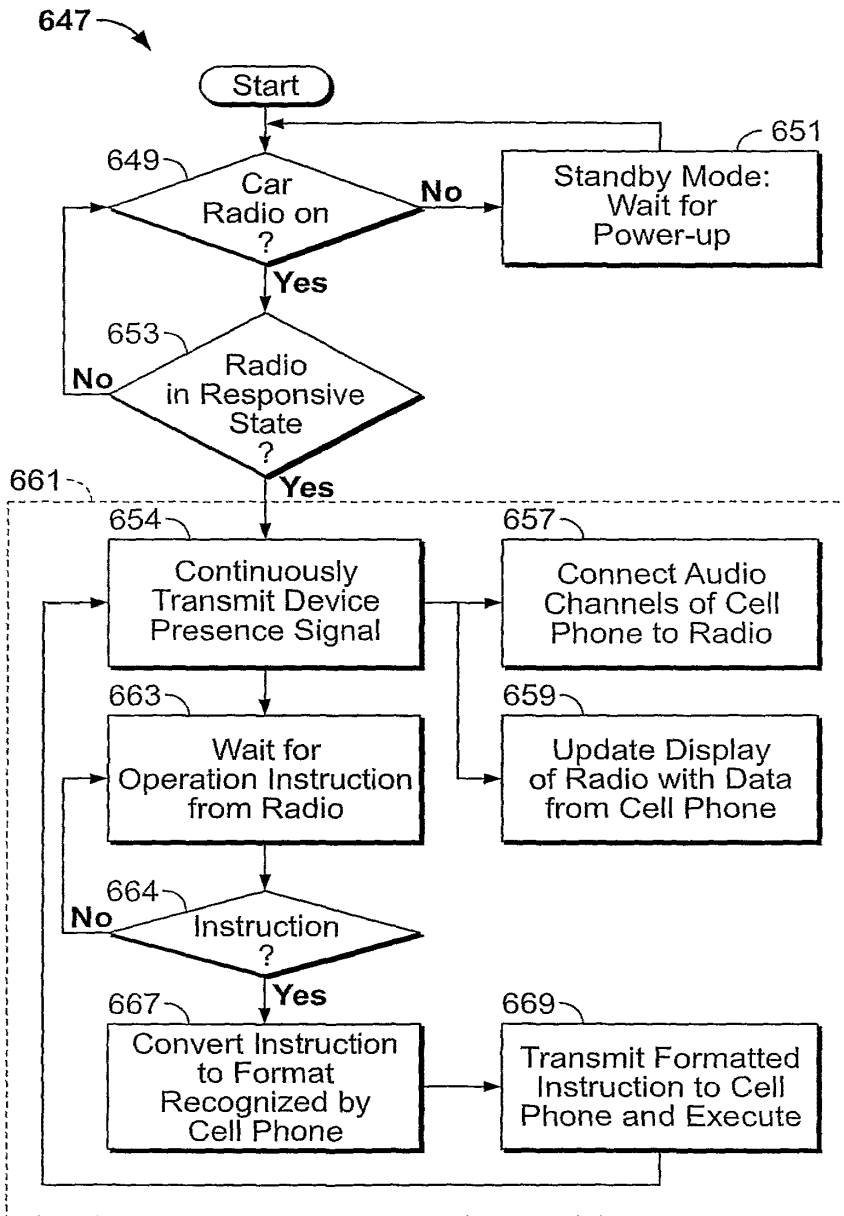


FIG. 11B

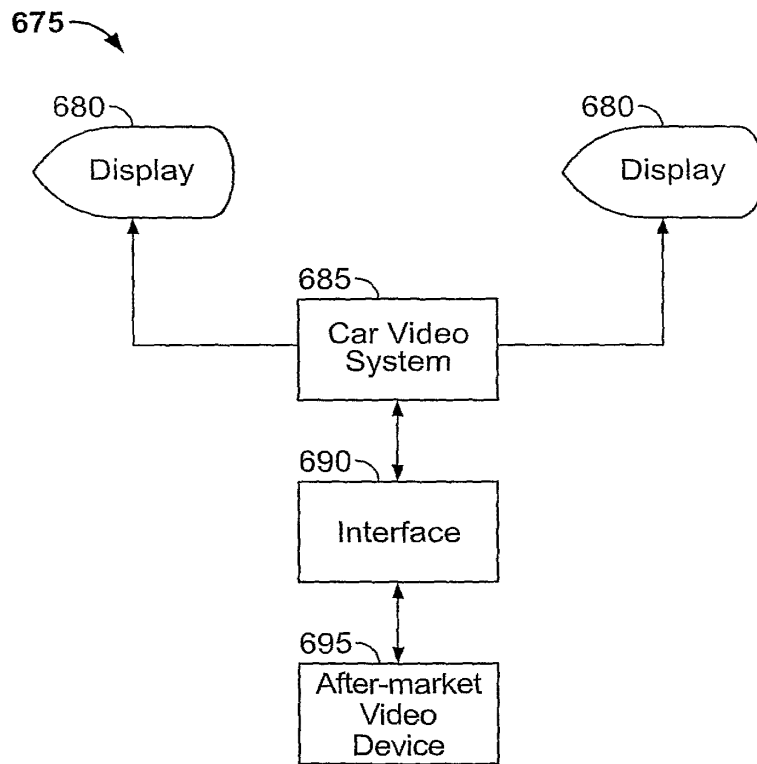


FIG. 12A

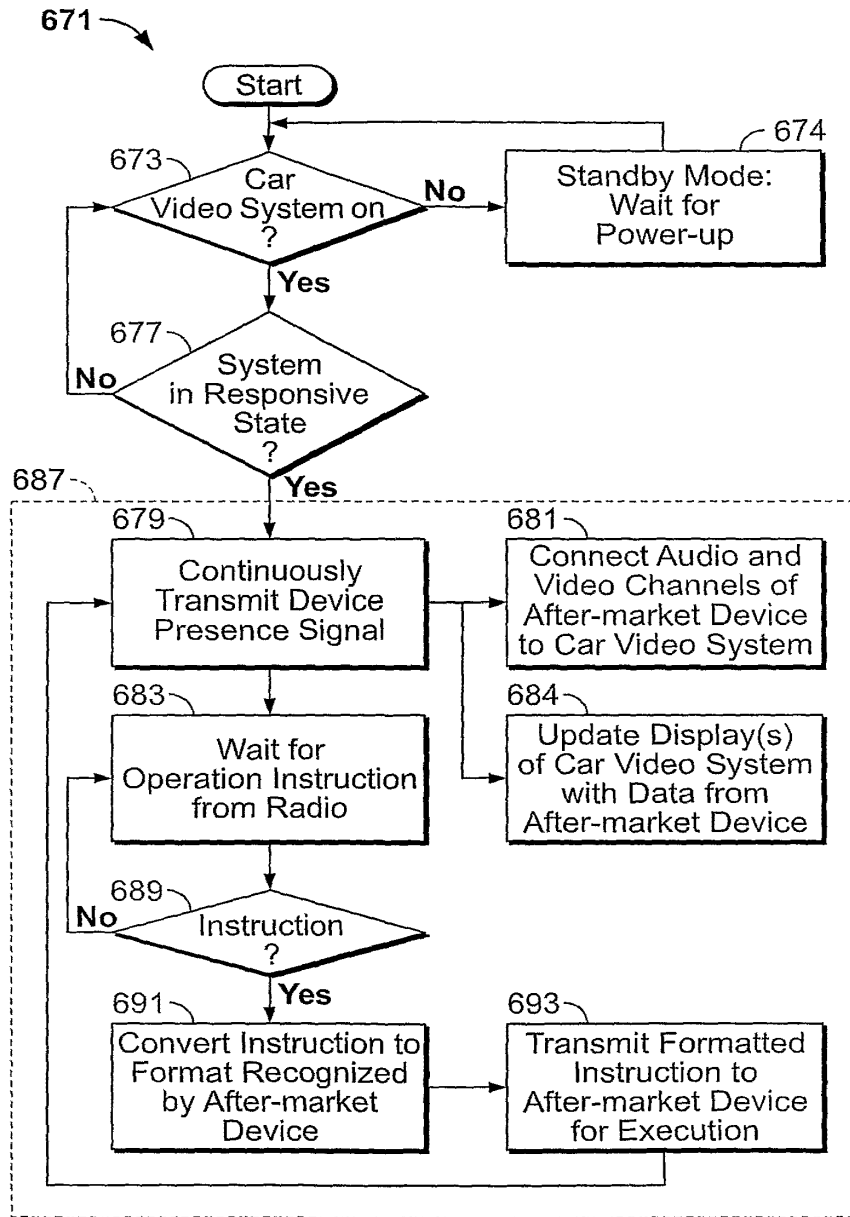


FIG. 12B

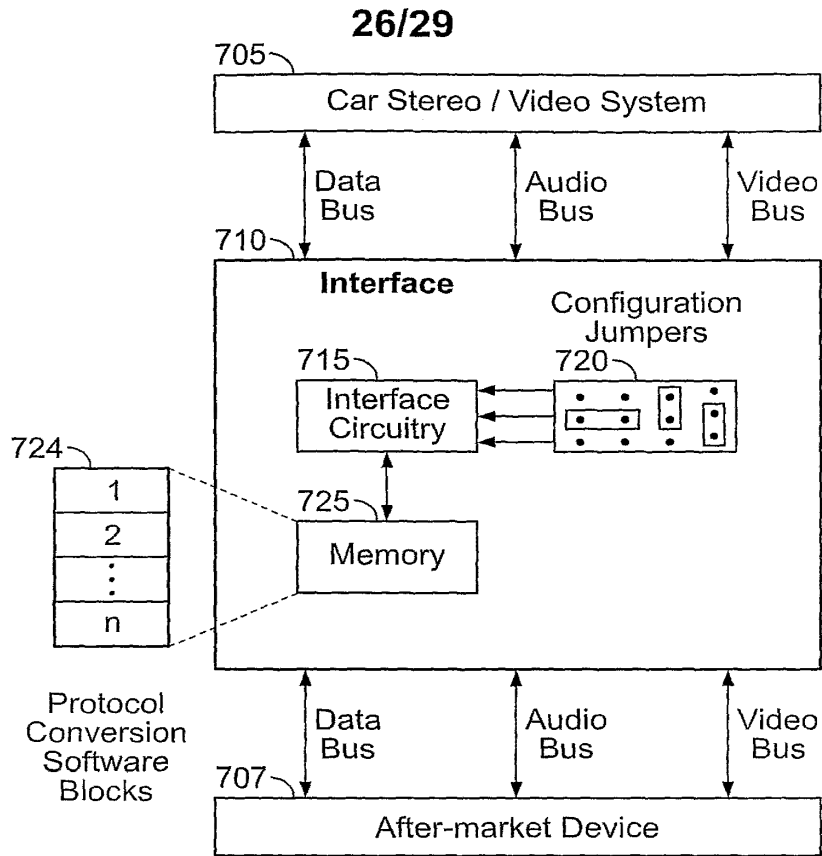


FIG. 13A

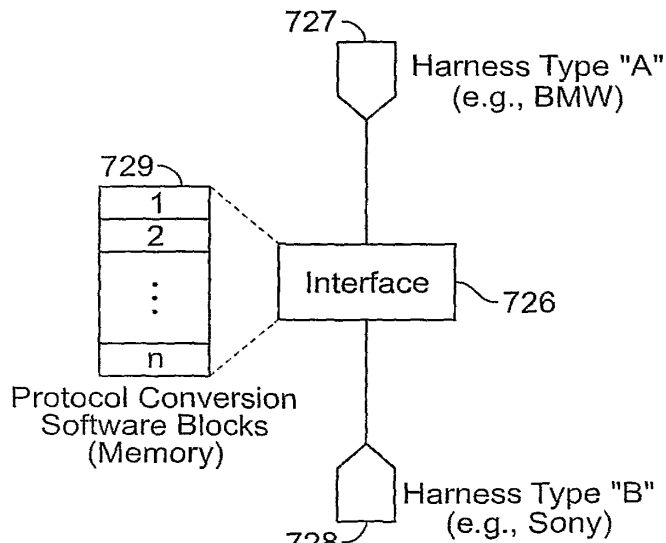


FIG. 13B

27/29

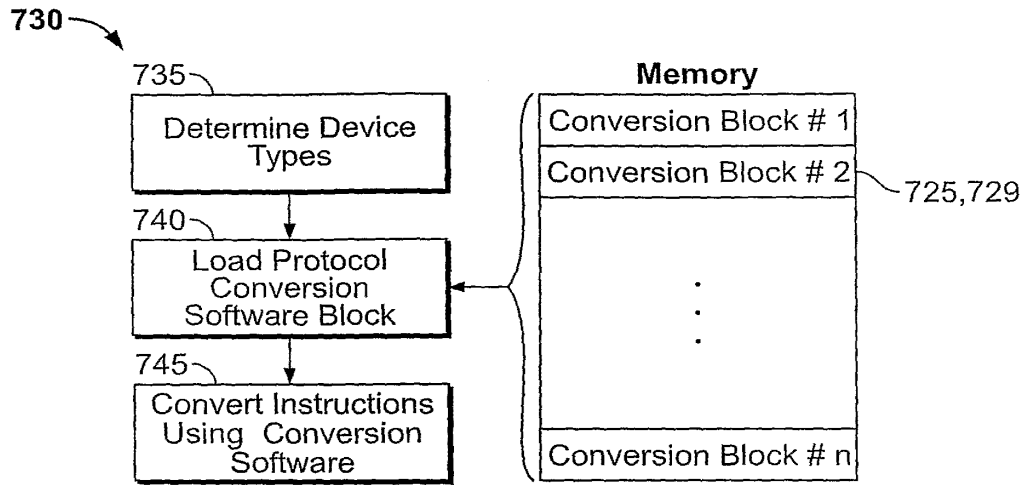


FIG. 14

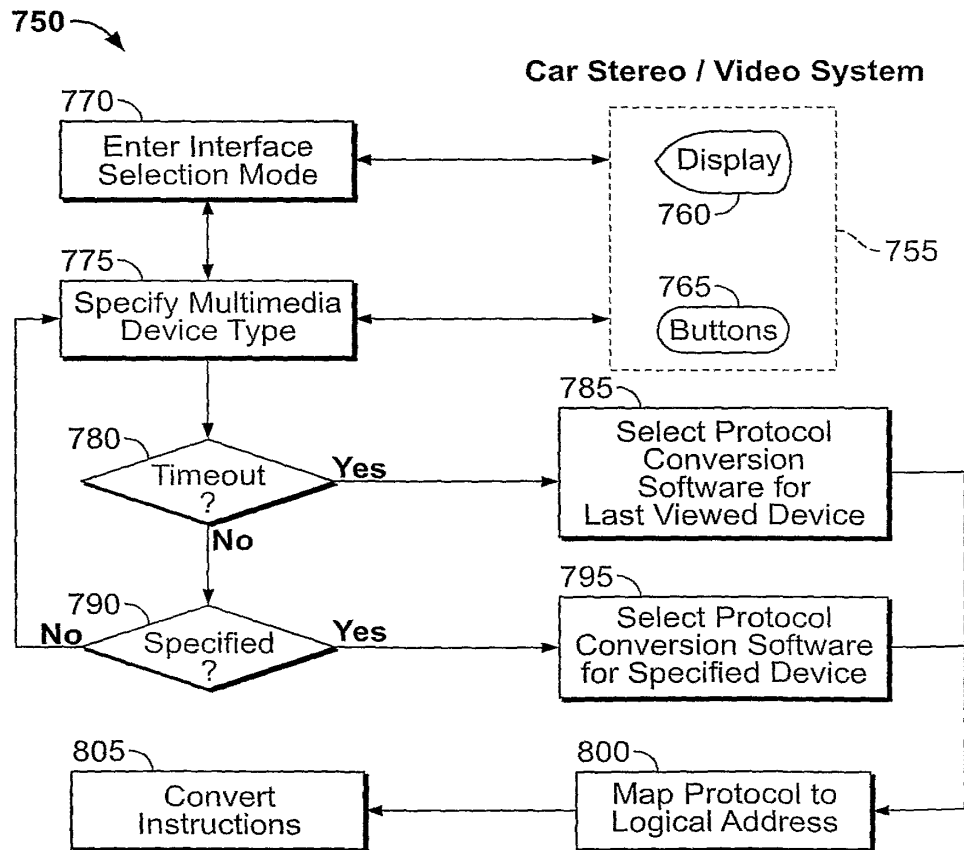


FIG. 15

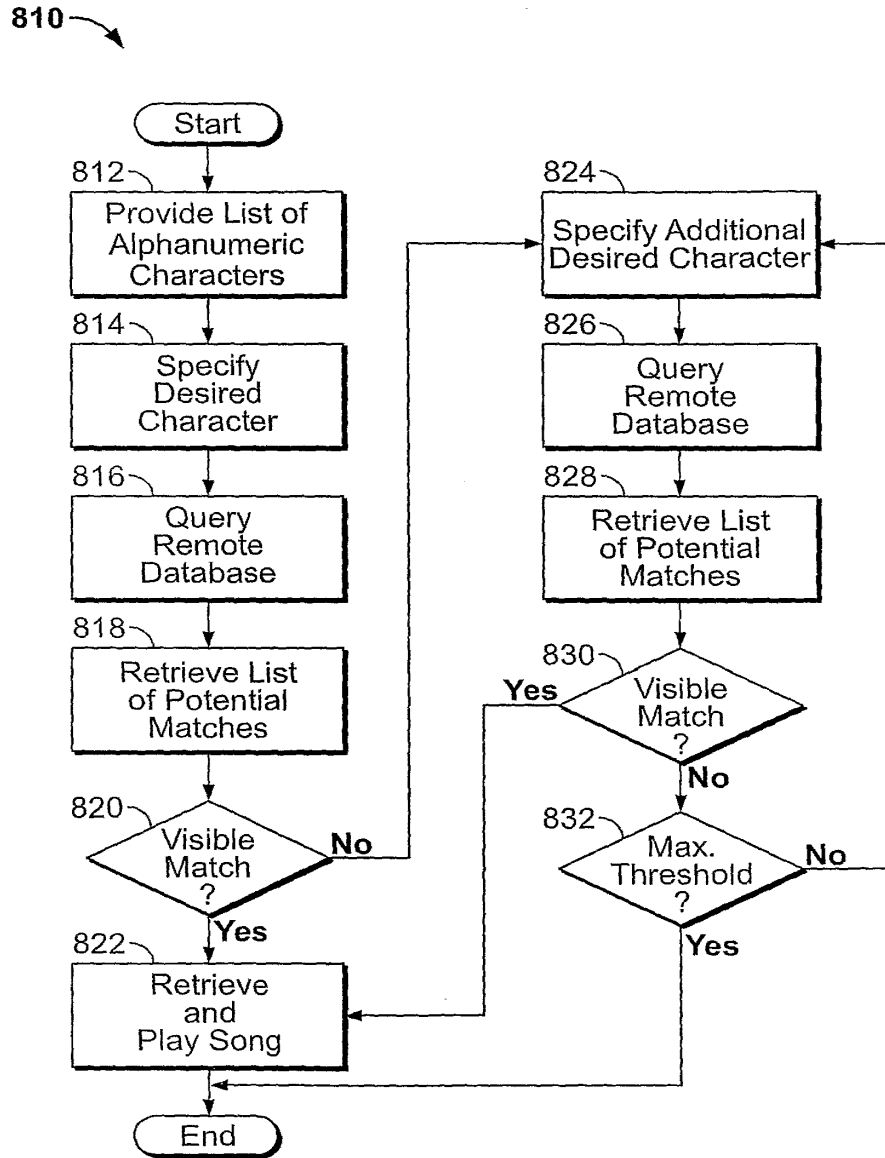


FIG. 16

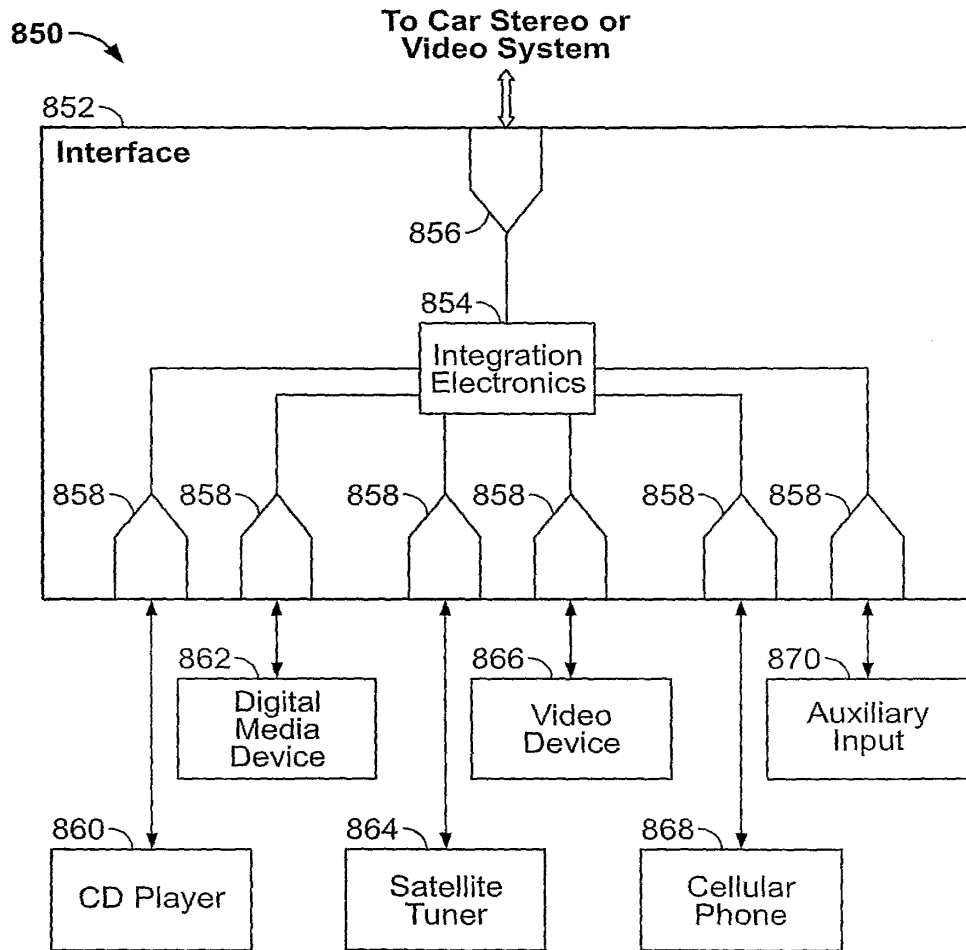


FIG. 17

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
24 June 2004 (24.06.2004)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2004/053722 A1

(51) International Patent Classification: G06F 17/00, H04B 1/00, 3/00

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US2003/039493

(22) International Filing Date: 11 December 2003 (11.12.2003)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
10/316,961 11 December 2002 (11.12.2002) US
60/523,714 20 November 2003 (20.11.2003) US
10/732,909 10 December 2003 (10.12.2003) US

(71) Applicant: BLITZSAFE OF AMERICA, INC. [US/US]; 33 Honeck Street, Englewood, NJ 07631 (US).

(72) Inventor: MARLOW, Ira; 6403 Hilltop Court, Fort Lee, NJ 07024 (US).

(74) Agent: FRISCIA, Michael, R.; Wolff & Samson, PC, One Boland Drive, West Orange, NJ 07052 (US).

(81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.

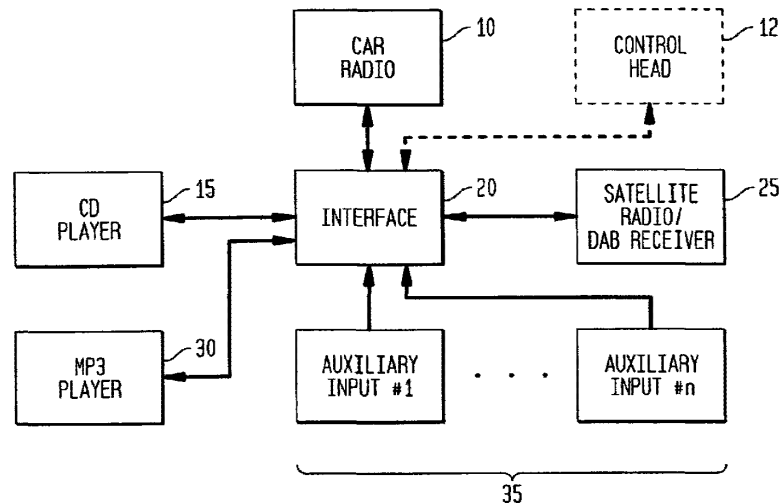
(84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

- with international search report
- before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of amendments

[Continued on next page]

(54) Title: AUDIO DEVICE INTEGRATION SYSTEM



(57) Abstract: An audio device integration system is provided. One or more after-market audio devices, such as a CD player (15), CD changer, MP3 player (30), satellite receiver (25), DAB receiver (25), or the like, is integrated for use with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system, wherein control commands can be issued at the car stereo (10) and responsive data from the audio device (15, 25, 30) can be displayed on the stereo. Control commands generated at the car stereo (10) are received, processed, converted into a format recognizable by the audio device (15, 25, 30), and dispatched to the audio device (15, 25, 30) for execution. Information from the audio device (15, 25, 30), including track, disc, song, station, time, and other information, is received, processed, converted into a format recognizable by the car stereo, and dispatched to the car stereo (10) for display thereon.

WO 2004/053722 A1



For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

AUDIO DEVICE INTEGRATION SYSTEM

SPECIFICATIONBACKGROUND OF THE INVENTIONFIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to an audio device integration system. More specifically, the present invention relates to an audio device integration system for integrating after-market components such as satellite receivers, CD players, CD changers, MP3 players, Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receivers, auxiliary audio sources, and the like with factory-installed (OEM) or after-market car stereo systems.

RELATED ART

Automobile audio systems have continued to advance in complexity and the number of options available to automobile purchasers. Early audio systems offered a simple AM and/or FM tuner, and perhaps an analog tape deck for allowing cassettes, 8-tracks, and other types of tapes to be played while driving. Such early systems were closed, in that external devices could not be easily integrated therewith.

With advances in digital technology, CD players have been included with automobile audio systems. Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEMs) often produce car stereos having CD players and/or changers for allowing CDs to be played while driving. However, such systems often include proprietary buses and protocols that do not allow after-market audio systems, such as satellite receivers (e.g., XM satellite tuners), digital audio broadcast (DAB) receivers, MP3 players, CD changers, auxiliary input sources, and the like, to be easily integrated therewith. Thus, automobile purchasers are frequently forced to either entirely replace the OEM audio system, or use same throughout the life of the vehicle or the duration of ownership. Even if the OEM radio is replaced with an after-market radio, the after-market radio also frequently is not operable with an external device.

A particular problem with integrating after-market audio systems with existing car stereos is that signals generated by the car stereo is in a proprietary format, and is not capable of being processed by the after-market system. Additionally, signals

generated by the after-market system are also in a proprietary format that is not recognizable by the car stereo. Thus, in order to integrate after-market systems with car stereos, it is necessary to convert signals between such systems.

It known in the art to provide one or more expansion modules for OEM and after-market car stereos for allowing external audio products to be integrated with the car stereo. However, such expansion modules only operate with and allow integration of external audio products manufactured by the same manufacturer as the OEM / after-market car stereo. For example, a satellite receiver manufactured by PIONEER, Inc., cannot be integrated with an OEM car radio manufactured by TOYOTA or an after-market car radio manufactured by CLARION, Inc. Thus, existing expansion modules only serve the limited purpose of integrating equipment by the same manufacturer as the car stereo. Thus, it would be desirable to provide an integration system that allows any audio device of any manufacture to be integrated with any OEM or after-market radio system.

Moreover, it would be desirable to provide an integration system that not only achieves integration of various audio devices that are alien to a given OEM or after-market stereo system, but also allows for information to be exchanged between the after-market device and the car stereo. For example, it would be desirable to provide a system wherein station, track, time, and song information can be retrieved from the after-market device, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display thereby, such as at an LCD panel of the car stereo. Such information could be transmitted and displayed on both hardwired radio systems (*e.g.*, radios installed in dashboards or at other locations within the car), or integrated for display on one or more software or graphically-driven radio systems operable with graphical display panels. Additionally, it would be desirable to provide an audio integration system that allows a user to control more than one device, such as a CD or satellite receiver and one or more auxiliary sources, and to quickly and conveniently switch between same using the existing controls of the car stereo.

Accordingly, the present invention addresses these needs by providing an audio integration system that allows a plurality of audio devices, such as CD players, CD changers, MP3 players, satellite receivers, DAB receivers, auxiliary input sources,

or a combination thereof, to be integrated into existing car stereos while allowing information to be displayed on, and control to be provided from, the car stereo.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to an audio device integration system. One or more after-market audio devices, such as a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver (e.g., XM tuner), digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, or auxiliary input source, can be connected to and operate with an existing stereo system in an automobile, such as an OEM car stereo system or an after-market car stereo system installed in the automobile. The integration system connects to and interacts with the car stereo at any available port of the car stereo, such as a CD input port, a satellite input, or other known type of connector. If the car stereo system is an after-market car stereo system, the present invention generates a signal that is sent to the car stereo to keep same in an operational state and responsive to external data and signals. Commands generated at the control panel are received by the present invention and converted into a format recognizable by the after-market audio device. The formatted commands are executed by the audio device, and audio therefrom is channeled to the car stereo. Information from the audio device is received by the present invention, converted into a format recognizable by the car stereo, and forwarded to the car stereo for display thereby. The formatted information could include information relating to a CD or MP3 track being played, channel, song, and artist information from a satellite receiver or DAB receiver, or video information from one or more external devices connected to the present invention. The information can be presented as one or more menus, textual, or graphical prompts for display on an LCD display of the radio, allowing interaction with the user at the radio. A docking port is provided for allowing portable external audio devices to be connected to the interface of the present invention.

In an embodiment of the present invention, a dual-input device is provided for integrating both an external audio device and an auxiliary input with an OEM or after-market car stereo. The user can select between the external audio device and the auxiliary input using the controls of the car stereo. The invention can automatically detect the type of device connected to the auxiliary input, and integrate same with the car stereo.

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with an existing car stereo system. A

user can select between the auxiliary sources using the control panel of the car stereo. One or more after-market audio devices can be integrated with the auxiliary input sources, and a user can switch between the audio device and the auxiliary input sources using the car stereo. Devices connected to the auxiliary input sources are inter-operable with the car stereo, and are capable of exchanging commands and data via the interface.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

These and other important objects and features of the invention will be apparent from the following Detailed Description of the Invention, taken in connection with the accompanying drawings, in which:

FIG. 1 is a block diagram showing the audio device integration system of the present invention.

FIG. 2a is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the audio device integration system of the present invention, wherein a CD player is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the audio device integration system of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2c is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the audio device integration system of the present invention, wherein a satellite or DAB receiver is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2d is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the audio device integration system of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2e is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the audio device integration system of the present invention, wherein a CD player and a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2f is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite or DAB receiver and a plurality of auxiliary input source are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2g is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player and a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2h is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary interfaces and an audio device are integrated with a car stereo.

FIG. 3a is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a CD player or an auxiliary input source with a car radio.

FIG. 3b is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating both a CD player and an auxiliary input source with a car radio, wherein the CD player and the auxiliary input are switchable by a user.

FIG. 3c is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 3d is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a satellite or DAB receiver with a car radio.

FIG. 4a is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a CD player with a car radio.

FIG. 4b is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a MP3 player with a car radio.

FIG. 4c is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a satellite receiver with a car radio.

FIG. 4d is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4e is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a CD player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4f is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a satellite or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4g is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a MP3 player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car stereo.

FIG. 5 is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for allowing a user to switch between an after-market audio device and one or more auxiliary input sources.

FIG. 6 is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for determining and handling various device types connected to the auxiliary input ports of the invention.

FIG. 7a is a perspective view of a docking station according to the present invention for retaining an audio device within a car.

FIG. 7b is an end view of the docking station of **FIG. 7a**.

FIGS. 8a-8b are perspective views of another embodiment of the docking station of the present invention, which includes the audio device integration system of the present invention incorporated therewith.

FIG. 9 is a block diagram showing the components of the docking station of **FIGS. 8a-8b**.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to an audio device integration system. One or more after-market audio devices, such as a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, or the like, can be integrated with an existing car radio, such as an OEM car stereo or an after-market car stereo. Control of the audio device is enabled using the car radio, and information from the audio device, such as channel, artist, track, time, and song information, is retrieved from the audio device, processed, and forwarded to the car radio for display thereon. The information channeled to the car radio can include video from the external device, as well as graphical and menu-based information. A user can review and interact with information via the car stereo. Commands from the car radio are received, processed by the present invention into a format recognizable by the audio device, and transmitted thereto for execution. One or more auxiliary input channels can be integrated by the present invention with the car radio. The user can switch between one or more audio devices and one or more auxiliary input channels using the control panel buttons of the car radio.

As used herein, the term “integration” or “integrated” is intended to mean connecting one or more external devices or inputs to an existing car radio or stereo via an interface, processing and handling signals and audio channels, allowing a user to control the devices via the car stereo, and displaying data from the devices on the radio. Thus, for example, integration of a CD player with a car stereo system allows for the CD player to be remotely controlled via the control panel of the stereo system, and data from the CD player to be sent to the display of the stereo. Of course, control of audio devices can be provided at locations other than the control panel of the radio without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention. Further, as used herein, the term “inter-operable” is intended to mean allowing the external audio device to receive and process commands that have been formatted by the interface of the present invention, as well as allowing a car stereo to display information that is generated by the external audio device and processed by the present invention. Additionally, by the term “inter-operable,” it is meant allowing a device that is alien to the environment of an existing OEM or after-market car stereo to be utilized thereby.

Also, as used herein, the terms “car stereo” and “car radio” are used interchangeably and are intended to include all presently existing car stereos and radios, such as physical devices that are present at any location within a vehicle, in addition to software and/or graphically- or display-driven receivers. An example of such a receiver is a software-driven receiver that operates on a universal LCD panel within a vehicle and is operable by a user via a graphical user interface displayed on the universal LCD panel. Further, any future receiver, whether a hardwired or a software/graphical receiver operable on one or more displays, is considered within the definition of the terms “car stereo” and “car radio,” as used herein, and is within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 1 is a block diagram showing the audio device integration (or interface) system of the present invention, generally indicated at **20**. A plurality of devices and auxiliary inputs can be connected to the interface **20**, and integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. A CD player or changer **15** can be integrated with the radio **10** via interface **20**. A satellite radio or DAB receiver **25**, such as an XM radio satellite receiver or DAB receiver known in the art, could be integrated with the radio **10**, via the interface **20**. Further, an MP3 player could also be integrated with the radio **10** via interface **20**. Moreover, a plurality of auxiliary input sources, illustratively indicated as auxiliary input sources **35** (comprising input sources 1 through n , n being any number), could also be integrated with the car radio **10** via interface **20**. Optionally, a control head **12**, such as that commonly used with after-market CD changers and other similar devices, could be integrated with the car radio **10** via interface **20**, for controlling any of the car radio **10**, CD player/changer **15**, satellite/DAB receiver **25**, MP3 player **30**, and auxiliary input sources **35**. Thus, as can be readily appreciated, the interface **20** of the present invention allows for the integration of a multitude of devices and inputs with an OEM or after-market car radio or stereo.

FIG. 2a is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the audio device interface system of the present invention, wherein a CD player/changer **15** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. The CD player **15** is electrically connected with the interface **20**, and exchanges data and audio signals therewith. The interface **20** is electrically connected with the car radio **10**, and exchanges data and

audio signals therewith. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the car radio **10** includes a display **13** (such as an alphanumeric, electroluminescent display) for displaying information, and a plurality of control panel buttons **14** that normally operate to control the radio **10**. The interface **20** allows the CD player **15** to be controlled by the control buttons **14** of the radio **10**. Further, the interface **20** allows information from the CD player **15**, such as track, disc, time, and song information, to be retrieved therefrom, processed and formatted by the interface **20**, sent to the display **13** of the radio **10**.

Importantly, the interface **20** allows for the remote control of the CD player **15** from the radio **10** (e.g., the CD player **15** could be located in the trunk of a car, while the radio **10** is mounted on the dashboard of the car). Thus, for example, one or more discs stored within the CD player **15** can be remotely selected by a user from the radio **10**, and tracks on one or more of the discs can be selected therefrom. Moreover, standard CD operational commands, such as pause, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track forward, and track reverse (among other commands) can be remotely entered at the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10** for remotely controlling the CD player **15**.

FIG. 2b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein an MP3 player **30** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10** via interface **20**. As mentioned earlier, the interface **20** of the present invention allows for a plurality of disparate audio devices to be integrated with an existing car radio for use therewith. Thus, as shown in **FIG. 2b**, remote control of the MP3 player **30** via radio **10** is provided for via interface **20**. The MP3 player **30** is electronically interconnected with the interface **20**, which itself is electrically interconnected with the car radio **10**. The interface **20** allows data and audio signals to be exchanged between the MP3 player **30** and the car radio **10**, and processes and formats signals accordingly so that instructions and data from the radio **10** are processable by the MP3 player **30**, and vice versa. Operational commands, such as track selection, pause, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, and other commands, are entered via the control panel buttons **14** of car radio **10**, processed by the interface **20**, and formatted for execution by the MP3 player **30**. Data from the MP3 player, such as track, time, and song information, is received by the interface **20**, processed thereby,

and sent to the radio **10** for display on display **13**. Audio from the MP3 player **30** is selectively forwarded by the interface **20** to the radio **10** for playing.

FIG. 2c is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite receiver or DAB receiver **25** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10** via the interface **20**. Satellite/DAB receiver **25** can be any satellite radio receiver known in the art, such as XM or Sirius, or any DAB receiver known in the art. The satellite/DAB receiver **25** is electrically interconnected with the interface **20**, which itself is electrically interconnected with the car radio **10**. The satellite/DAB receiver **25** is remotely operable by the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10**. Commands from the radio **10** are received by the interface **20**, processed and formatted thereby, and dispatched to the satellite/DAB receiver **25** for execution thereby. Information from the satellite/DAB receiver **25**, including time, station, and song information, is received by the interface **20**, processed, and transmitted to the radio **10** for display on display **13**. Further, audio from the satellite/DAB receiver **25** is selectively forwarded by the interface **20** for playing by the radio **10**.

FIG. 2d is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. The auxiliary inputs **35** can be connected to analog sources, or can be digitally coupled with one or more audio devices, such as after-market CD players, CD changers, MP3 players, satellite receivers, DAB receivers, and the like, and integrated with an existing car stereo. Preferably, four auxiliary input sources are connectable with the interface **20**, but any number of auxiliary input sources could be included. Audio from the auxiliary input sources **35** is selectively forwarded to the radio **10** under command of the user. As will be discussed herein in greater detail, a user can select a desired input source from the auxiliary input sources **35** by depressing one or more of the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** receives the command initiated from the control panel, processes same, and connects the corresponding input source from the auxiliary input sources **35** to allow audio therefrom to be forwarded to the radio **10** for playing. Further, the interface **20** determines the type of audio devices connected to the auxiliary input ports **35**, and integrates same with the car stereo **10**.

As mentioned previously, the present invention allows one or more external audio devices to be integrated with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo, along with one or more auxiliary input sources, and the user can select between these sources using the controls of the car stereo. Such “dual input” capability allows operation with devices connected to either of the inputs of the device, or both. Importantly, the device can operate in “plug and play” mode, wherein any device connected to one of the inputs is automatically detected by the present invention, its device type determined, and the device automatically integrated with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo. Thus, the present invention is not dependent any specific device type to be connected therewith to operate. For example, a user can first purchase a CD changer, plug same into a dual interface, and use same with the car stereo. At a point later in time, the user could purchase an XM tuner, plug same into the device, and the tuner will automatically be detected and integrated with the car stereo, allowing the user to select from and operate both devices from the car stereo. It should be noted that such plug and play capability is not limited to a dual input device, but is provided for in every embodiment of the present invention. The dual-input configuration of the present invention is illustrated in **FIGS. 2e-2h** and described below.

FIG. 2e is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein an external CD player/changer **15** and one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car stereo **10**. Both the CD player **15** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** are electrically interconnected with the interface **20**, which, in turn, is electrically interconnected to the radio **10**. Using the controls **14** of the radio **10**, a user can select between the CD player **15** and one or more of the inputs **35** to selectively channel audio from these sources to the radio. The command to select from one of these sources is received by the interface **20**, processed thereby, and the corresponding source is channeled to the radio **10** by the interface **20**. As will be discussed later in greater detail, the interface **20** contains internal processing logic for selecting between these sources.

FIG. 2f is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite receiver or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources are integrated by the interface **20** with an OEM or after-market car radio

10. Similar to the embodiment of the present invention illustrated in **FIG. 2e** and described earlier, the interface **20** allows a user to select between the satellite/DAB receiver **25** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** using the controls **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** contains processing logic, described in greater detail below, for allowing switching between the satellite/DAB receiver **25** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35**.

FIG. 2g is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player **30** and one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated by the interface **20** with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. Similar to the embodiments of the present invention illustrated in **FIGS. 2e** and **2f** and described earlier, the interface **20** allows a user to select between the MP3 player **30** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** using the controls **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** contains processing logic, as will be discussed later in greater detail, for allowing switching between the MP3 player **30** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35**.

FIG. 2h is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary interfaces **40** and **44** and an audio device **17** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car stereo **10**. Importantly, the present invention can be expanded to allow a plurality of auxiliary inputs to be connected to the car stereo **10** in a tree-like fashion. Thus, as can be seen in **FIG. 2h**, a first auxiliary interface **40** is connected to the interface **20**, and allows data and audio from the ports **42** to be exchanged with the car radio **10**. Connected to one of the ports **42** is another auxiliary interface **44**, which, in turn, provides a plurality of input ports **46**. Any device connected to any of the ports **42** or **46** can be integrated with the car radio **10**. Further, any device connected to the ports **42** or **46** can be inter-operable with the car radio **10**, allowing commands to be entered from the car radio **10** (*e.g.*, such as via the control panel **14**) for commanding the device, and information from the device to be displayed by the car radio **10**. Conceivably, by configuring the interfaces **40**, **44**, and successive interfaces in a tree configuration, any number of devices can be integrated using the present invention.

The various embodiments of the present invention described above and shown in **FIGS. 1** through **2h** are illustrative in nature and are not intended to limit the spirit

or scope of the present invention. Indeed, any conceivable audio device or input source, in any desired combination, can be integrated by the present invention into existing car stereo systems. Further, it is conceivable that not only can data and audio signals be exchanged between the car stereo and any external device, but also video information that can be captured by the present invention, processed thereby, and transmitted to the car stereo for display thereby and interaction with a user thereat.

Various circuit configurations can be employed to carry out the present invention. Examples of such configurations are described below and shown in **FIGS. 3a-3d**.

FIG. 3a is an illustrative circuit diagram according to the present invention for integrating a CD player or an auxiliary input source with an existing car stereo system. A plurality of ports **J1C1**, **J2A1**, **X2**, **RCH**, and **LCH** are provided for allowing connection of the interface system of the present invention between an existing car radio, an after-market CD player or changer, or an auxiliary input source. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. Port **J1C1** connects to the input port of an OEM car radio, such as that manufactured by TOYOTA, Inc. Conceivably, port **J1C1** could be modified to allow connection to the input port of an after-market car radio. Ports **J2A1**, **X2**, **RCH**, and **LCH** connect to an after-market CD changer, such as that manufactured by PANASONIC, Inc., or to an auxiliary input source.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1C1**, **J2A1**, and **X2**, and provides functionality for integrating the CD player or auxiliary input source connected to the ports **J2A1**, **X2**, **RCH**, and **LCH**. For example, microcontroller **U1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connector **J1C1**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the CD player or auxiliary input source via connector **J2A1**. Additionally, the microcontroller **U1** receives information provided by the CD player or auxiliary input source via connector **J2A1**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connector **J1C1** for display on the display of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the ports **J2A1**, **X2**, **RCH** and **LCH** is selectively channeled to the

car radio at port **J1C1** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F628 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F628 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having an internal, 4 MHz internal oscillator, 128 bytes of EEPROM data memory, a capture/compare/PWM, a USART, 2 comparators, and a programmable voltage reference. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **U1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R13**, diodes **D1** through **D4**, capacitors **C1** and **C2**, and oscillator **Y1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J1C1**, **J2A1**, **X2**, **RCH**, and **LCH**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3a** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3b is a diagram showing an illustrative circuit configuration according to the present invention, wherein one or more after-market CD changers / players and an auxiliary input source are integrated with an existing car stereo, and wherein the user can select between the CD changer/player and the auxiliary input using the controls of the car stereo. A plurality of connectors are provided, illustratively indicated as ports **J4A**, **J4B**, **J3**, **J5L1**, **J5R1**, **J1**, and **J2**. Ports **J4A**, **J4B**, and **J3** allow the audio device interface system of the present invention to be connected to one or more existing car stereos, such as an OEM car stereo or an after-market car stereo. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. For example, ports **J4A** and **J4B** can be connected to an OEM car stereo manufactured by BMW, Inc. Port **J3** can be connected to a car stereo manufactured by LANDROVER, Inc. Of course, any number of car stereos, by any manufacturer, could be provided. Ports **J1** and **J2** allow connection to an after-market CD changer or player, such as that manufactured by ALPINE, Inc., and an auxiliary input source.

Optionally, ports **J5L1** and **J5R1** allow integration of a standard analog (line-level) source. Of course, a single standalone CD player or auxiliary input source could be connected to either of ports **J1** or **J2**.

Microcontroller **DD1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J4A**, **J4B**, **J3**, **J5L1**, **J5R1**, **J1**, and **J2**, and provides functionality for integrating the CD player and auxiliary input source connected to the ports **J1** and **J2** with the car stereo connected to the ports **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3**. For example, microcontroller **DD1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connectors **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the CD player and auxiliary input source via connectors **J1** or **J2**. Additionally, the microcontroller **DD1** receives information provided by the CD player and auxiliary input source via connectors **J1** or **J2**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connectors **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3** for display on the display of the car stereo. Further, the microcontroller **DD1** controls multiplexer **DA3** to allow selection between the CD player/changer and the auxiliary input. Audio signals provided at the ports **J1**, **J2**, **J5L1** and **J5R1** is selectively channeled to the car radio at ports **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **DD1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **DD1** comprises the 16F872 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F872 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having 64 bytes of EEPROM data memory, self-programming capability, an ICD, 5 channels of 10 bit Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converters, 2 timers, capture/compare/PWM functions, a USART, and a synchronous serial port configurable as either a 3-wire serial peripheral interface or a 2-wire inter-integrated circuit bus. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **DD1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention. Additionally, in a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the multiplexer **DA3** comprises the CD4053 triple, two-channel analog multiplexer/demultiplexer manufactured by FAIRCHILD SEMICONDUCTOR, Inc. Any other suitable multiplexer can be substituted for **DA3** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R18**, diodes **D1** through **D3**, capacitors **C1-C11**, and **G1-G3**, transistors **Q1-Q3**, transformers **T1** and **T2**, amplifiers **LCH:A** and **LCH:B**, oscillator **XTAL1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **DD1** and the multiplexer **DA3** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J4A**, **J4B**, **J3**, **J5L1**, **J5R1**, **J1**, and **J2**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers and multiplexers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers and multiplexers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3b** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3c is a diagram showing an illustrative circuit configuration for integrating a plurality of auxiliary inputs using the controls of the car stereo. A plurality of connectors are provided, illustratively indicated as ports **J1**, **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4**. Port **J1** allows the audio device integration system of the present invention to be connected to one or more existing car stereos. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. For example, port **J1** could be connected to an OEM car stereo manufactured by HONDA, Inc., or any other manufacturer. Ports **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4** allow connection with the left and right channels of four auxiliary input sources. Of course, any number of auxiliary input sources and ports/connectors could be provided.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1**, **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4**, and provides functionality for integrating one or more auxiliary input sources connected to the ports **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4** with the car stereo connected to the port **J1**. Further, the microcontroller **U1** controls multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** to allow selection amongst any of the auxiliary inputs using the controls of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the ports **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4** are selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J1** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**. In a preferred

embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F872 microcontroller discussed earlier. Additionally, in a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** comprises the CD4053 triple, two-channel analog multiplexer/demultiplexer, discussed earlier. Any other suitable microcontroller and multiplexers can be substituted for **U1**, **DA3**, and **DA4** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R15**, diodes **D1** through **D3**, capacitors **C1-C5**, transistors **Q1-Q2**, amplifiers **DA1:A** and **DA1:B**, and oscillator **Y1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** and the multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** with the hardware connected to the ports **J1**, **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers and multiplexers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers and multiplexers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3c** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3d is an illustrative circuit diagram according to the present invention for integrating a satellite receiver with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system. Ports **J1** and **J2** are provided for allowing connection of the integration system of the present invention between an existing car radio and a satellite receiver. These ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. Port **J2** connects to the input port of an existing car radio, such as that manufactured by KENWOOD, Inc. Port **J1** connects to an after-market satellite receiver, such as that manufactured by PIONEER, Inc.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1** and **J2**, and provides functionality for integrating the satellite receiver connected to the port **J1** with the car stereo connected to the port **J2**. For example, microcontroller **U1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connector **J2**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the satellite receiver via connector **J2**. Additionally, the microcontroller **U1** receives information provided by the

satellite receiver via connector **J1**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connector **J2** for display on the display of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the port **J1** is selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J2** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F873 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F873 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having 128 bytes of EEPROM data memory, self-programming capability, an ICD, 5 channels of 10 bit Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converters, 2 timers, 2 capture/compare/PWM functions, a synchronous serial port that can be configured as either a 3-wire serial peripheral interface or a 2-wire inter-integrated circuit bus, and a USART. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **U1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R7**, capacitors **C1** and **C2**, and amplifier **A1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J1** and **J2**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3d** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIGS. 4a through **6** are flowcharts showing processing logic according to the present invention. Such logic can be embodied as software and/or instructions stored in a read-only memory circuit (*e.g.*, and EEPROM circuit), or other similar device. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the processing logic described herein is stored in one or more microcontrollers, such as the microcontrollers discussed earlier with reference to **FIGS. 3a-3d**. Of course, any other suitable means for storing the processing logic of the present invention can be employed.

FIG. 4a is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **100**, for integrating a CD player or changer with an existing OEM or after-market car

stereo system. Beginning in step **100**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **104** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **106** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step **106** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **106**, a CD handling process, indicated as block **108**, is invoked, allowing the CD player/changer to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **110**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a CD player/changer is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. If the car radio is an OEM car radio, the CD player presence signal need not be generated. Concurrently with step **110**, or within a short period of time before or after the execution of step **110**, steps **112** and **114** are invoked. In step **112**, the audio channels of the CD player/changer are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the CD player/changer to be played through the car stereo. In step **114**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the CD player/changer, including track and time information, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the external CD player/changer can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps **110**, **112**, and **114** have been executed, control passes to step **116**.

In steps **116**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for CD operational commands. Examples of such commands include track forward, track reverse, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track program, random track play, and other similar commands. In step **118**, if a command is not detected, step **116** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **118** invokes step **120**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the CD player/changer connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a GM car radio is converted into a format recognizable by a CD player/changer manufactured by ALPINE, Inc. Any conceivable command from any

type of car radio can be formatted for use by a CD player/changer of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step 122 is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the CD player/changer and executed. Step 110 is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4b is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at 130, for integrating an MP3 player with an existing car stereo system. Beginning in step 132, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step 134 is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step 136 is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step 136 is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step 136, an MP3 handling process, indicated as block 138, is invoked, allowing the MP3 player to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step 140, the CD player presence signal, described earlier, is generated by the present invention and continuously transmitted to the car stereo. If the car radio is an OEM car radio, the CD player presence signal need not be generated. In step 142, the audio channels of the MP3 player are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the MP3 player to be played through the car stereo. In step 144, data is retrieved by the present invention from the MP3 player, including track, time, title, and song information, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the MP3 player can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps 140, 142, and 144 have been executed, control passes to step 146.

In steps 146, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for MP3 operational commands. Examples of such commands include track forward, track reverse, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track program, random track play, and other similar commands. In step 148, if a command is not detected, step 146 is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step 148 invokes step 150, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the MP3 player connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command

issued from a HONDA car radio is converted into a format recognizable by an MP3 player manufactured by PANASONIC, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by an MP3 player of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step 152 is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the MP3 player and executed. Step 140 is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4c is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at 160, for integrating a satellite receiver or a DAB receiver with an existing car stereo system. Beginning in step 162, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step 164 is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step 166 is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step 166 is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step 166, a satellite/DAB receiver handling process, indicated as block 168, is invoked, allowing the satellite/DAB receiver to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step 170, the CD player presence signal, described earlier, is generated by the present invention and continuously transmitted to the car stereo. If the car radio is an OEM car radio, the CD player presence signal need not be generated. In step 172, the audio channels of the satellite/DAB receiver are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the satellite receiver or DAB receiver to be played through the car stereo. In step 174, data is retrieved by the present invention from the satellite/DAB receiver, including channel number, channel name, artist name, song time, and song title, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. The information could be presented in one or more menus, or via a graphical interface viewable and manipulable by the user at the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the receiver can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps 170, 172, and 174 have been executed, control passes to step 176.

In steps 176, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for satellite/DAB receiver operational commands. Examples of such commands

include station up, station down, station memory program, and other similar commands. In step 178, if a command is not detected, step 176 is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step 178 invokes step 180, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the satellite/DAB receiver connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a FORD car radio is converted into a format recognizable by a satellite receiver manufactured by PIONEER, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by a satellite/DAB receiver of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step 182 is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the satellite/DAB receiver and executed. Step 170 is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4d is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at 190, for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step 192, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step 194 is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step 196 is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step 196 is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step 196, an auxiliary input handling process, indicated as block 198, is invoked, allowing one or more auxiliary inputs to be connected (channeled) to the car stereo. Further, if a plurality of auxiliary inputs exist, the logic of block 198 allows a user to select a desired input from the plurality of inputs. Beginning in step 200, the CD player presence signal, described earlier, is generated by the present invention and continuously transmitted to the car stereo. If the car radio is an OEM car radio, the CD player presence signal need not be generated. Then, in step 202, the control panel buttons of the car stereo are monitored.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, each of the one or more auxiliary input sources are selectable by selecting a CD disc number on the control panel of the car radio. Thus, in step 204, a determination is made as to whether the first disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step 206 is invoked, wherein the first auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car

stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **208** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the second disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **210** is invoked, wherein the second auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **212** is invoked, wherein a third determination is made as to whether the third disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **214** is invoked, wherein the third auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **216** is invoked, wherein a fourth determination is made as to whether the fourth disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **218** is invoked, wherein the fourth auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **200** is re-invoked, and the process disclosed for block **198** repeated. Further, if any of steps **206**, **210**, **214**, or **218** are executed, then step **200** is re-invoked and block **198** repeated.

The process disclosed in block **198** allows a user to select from one of four auxiliary input sources using the control buttons of the car stereo. Of course, the number of auxiliary input sources connectable with and selectable by the present invention can be expanded to any desired number. Thus, for example, 6 auxiliary input sources could be provided and switched using corresponding selection key(s) or keystroke(s) on the control panel of the radio. Moreover, any desired keystroke, selection sequence, or button(s) on the control panel of the radio, or elsewhere, can be utilized to select from the auxiliary input sources without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

FIG. 4e is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **220**, for integrating a CD player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step **222**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **224** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **226** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step **226** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step 226, then step 228 is invoked, wherein the CD player presence signal, described earlier, is generated by the present invention and continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Then, in step 230, a determination is made as to whether a CD player is present (*i.e.*, whether an external CD player or changer is connected to the audio device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps 231 and 232 are invoked. In step 231, the logic of block 108 of FIG. 4a (the CD handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the CD player/changer can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step 232, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external CD player/changer to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step 234 is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step 234 re-invokes step 228, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external CD player/changer to one of the auxiliary input sources), step 236 is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the CD player/changer are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step 238 is invoked, wherein the logic of block 198 of FIG. 4d (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step 230 (no external CD player/changer is connected to the present invention), then step 238 is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

FIG. 4f is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at 240, for integrating a satellite receiver or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step 242, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step 244 is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step 246 is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step 246 is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step 246, then step 248 is invoked, wherein the CD player presence signal, described earlier, is generated by the present invention and continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Then, in step 250, a determination is made as to whether a satellite receiver or DAB receiver is present (*i.e.*, whether an external satellite receiver or DAB receiver is connected to the audio device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps 231 and 232 are invoked. In step 251, the logic of block 168 of FIG. 4c (the satellite/DAB receiver handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the satellite receiver can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step 252, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external satellite receiver to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step 254 is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step 254 re-invokes step 258, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external satellite/DAB receiver to one of the auxiliary input sources), step 256 is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the satellite receiver are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step 258 is invoked, wherein the logic of block 198 of FIG. 4d (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step 250 (no external satellite/DAB receiver is connected to the present invention), then step 258 is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

FIG. 4g is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating an MP3 player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car stereo. Beginning in step 262, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step 264 is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step 266 is invoked, wherein a

second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step 266 is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step 266, then step 268 is invoked, wherein the CD player presence signal, described earlier, is generated by the present invention and continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Then, in step 270, a determination is made as to whether an MP3 player is present (*i.e.*, whether an external MP3 player is connected to the audio device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps 271 and 272 are invoked. In step 271, the logic of block 138 of FIG. 4b (the MP3 handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the CD player/changer can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step 272, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external CD player/changer to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step 274 is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step 274 re-invokes step 278, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external MP3 player to one of the auxiliary input sources), step 276 is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the MP3 player are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step 278 is invoked, wherein the logic of block 198 of FIG. 4d (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step 270 (no external MP3 player is connected to the present invention), then step 278 is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

As mentioned previously, to enable integration, the present invention contains logic for converting command signals issued from an after-market or OEM car stereo into a format compatible with one or more external audio devices connected to the present invention. Such logic can be applied to convert any car stereo signal for use with any external device. For purposes of illustration, a sample code portion is shown

in **Table 1**, below, for converting control signals from a BMW car stereo into a format understandable by a CD changer:

Table 1

```

; =====
; Radio requests changer to STOP (exit PLAY mode)
; Decoding 6805183801004C message
; =====

Encode_RD_stop_msg:

    movlw 0x68
    xorwf BMW_Recv_buff,W
    skpz
    return

    movlw 0x05
    xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+1,W
    skpz
    return

    movlw 0x18
    xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+2,W
    skpz
    return

    movlw 0x38
    xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+3,W
    skpz
    return

    movlw 0x01
    xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+4,W
    skpz
    return

    tstf BMW_Recv_buff+5
    skpz
    return

    movlw 0x4C
    xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+6,W
    skpz
    return

    bsf BMW_Recv_STOP_msg
    return

```

The code portion shown in **Table 1** receives a STOP command issued by a BMW stereo, in a format proprietary to BMW stereos. Preferably, the received command is stored in a first buffer, such as BMW_Recv_buff. The procedure "Encode_RD_stop_msg" repetitively applies an XOR function to the STOP command, resulting in a new command that is in a format compatible with the after-market CD

player. The command is then stored in an output buffer for dispatching to the CD player.

Additionally, the present invention contains logic for retrieving information from an after-market audio device, and converting same into a format compatible with the car stereo for display thereby. Such logic can be applied to convert any data from the external device for display on the car stereo. For purposes of illustration, a sample code portion is shown in **Table 2**, below, for converting data from a CD changer into a format understandable by a BMW car stereo:

Table 2

```

;      =====
;      Changer replies with STOP confirmation
;      Encoding 180A68390002003F0001027D message
;      =====

Load_CD_stop_msg:
    movlw 0x18
    movwf BMW_Send_buff

    movlw 0x0A
    movwf BMW_Send_buff+1

    movlw 0x68
    movwf BMW_Send_buff+2

    movlw 0x39
    movwf BMW_Send_buff+3

    movlw 0x00          ;current status_XX=00, power off
    movwf BMW_Send_buff+4

    movlw 0x02          ;current status_YY=02, power off
    movwf BMW_Send_buff+5

    clrf BMW_Send_buff+6          ;separate field, always =0

    movfw BMW_MM_stat          ;current status_MM , magazine
config    movwf BMW_Send_buff+7

    clrf BMW_Send_buff+8          ;separate field, always =0

    movfw BMW_DD_stat          ;current status_DD , current disc
    movwf BMW_Send_buff+9

    movfw BMW_TT_stat          ;current status_TT , current
track    movwf BMW_Send_buff+10

    xorwf BMW_Send_buff+9,W ;calculate check sum
    xorwf BMW_Send_buff+8,W
    xorwf BMW_Send_buff+7,W

```

31

```

xorwf BMW_Send_buff+6,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+5,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+4,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+3,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+2,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+1,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff,W

movwf BMW_Send_buff+11 ;store check sum
movlw D'12' ;12 bytes total
movwf BMW_Send_cnt
bsf BMW_Send_on ;ready to send
return

```

The code portion shown in **Table 2** receives a STOP confirmation message from the CD player, in a format proprietary to the CD player. Preferably, the received command is stored in a first buffer, such as BMW_Send_buff. The procedure “Load_CD_stop_msg” retrieves status information, magazine information, current disc, and current track information from the CD changer, and constructs a response containing this information. Then, a checksum is calculated and stored in another buffer. The response and checksum are in a format compatible with the BMW stereo, and are ready for dispatching to the car stereo.

While the above code portions are shown using assembler language, it is to be expressly understood that any low or high level language known in the art, such as C or C++, could be utilized without departing from the spirit or scope of the invention. It will be appreciated that various other code portions can be developed for converting signals from any after-market or OEM car stereo for use by an after-market external audio device, and vice versa.

FIG. 5 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **300** for allowing a user to switch between an after-market audio device, and one or more auxiliary input sources. As was discussed earlier, the present invention allows a user to switch from one or more connected audio devices, such as an external CD player/changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, DAB receiver, or the like, and activate one or more auxiliary input sources. A selection sequence, initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo, allows such switching. Beginning in step **302**, the buttons of the control panel are monitored. In step **304**, a determination is made as to whether a “Track Up” button or sequence has been initiated by the user. The “Track Up” button or sequence can for a CD player, MP3 player, or any other device. If a

negative determination is made, step 306 is invoked, wherein the sensed button or sequence is processed in accordance with the present invention and dispatched to the external audio device for execution. Then, step 302 is re-invoked, so that additional buttons or sequences can be monitored.

In the event that a positive determination is made in step 304, step 308 is invoked, wherein the present invention waits for a predetermined period of time while monitoring the control panel buttons for additional buttons or sequences. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the predetermined period of time is 750 milliseconds, but of course, other time durations are considered within the spirit and scope of the present invention. In step 310, a determination is made as to whether the user has initiated a "Track Down" button or sequence at the control panel of the car stereo within the predetermined time period. The track down button or sequence can be for a CD player, MP3 player, or any other device. If a negative determination is made, step 312 is invoked. In step 312, a determination is made as to whether a timeout has occurred (*e.g.*, whether the predetermined period of time has expired). If a negative determination is made, step 308 is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made, step 312 invokes step 306, so that any buttons or key sequences initiated by the user that are not a "Track Down" command are processed in accordance with the present invention and dispatched to the audio device for execution.

In the event that a positive determination is made in step 310 (a "Track Down" button or sequence has been initiated within the predetermined time period), then step 314 is invoked. In step 314, the audio channels of the audio device are disconnected, and then step 316 is invoked. In step 316, the logic of block 198 of FIG. 4d (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is invoked, so that the user can select from one of the auxiliary input sources in accordance with the present invention. Thus, at this point in time, the system has switched, under user control, from the audio device to a desired auxiliary input. Although the foregoing description of the process 300 has been described with reference to "Track Up" and "Track Down" buttons or commands initiated by the user, it is to be expressly understood that any desired key sequence, keystroke, button depress, or any other action, can be sensed in accordance with the present invention and utilized for switching modes.

When operating in auxiliary mode, the present invention provides an indication on the display of the car stereo corresponding to such mode. For example, the CD number could be displayed as "1", and the track number displayed as "99," thus indicating to the user that the system is operating in auxiliary mode and that audio and data is being supplied from an auxiliary input source. Of course, any other indication could be generated and displayed on the display of the car stereo, such as a graphical display (*e.g.*, an icon) or textual prompt.

FIG. 6 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **320**, for determining and handling various device types connected to the auxiliary input ports of the invention. The present invention can sense device types connected to the auxiliary input ports, and can integrate same with the car stereo using the procedures discussed earlier. Beginning in step **322**, the control panel buttons of the car stereo are monitored for a button or sequence initiated by the user corresponding to an auxiliary input selection (such as the disc number method discussed earlier with reference to **FIG. 4d**). In response to an auxiliary input selection, step **324** is invoked, wherein the type of device connected to the selected auxiliary input is sensed by the present invention. Then, step **326** is invoked.

In step **326**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is a CD player/changer. If a positive determination is made, step **328** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **108** of **FIG. 4a** (the CD handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the CD player is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **326**, then step **330** is invoked. In step **330**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is an MP3 player. If a positive determination is made, step **334** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **138** of **FIG. 4b** (the MP3 handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the MP3 player is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **330**, then step **336** is invoked. In step **336**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is a satellite receiver or a DAB receiver. If a positive determination is made, step **338** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **168** of **FIG. 4c** (the satellite/DAB receiver handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the satellite receiver is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **336**, step **322** is re-

invoked, so that additional auxiliary input selections can be monitored and processed accordingly. Of course, process 320 can be expanded to allow other types of devices connected to the auxiliary inputs of the present invention to be integrated with the car stereo.

The present invention can be expanded for allowing video information generated by an external device to be integrated with the display of an existing OEM or after-market car stereo. In such a mode, the invention accepts RGB input signals from the external device, and converts same to composite signals. The composite signals are then forwarded to the car stereo for display thereby, such as on an LCD panel of the stereo. Further, information from the external device can be formatted and presented to the user in one or more graphical user interfaces or menus capable of being viewed and manipulated on the car stereo.

FIG. 7a is a perspective view of a docking station 400 according to the present invention for retaining an audio device within a car. Importantly, the present invention can be adapted to allow portable audio devices to be integrated with an existing car stereo. The docking station 400 allows such portable devices to be conveniently docked and integrated with the car stereo. The docking station 400 includes a top portion 402 hingedly connected at a rear portion 408 to a bottom portion 404, preferably in a clam-like configuration. A portable audio device 410, such as the SKYFI radio distributed by DELPHI, Inc., is physically and electrically connected with the docking portion 412, and contained within the station 100. A clasp 406 can be provided for holding the top and bottom portions in a closed position to retain the device 410. Optionally, a video device could also be docked using the docking station 400, and tabs 413 can be provided for holding the docking station 400 in place against a portion of a car. Conceivably, the docking station 400 could take any form, such as a sleeve-like device for receiving and retaining a portable audio device and having a docking portion for electrically and mechanically mating with the audio device.

FIG. 7b is an end view showing the rear portion 408 of the docking station 400 of **FIG. 7a**. A hinge 414 connects the top portion and the bottom portions of the docking station 400. A data port 416 is provided for interfacing with the audio device docked within the station 400, and is in electrical communication therewith. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the data port 416 is an RS-232 serial or

USB data port that allows for the transmission of data with the audio device, and which connects with the audio device integration system of the present invention for integrating the audio device with an OEM or after-market car stereo. Any known bus technology can be utilized to interface with any portable audio or video device contained within the docking station 400, such as FIREWIRE, D2B, MOST, CAN, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, or any other bus technology known in the art.

FIGS. 8a-8b are perspective views of another embodiment of the docking station of the present invention, indicated generally at **500**, which includes the audio device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at **540**, incorporated therewith. As shown in **FIG. 8a**, the docking station **500** includes a base portion **530**, a bottom member **515** interconnected with the base portion **530** at an edge thereof, and a top member **510** hingedly interconnected at an edge to the base portion **530**. The top member **510** and the bottom member **515** define a cavity for docking and storing a portable audio device **520**, which could be a portable CD player, MP3 player, satellite (*e.g.*, XM, SIRIUS, or other type) tuner, or any other portable audio device. The docking station **500** would be configured to accommodate a specific device, such as an IPOD from Apple Computer, Inc., or any other portable device.

The audio device integration system **540**, in the form of a circuit board, is housed within the base portion **530** and performs the integration functions discussed herein for integrating the portable audio device **520** with an existing car stereo. The integration system **540** is in communication with the portable audio device **520** via a connector **550**, which is connected to a port on the audio device **520**, and a cable **555** interconnected between the connector **550** and the integration system **540**. The connector **550** could be any suitable connector and can vary according to the device type. For example, a MOLEX, USB, or any other connector could be used, depending on the portable device. The integration system **540** is electrically connected with a car stereo by cable **560**. Alternatively, the integration system could wirelessly communicate with the car stereo. A transmitter could be used at the integration system to communicate with a receiver at the car stereo. Where automobiles include Bluetooth systems, such systems can be used to communicate with the integration system. As can be readily appreciated, the docking station **500** provides a convenient device for docking, storing, and integrating a portable audio device for use with a car

stereo. Further, the docking station **500** could be positioned at any desired location within a vehicle, including, but not limited to, the vehicle trunk.

As shown in **FIG. 8b**, the top member **510** can be opened in the general direction indicated by arrow **A** to allow for access to the portable audio device **520**. In this fashion, the device **520** can be quickly accessed for any desired purpose, such as for inserting and removing the device **520** from the docking station **500**, as well as for providing access to the controls of the device **520**.

FIG. 9 is a block diagram showing the components of the docking station of **FIGS. 8a-8b**. The docking station **500** houses both a portable audio device **520** and an audio device integration system (or interface) **540**. The shape and configuration of the docking station **500** can be varied as desired without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

The integration system of the present invention provides for control of a portable audio device, or other device, through the controls of the car stereo system. As such, controls on the steering wheel, where present, may also be used to control the portable audio device or other device.

Having thus described the invention in detail, it is to be understood that the foregoing description is not intended to limit the spirit and scope thereof.

CLAIMSWhat is claimed is:

1. An audio device integration system comprising:
 - a car stereo;
 - an audio device external to the car stereo;
 - an interface connected between the car stereo and the audio device for exchanging data and audio signals between the car stereo and the audio device;
 - means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the audio device from the car stereo in a format compatible with the audio device; and
 - means for processing and displaying data from the audio device on a display of the car stereo in a format compatible with the car stereo.
2. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the car stereo is an OEM car stereo.
3. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the car stereo is an after-market car stereo.
4. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the audio device comprises a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receiver, or satellite receiver.
5. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the interface further comprises a plug-and-play mode for automatically detecting a device type of the audio device and integrating the audio device based upon the device type.
6. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the interface generates a CD player presence signal for maintaining the car stereo in a state responsive to processed data and audio signals.
7. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the data comprises track and time information.
8. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the data comprises song title and artist information.
9. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the data comprises channel number and channel name information.
10. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the data comprises video information.
11. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the data is displayed as a menu on the display of the car stereo.
12. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the data is displayed in a graphical interface on a graphic panel.

13. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the commands are input by a user using one or more control buttons or presets on the car stereo.
14. The apparatus of claim 1, further comprising one or more auxiliary input sources connected to the interface.
15. The apparatus of claim 14, wherein audio signals from the one or more auxiliary input sources are selectively channeled to the car stereo by the interface.
16. The apparatus of claim 14, wherein a user can select between the one or more auxiliary input sources by depressing keys on the car stereo.
17. The apparatus of claim 14, wherein a user can select one of the auxiliary input sources by entering a disc number at the car stereo.
18. The apparatus of claim 14, wherein a user can select one of the auxiliary input sources by entering a track number at the car stereo.
19. The apparatus of claim 14, wherein a user can select one of the auxiliary input sources by entering both disc and track numbers at the car stereo.
20. The apparatus of claim 14, wherein a user can select between the audio device and the one or more auxiliary input sources by entering a sequence at the car stereo.
21. The apparatus of claim 20, wherein the sequence comprises a track up selection followed by a track down selection.
22. The apparatus of claim 1, further comprising a second interface connected to the first interface for providing a plurality of auxiliary input sources.
23. The apparatus of claim 22, wherein both the first interface and the second interface are controllable using the car stereo.
24. An audio device integration system comprising:
 - a car stereo;
 - a plurality of auxiliary input sources;
 - an interface connected between the car stereo and the plurality of auxiliary input sources;
 - means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling an audio device connected to one of the plurality of auxiliary input sources from the car stereo in a format compatible with the audio device;
 - means for processing and displaying data from the audio device on a display of the car stereo in a format compatible with the car stereo; and

means for selecting one of the plurality of auxiliary input sources from the car stereo.

25. The apparatus of claim 24, wherein the means for selecting one of the plurality of auxiliary input sources comprises a disc or track selection entered by a user using control buttons of the car stereo.

26. The apparatus of claim 24, wherein the audio device comprises a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, or DAB receiver.

27. The apparatus of claim 24, wherein a device type of the audio device is automatically detected by the interface and the audio device is automatically integrated with the car stereo based upon the device type.

28. The apparatus of claim 24, wherein the interface is switchable into an auxiliary input mode by issuing a control sequence at the car stereo.

29. The apparatus of claim 28, wherein the control sequence comprises a track up command followed by a track down command.

30. A method for integrating a device with a car stereo comprising:
connecting an interface to the car stereo and the device to the interface;
receiving control commands from the car stereo at the interface;
processing the control commands into a format compatible with the device and dispatching processed control commands to the device;
receiving data and audio from the device at the interface;
processing the data into a second format compatible with the car stereo and dispatching the audio and processed data to the car stereo; and
displaying the processed data on the car stereo and playing the audio through the car stereo.

31. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of receiving data from the device comprises retrieving CD track and time information from the device.

32. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of receiving data from the device comprises retrieving MP3 song, title, track, and time information from the device.

33. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of receiving data from the device comprises retrieving channel number, channel name, artist, and song information from the device.

34. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of receiving data from the device comprises retrieving video information from the device.
35. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of displaying the processed data comprises displaying the data in an LCD panel.
36. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of displaying the processed data comprises displaying the data in a graphical user interface at the car stereo.
37. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of displaying processed data comprises displaying video at the car stereo.
38. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of connecting the audio device to the interface comprises connecting a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, or DAB receiver to the interface.
39. The method of claim 30, further comprising connecting an auxiliary input source to the interface.
40. The method of claim 39, further comprising receiving a selection command from the car stereo and channeling data and audio from the auxiliary input source to the interface in response to the selection command.
41. The method of claim 40, further comprising processing the data from the auxiliary input source for display on the car stereo.
42. An apparatus for docking a portable device for integration with a car stereo comprising:
- a top member interconnected with a bottom member and defining a storage area for storing the portable device;
 - a docking portion within the storage area for electrically communicating and physically mating with the portable device; and
 - a data port disposed on the top member or the bottom member and in electrical communication with the docking portion, the data port connectable with a device for integrating the portable device with the car stereo.
43. The apparatus of claim 42, further comprising a hinge for connecting the top member and bottom member at an edge thereof.
44. The apparatus of claim 42, wherein the data port comprises an RS-232 or USB port.

45. The apparatus of claim 42, wherein the top portion and the bottom portion define a sleeve for holding the portable audio device.
46. The apparatus of claim 42, further comprising a clasp for retaining the top and bottom members in a closed position.
47. A method of integrating an after-market device with an OEM or after-market car stereo comprising:
- connecting the after-market device to an interface;
 - connecting the interface to a car stereo;
 - determining whether the car stereo is an OEM car stereo or an after-market car stereo;
 - if the car stereo is an after-market car stereo, generating and transmitting a presence signal to the car stereo to maintain the car stereo in an operational state responsive to external signals; and
 - selectively channeling data and audio signals from the after-market device to the car stereo using the interface.
48. The method of claim 47, further comprising receiving control commands from the car stereo at the interface.
49. The method of claim 48, further comprising converting the control commands into a format recognizable by the after-market audio device.
50. The method of claim 49, further comprising dispatching formatted commands to the after-market audio device for execution thereby.
51. The method of claim 47, further comprising converting data received at the interface from the after-market audio device into a format compatible with the car stereo.
52. The method of claim 51, further comprising displaying formatted data on the car stereo.
53. The method of claim 52, wherein the step of displaying formatted data comprises displaying channel numbers, channel names, titles, tracks, song names, or artist names on the car stereo.
54. The method of claim 52, wherein the step of displaying formatted data comprises displaying video on the car stereo.

55. A docking station for docking and integrating a portable audio device for use with a car stereo, comprising:
- a base portion;
 - a bottom member connected to the base portion;
 - a top member connected to the base portion, the base portion, bottom member, and top member defining a cavity for receiving a portable device; and
 - an integration device positioned within the base portion for integrating the portable device with a car stereo.
56. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the top member is hingedly connected at an edge to the base portion.
57. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the base portion comprises a connector for connecting the integration device with the portable device.
58. The apparatus of claim 55, further comprising a cable interconnected at one end to the integration device and at an opposite end to the car stereo.
59. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the integration device is wirelessly connected to the car stereo.
60. The apparatus of claim 59, wherein the integration device is connected to the car stereo by a Bluetooth wireless connection.
61. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the portable device comprises a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receiver, or satellite receiver.
62. The apparatus of claim 61, wherein the satellite tuner comprises an XM or SIRIUS satellite tuner.
63. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the integration device comprises a circuit board housed in the base portion.
64. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the apparatus is mountable in a vehicle trunk.
65. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the top member is pivotable away from the bottom member to allow access to the portable device.
66. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the integration device is connected to the car stereo using a Firewire, D2B, MOST, CAN, USB, USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, or serial connection.

67. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the car stereo is an OEM or after-market car stereo.
68. The apparatus of claim 55, further comprising one or more auxiliary input ports connected to the integration device for integrating additional portable devices external to the docking station.
69. A method for docking and integrating a portable audio device for use with a car stereo, comprising:
- providing a docking station having a base portion, a bottom member connected to the base portion, a top member connected to the base portion, and an integration device housed within the base portion;
 - inserting a portable device into the docking station and connecting the portable device to a connector on the base portion; and
 - integrating the portable device with the integration device for use with a car stereo.
70. The method of claim 69, further comprising opening the top member away from the bottom member prior to inserting the portable device into the docking station.
71. The method of claim 69, further comprising closing the top member to retain the portable device in the docking station.
72. The method of claim 69, further comprising interconnecting the integration device with the car stereo with a cable.
73. The method of claim 69, further comprising establishing a wireless connection between the integration device and the car stereo.
74. The method of claim 73 further comprising establishing a Bluetooth wireless connection between the integration device and the car stereo.
75. The method of claim 69, further comprising integrating a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receiver, or satellite receiver with the car stereo.
76. The method of claim 69, further comprising integrating an XM or SIRIUS satellite tuner with the car stereo.
77. The method of claim 69, further comprising mounting the docking station in a vehicle trunk.

78. The method of claim 69, further comprising connecting the integration device to the car stereo using a Firewire, D2B, MOST, CAN, USB, USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, or serial connection.

79. The method of claim 69, further comprising integrating the portable device with an after-market or OEM car stereo.

80. The method of claim 69, further comprising connecting an external portable device to an auxiliary input port on the docking station and integrating the external portable device with the car stereo.

1/23

FIG. 1

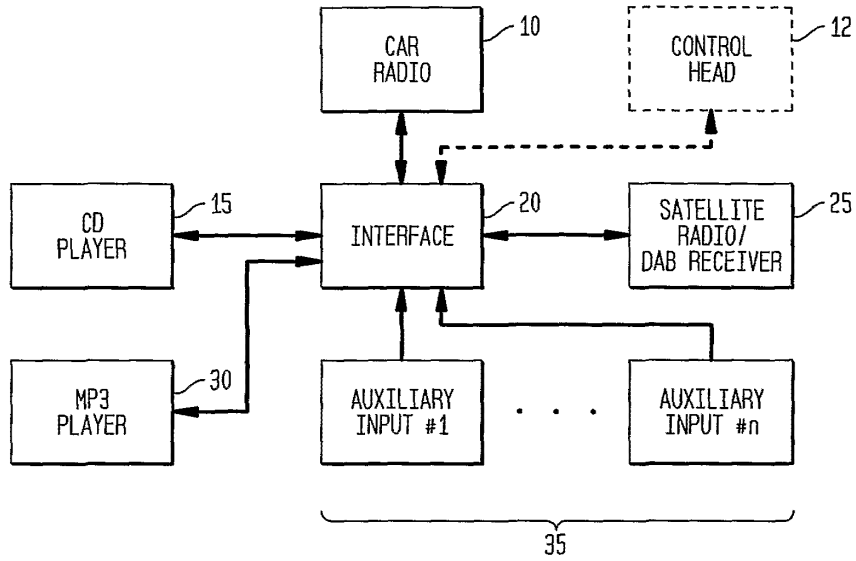
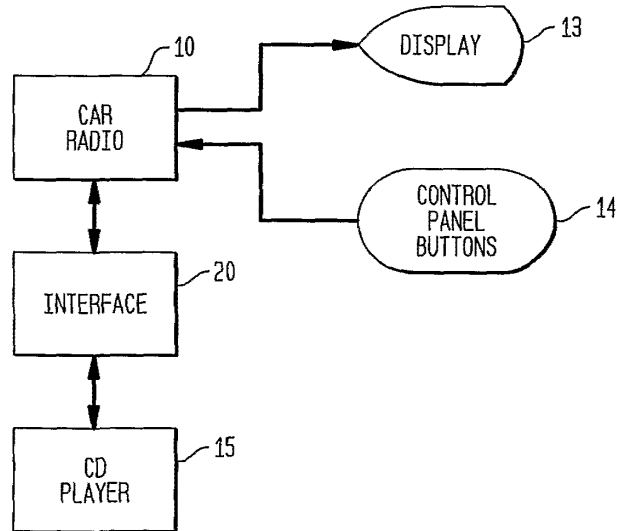


FIG. 2A



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

2/23

FIG. 2B

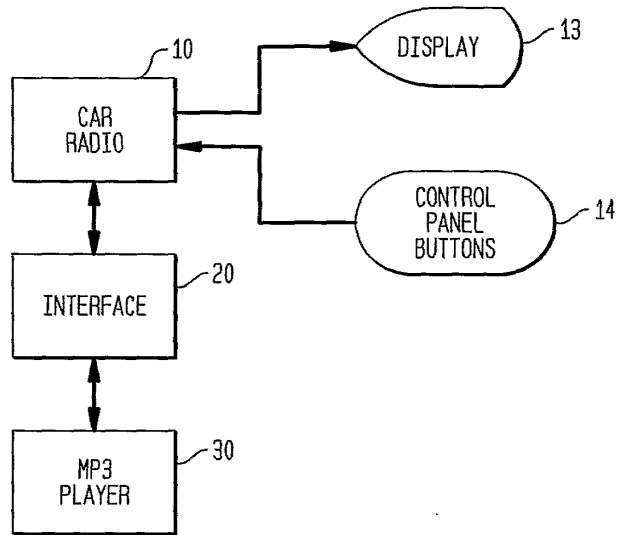
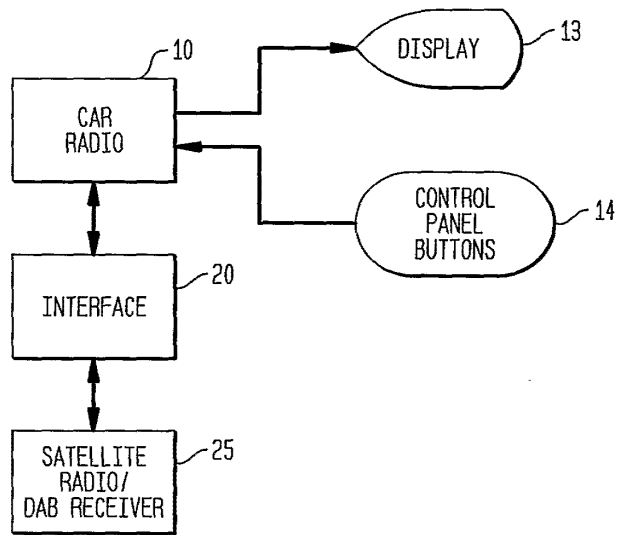


FIG. 2C



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

3/23

FIG. 2D

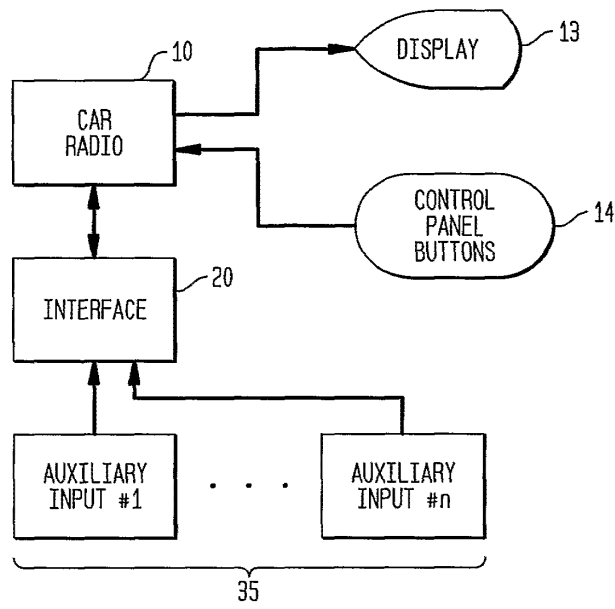
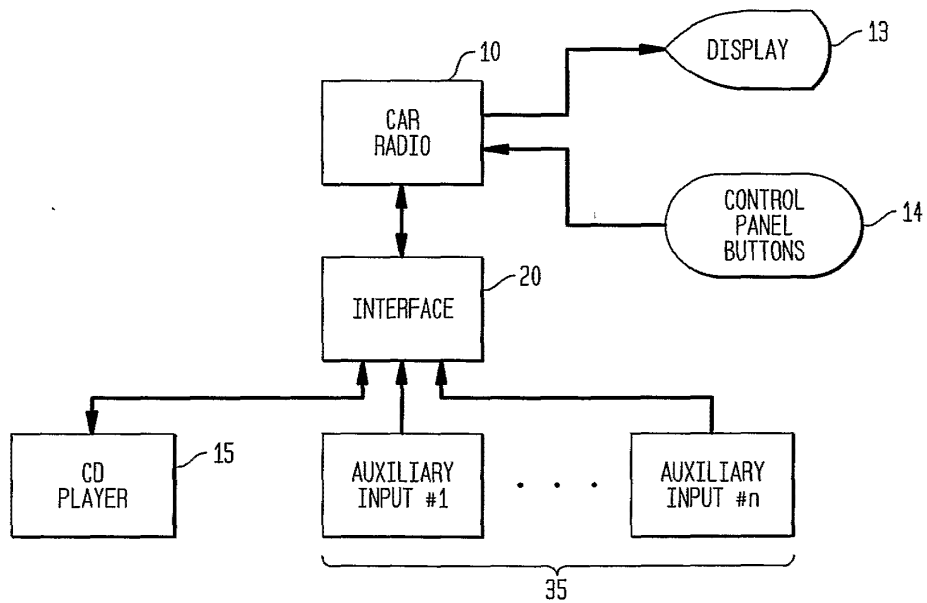


FIG. 2E



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

4/23

FIG. 2F

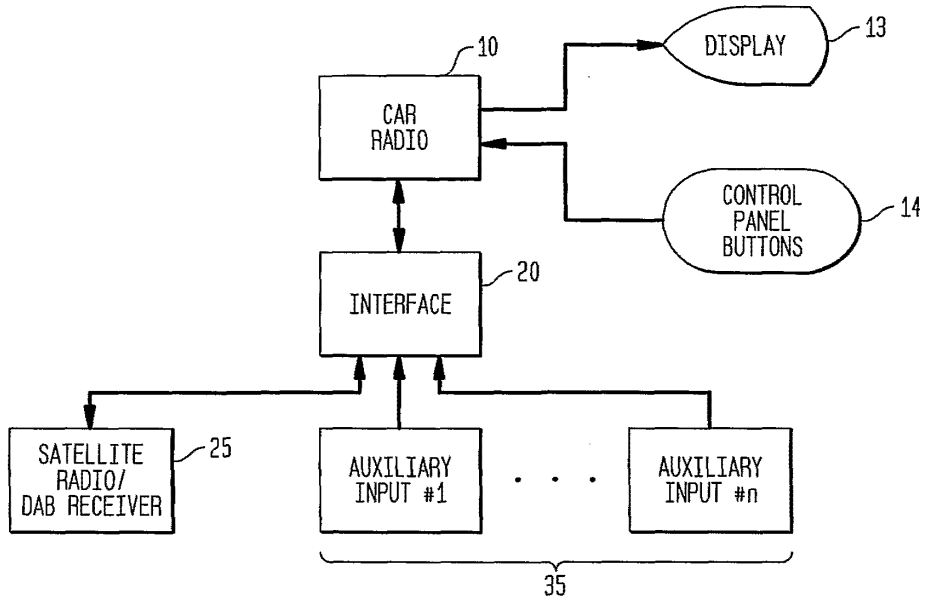
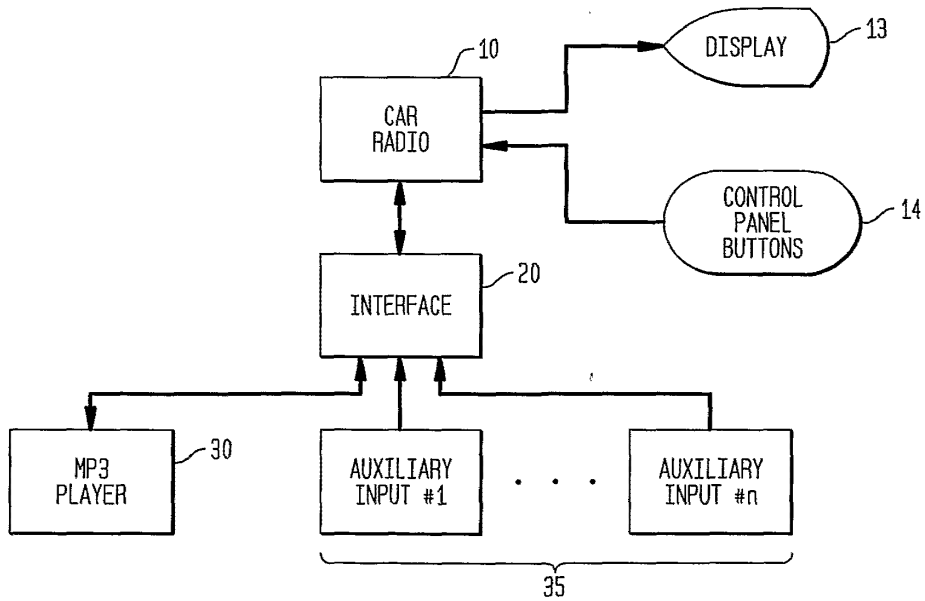


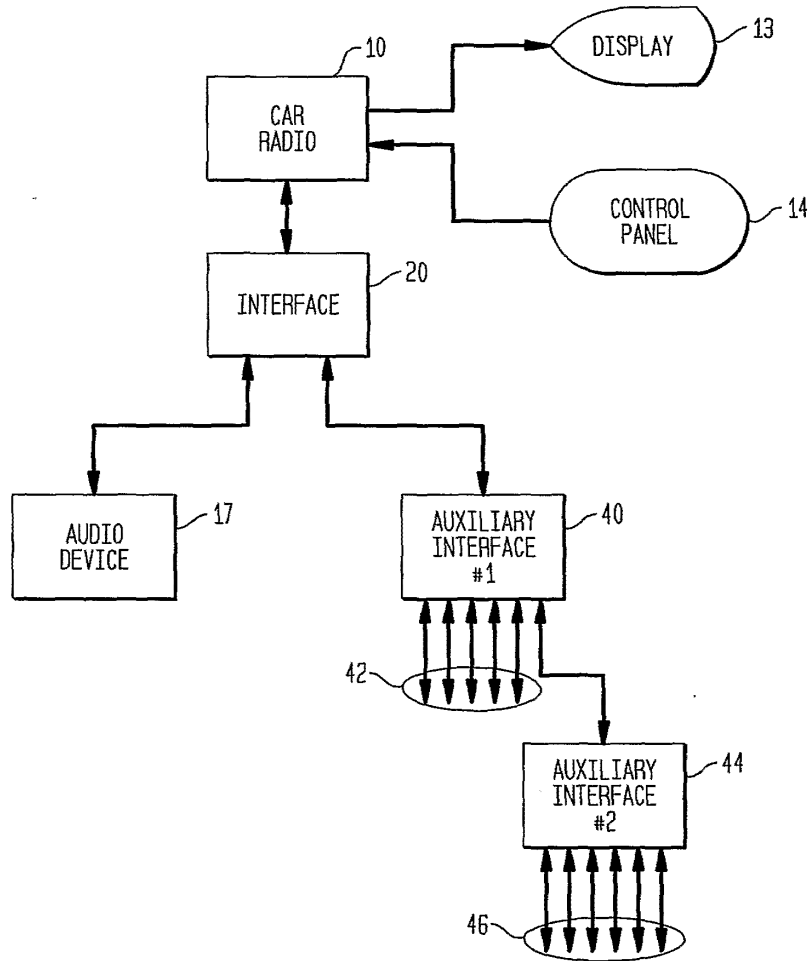
FIG. 2G



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

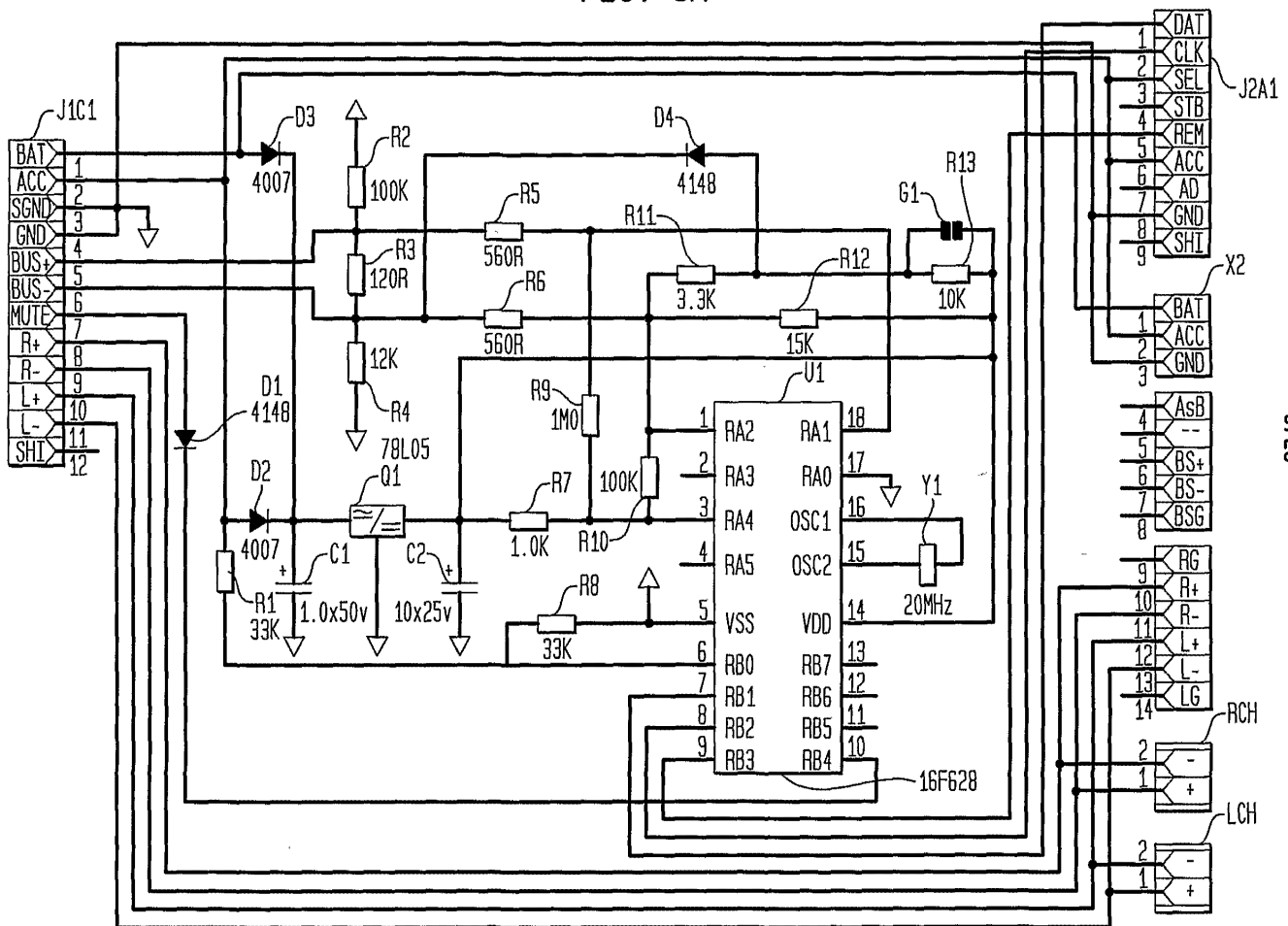
5/23

FIG. 2H



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 3A



WO 2004/053722

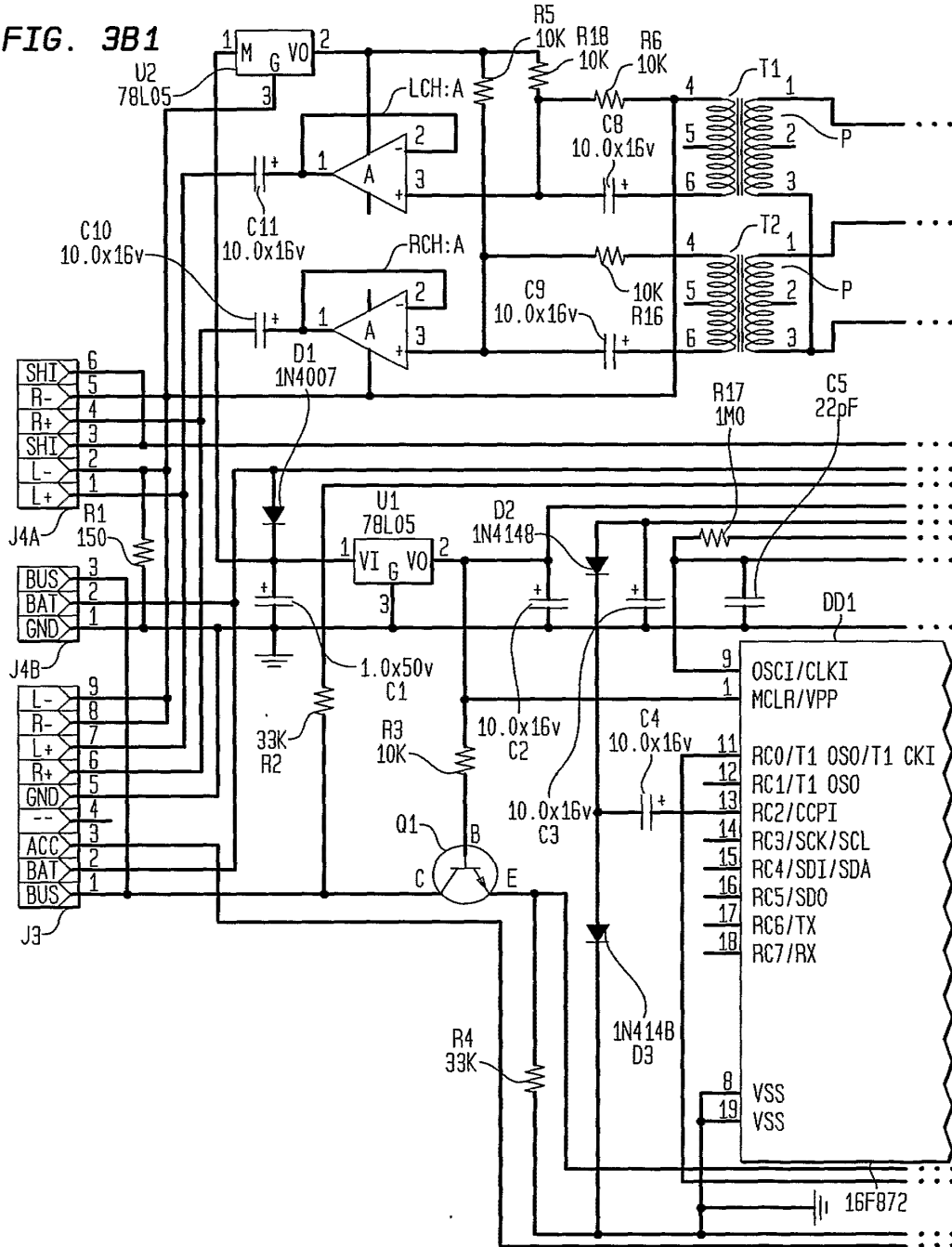
6/23

PCT/US2003/039493

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

7/23

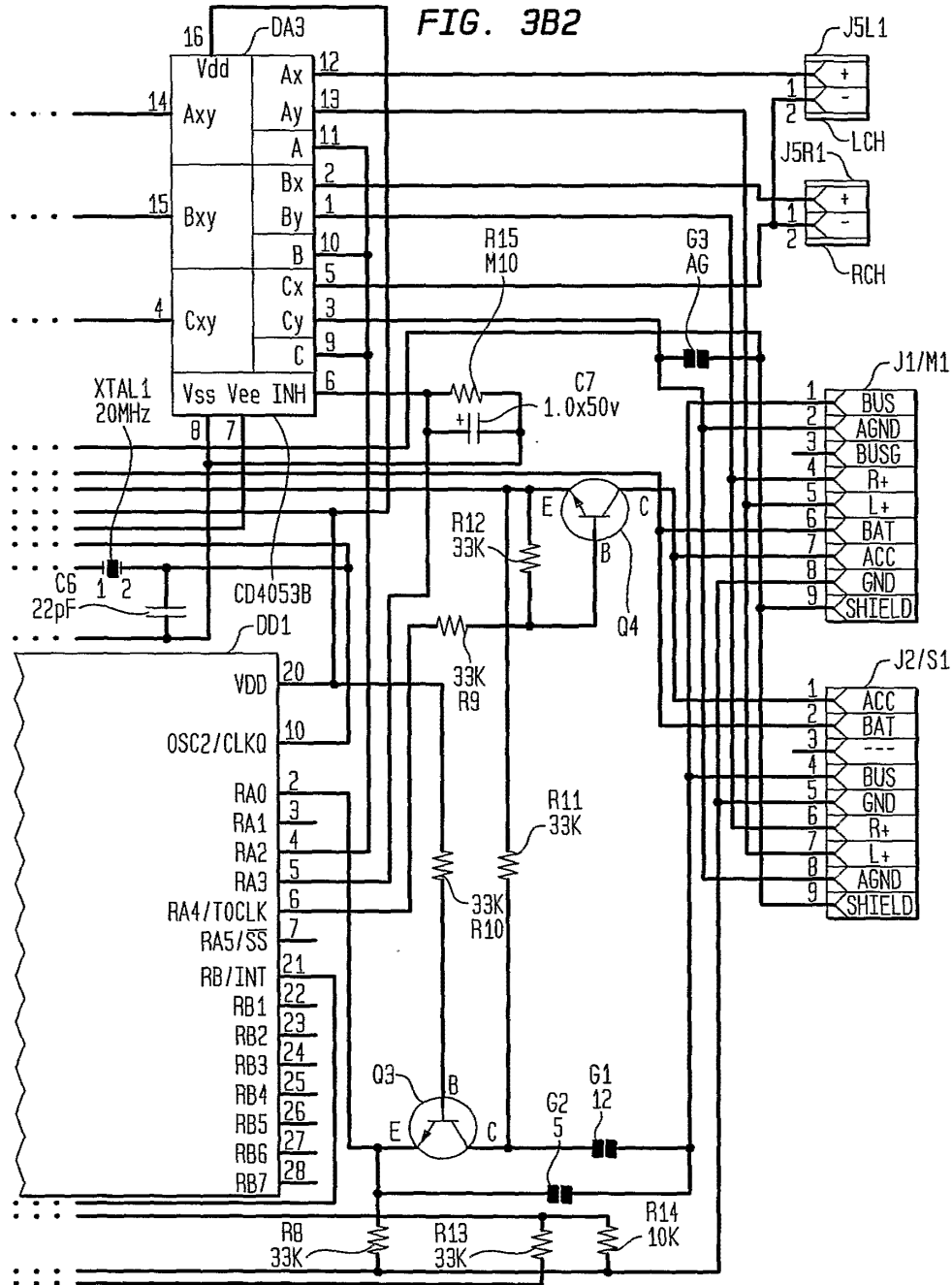
FIG. 3B1



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

8/23

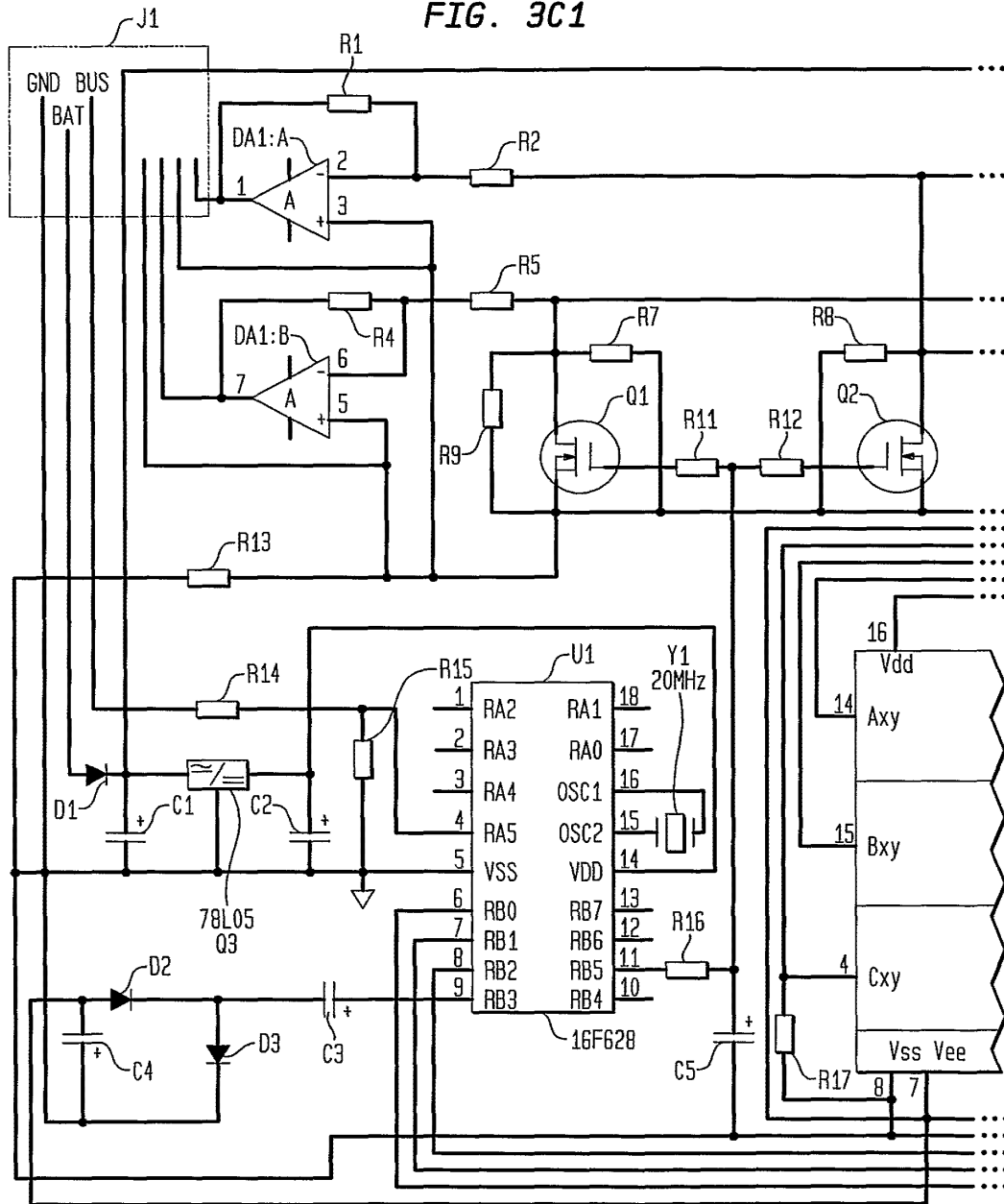
FIG. 3B2



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

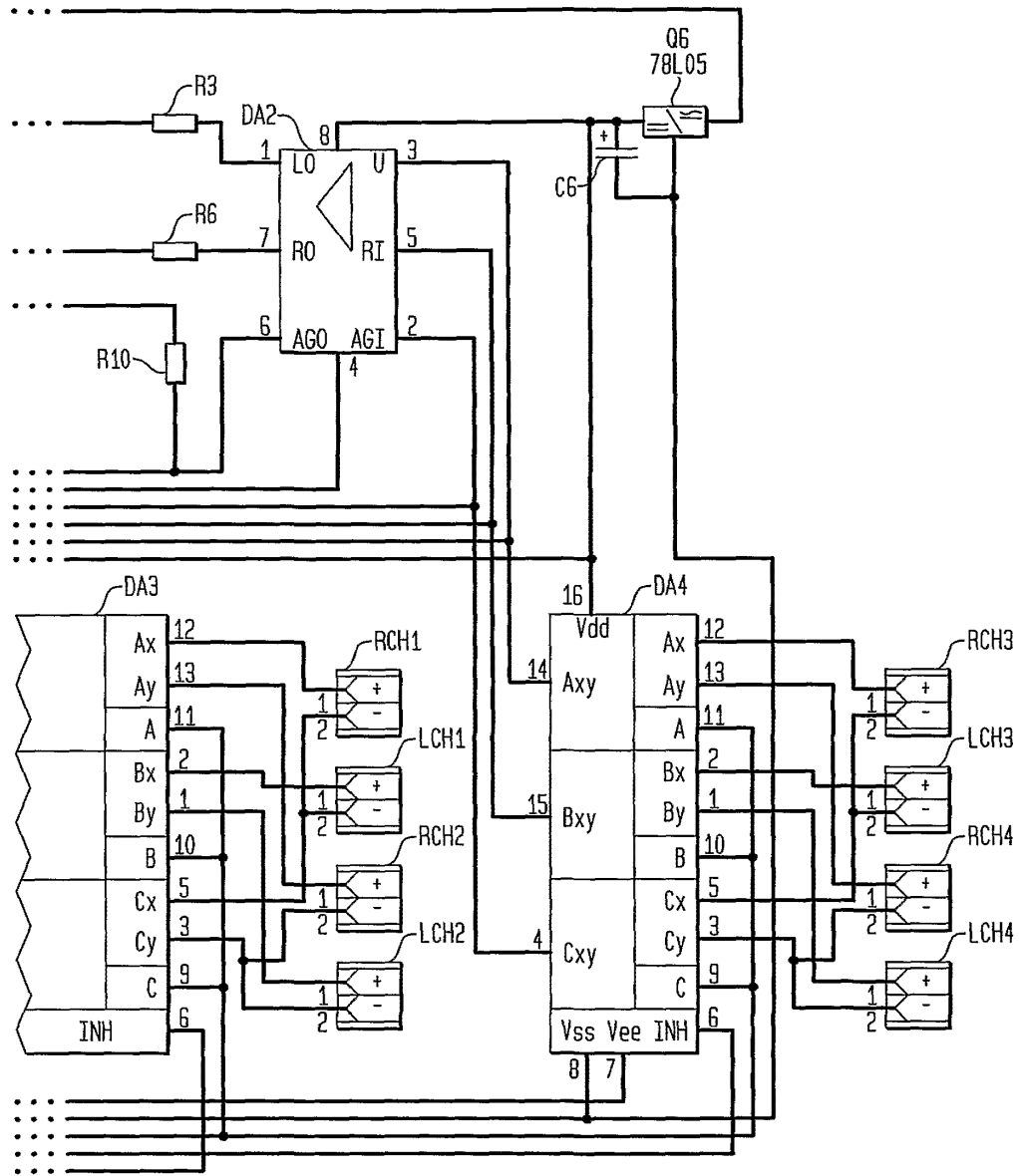
9/23

FIG. 3C1



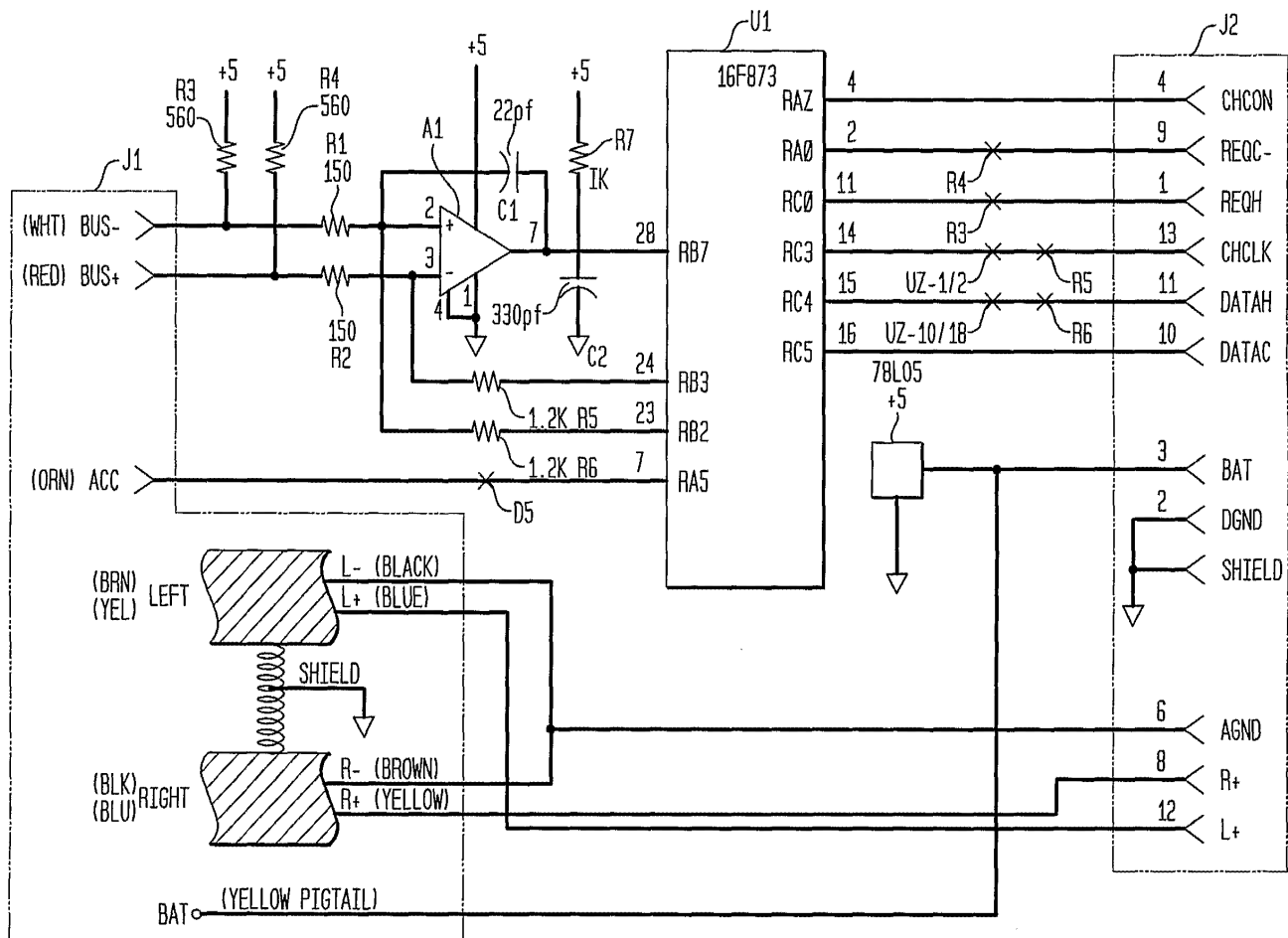
SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

10/23
FIG. 3C2



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

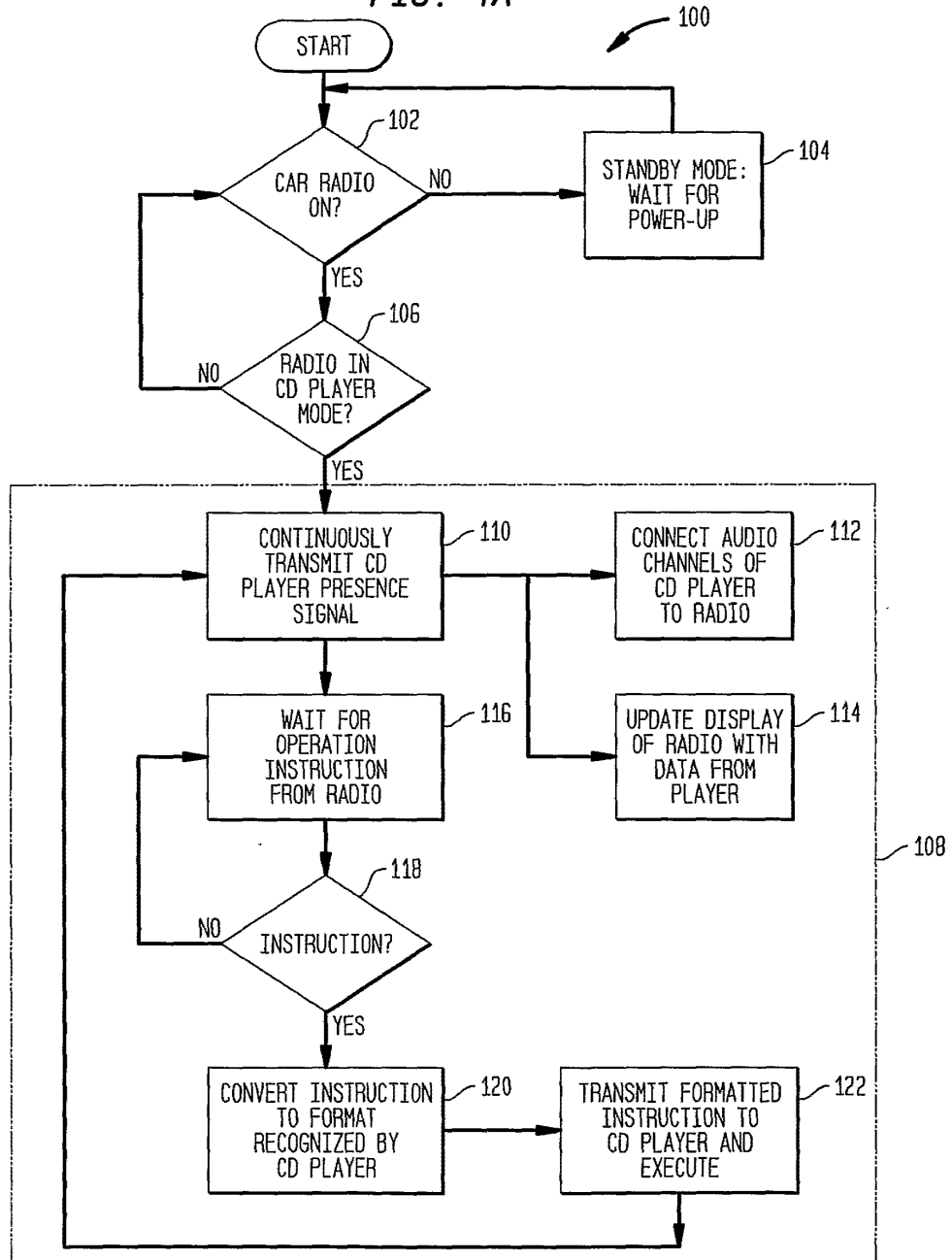
FIG. 3D



11/23

12/23

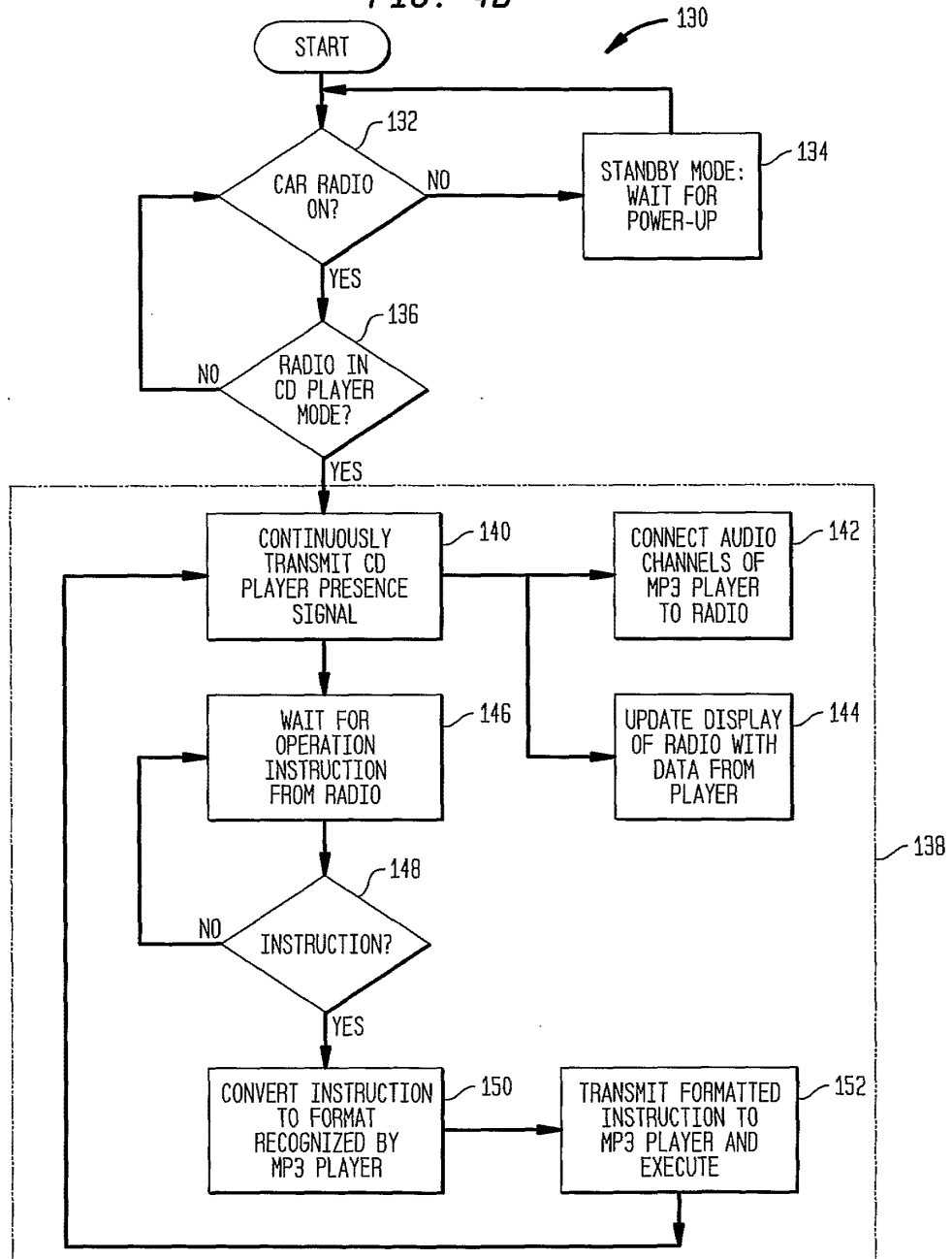
FIG. 4A



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

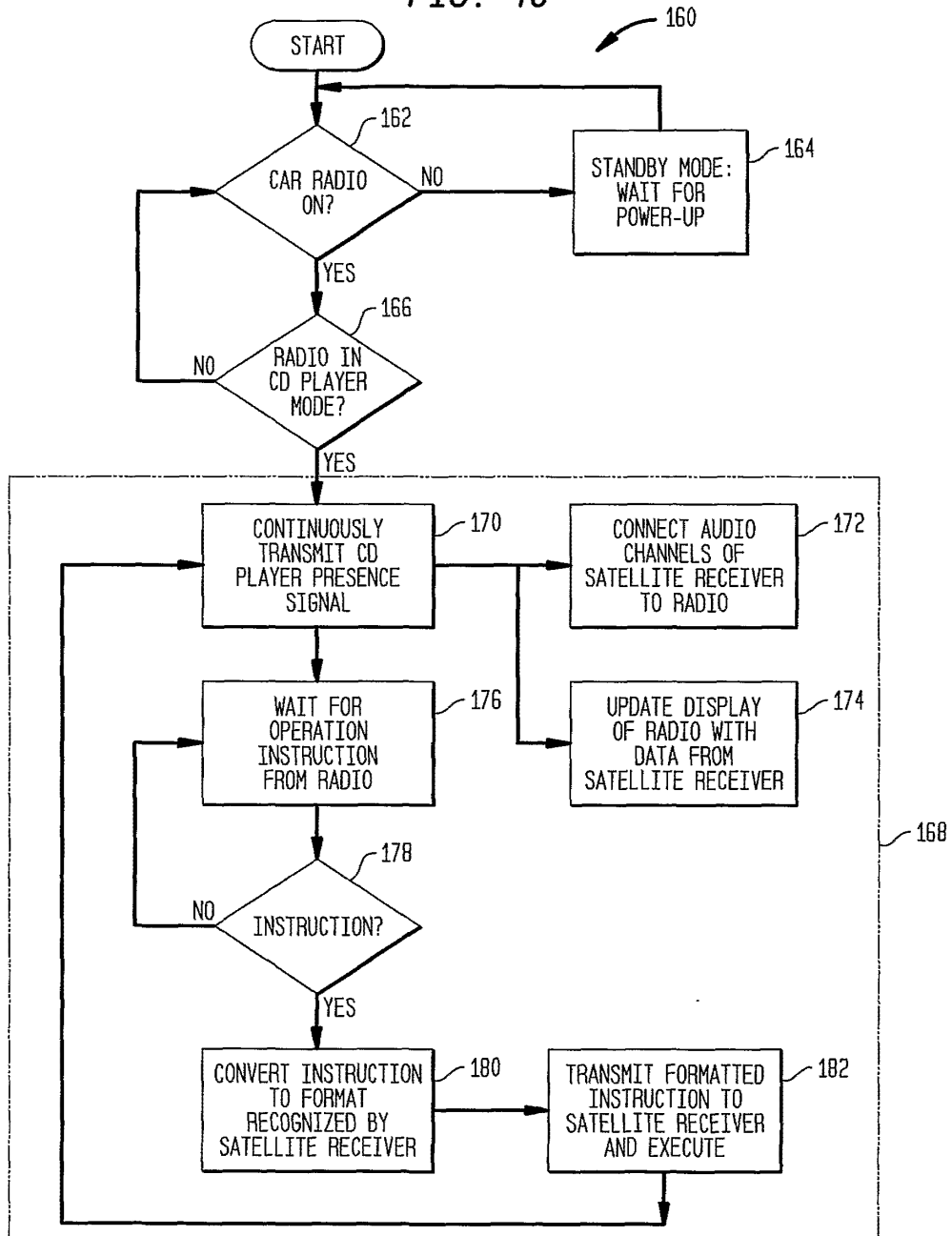
13/23

FIG. 4B



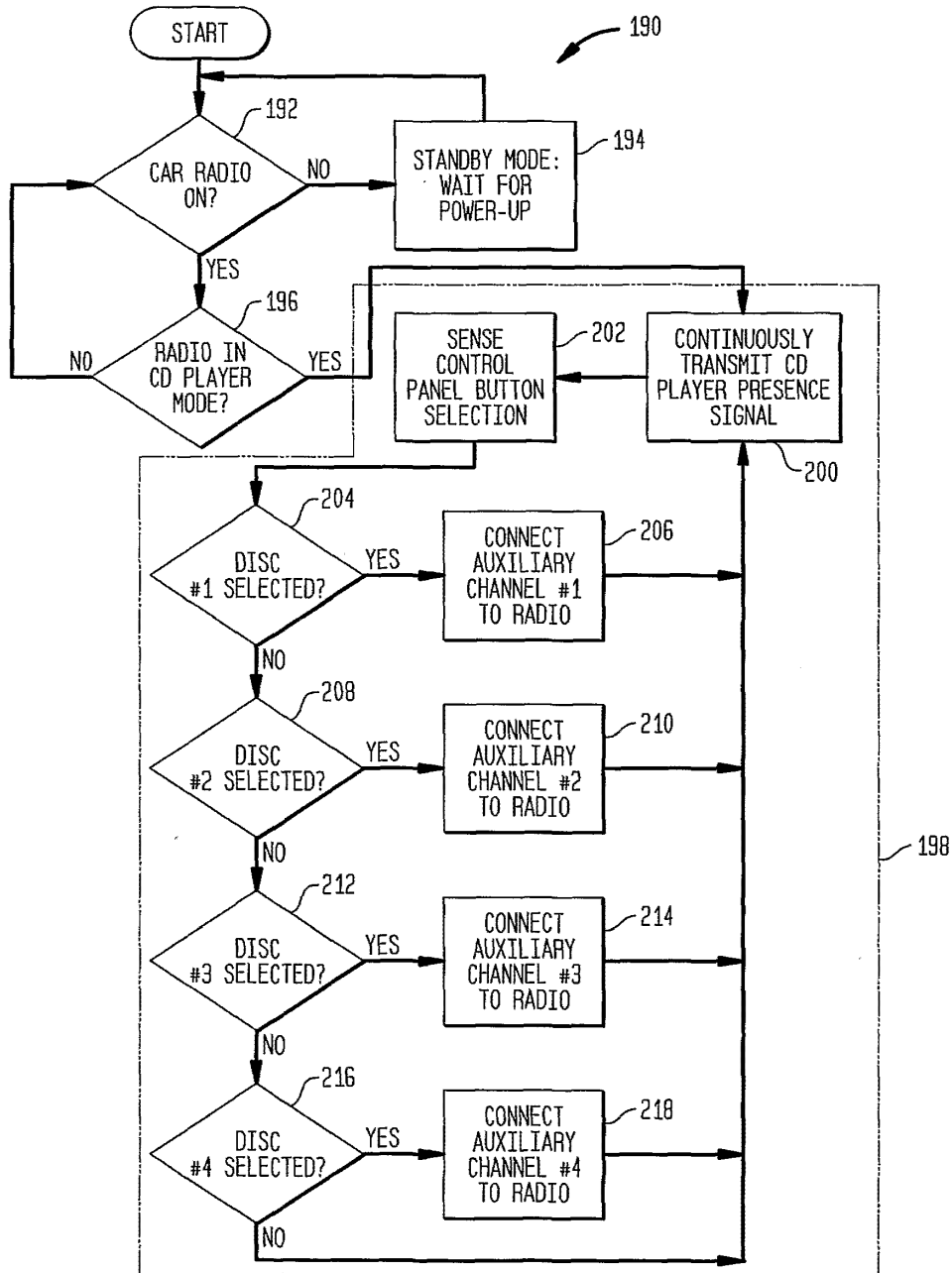
SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

14/23
FIG. 4C



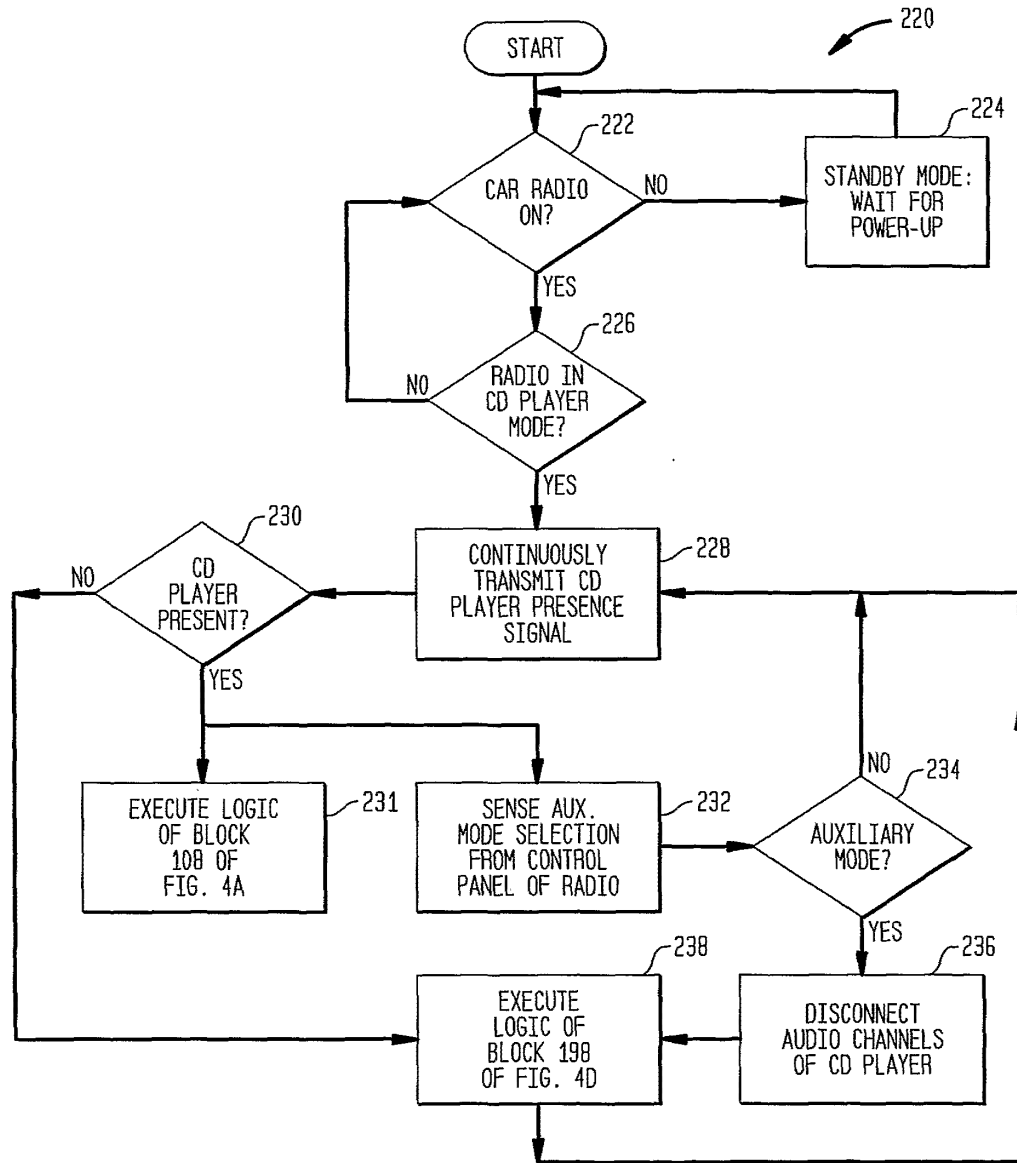
SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

15/23
FIG. 4D



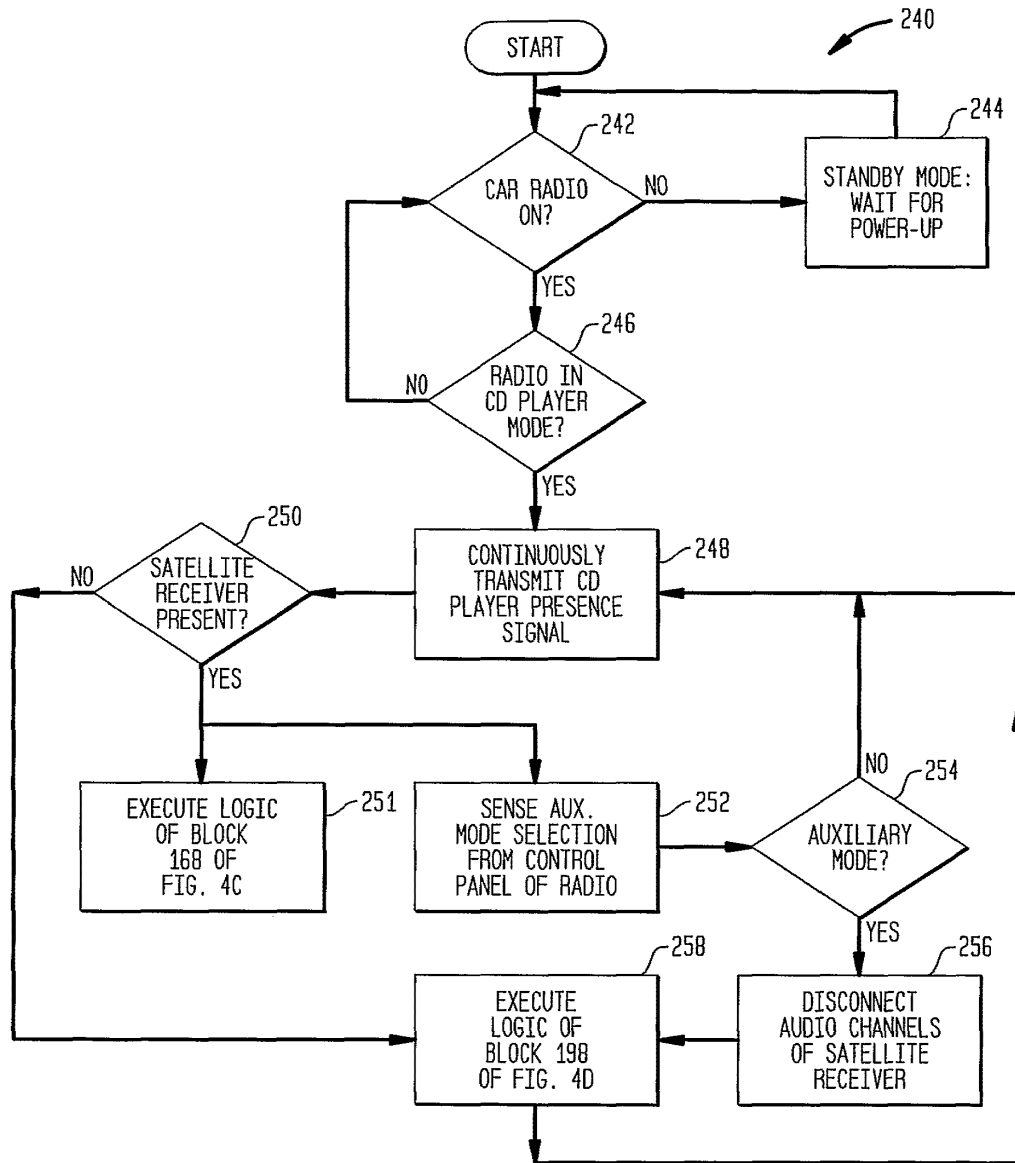
SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

16/23
 FIG. 4E



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

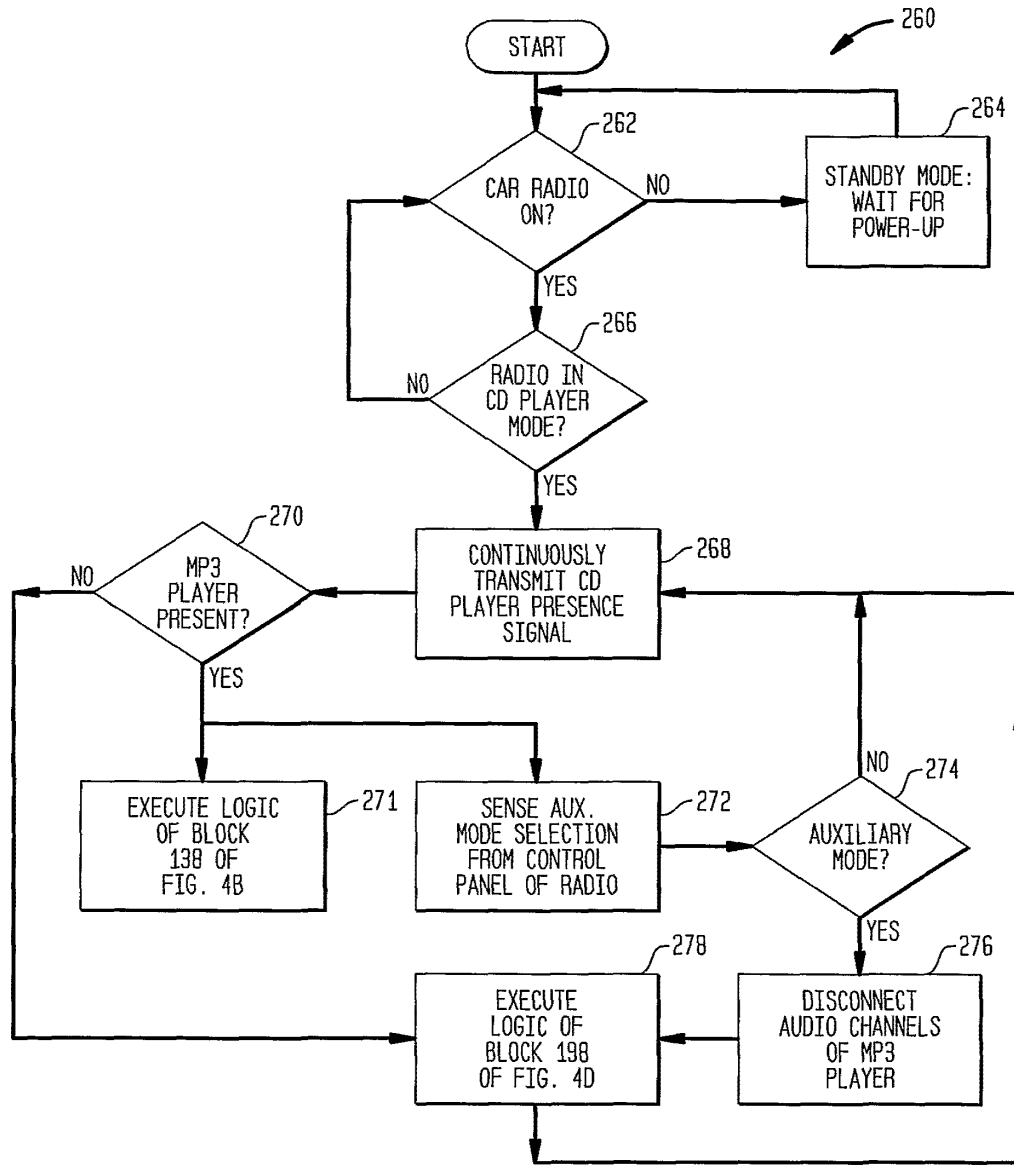
17/23
FIG. 4F



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

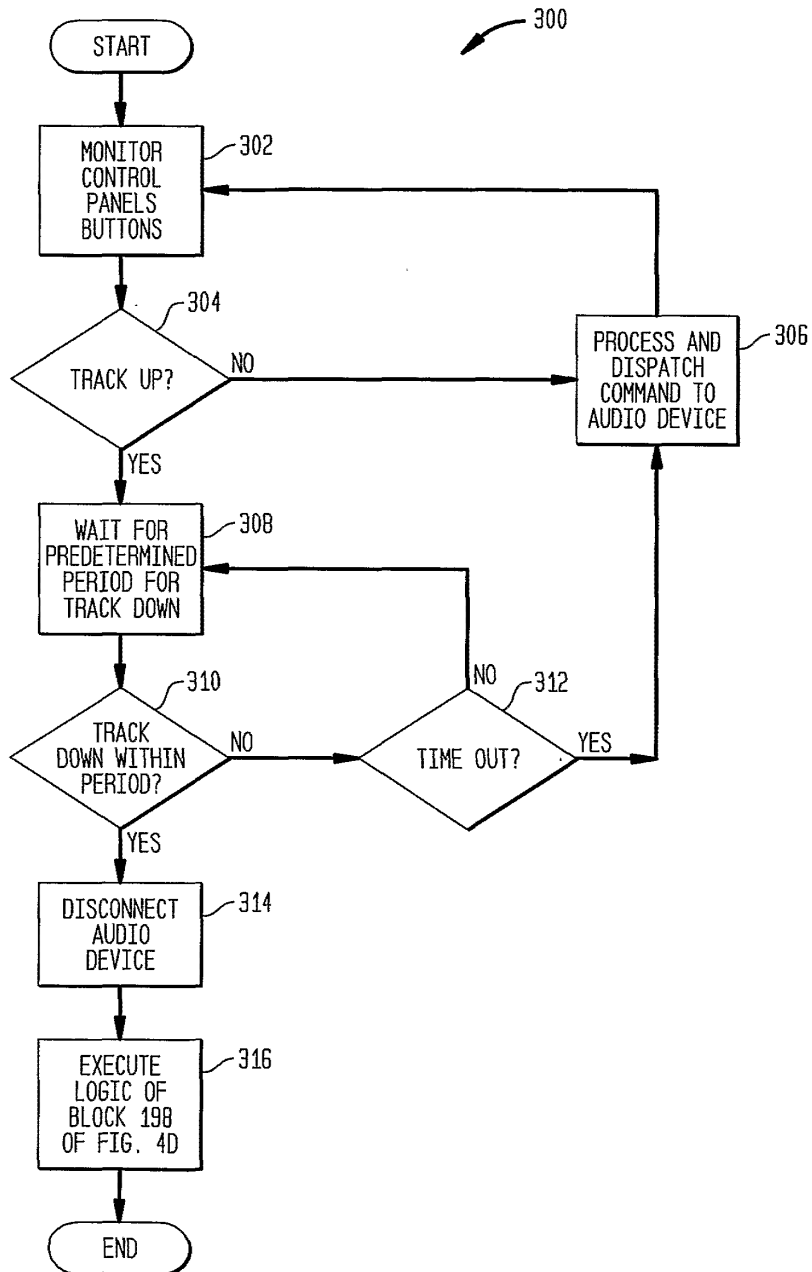
18/23

FIG. 4G



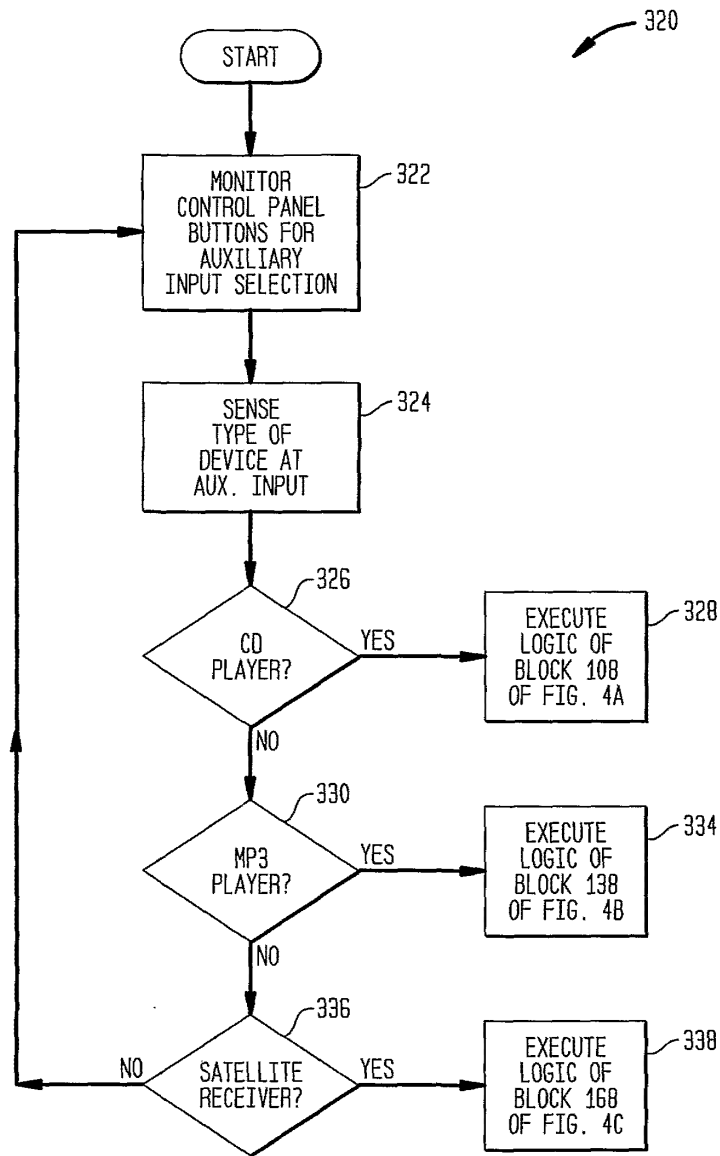
SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

19/23
FIG. 5



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

20/23
FIG. 6



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

21/23
FIG. 7A

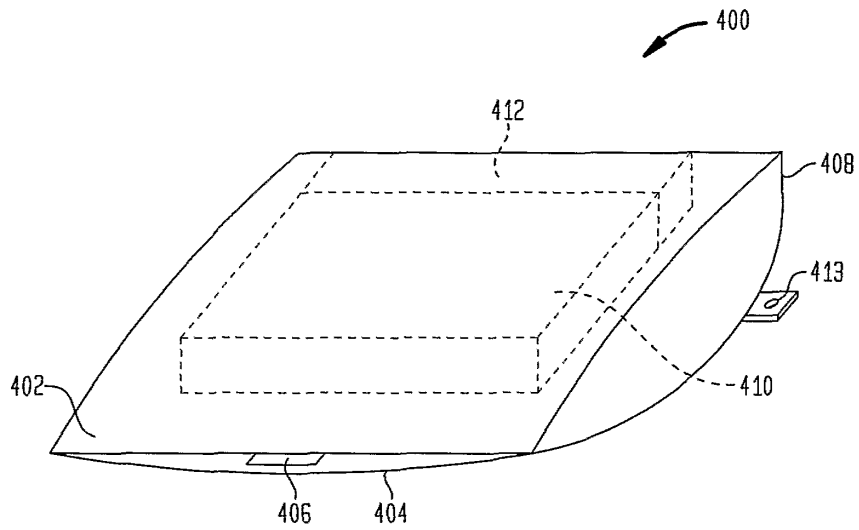
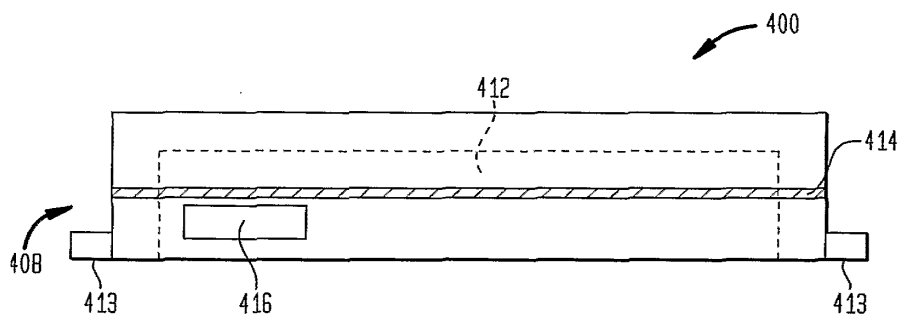


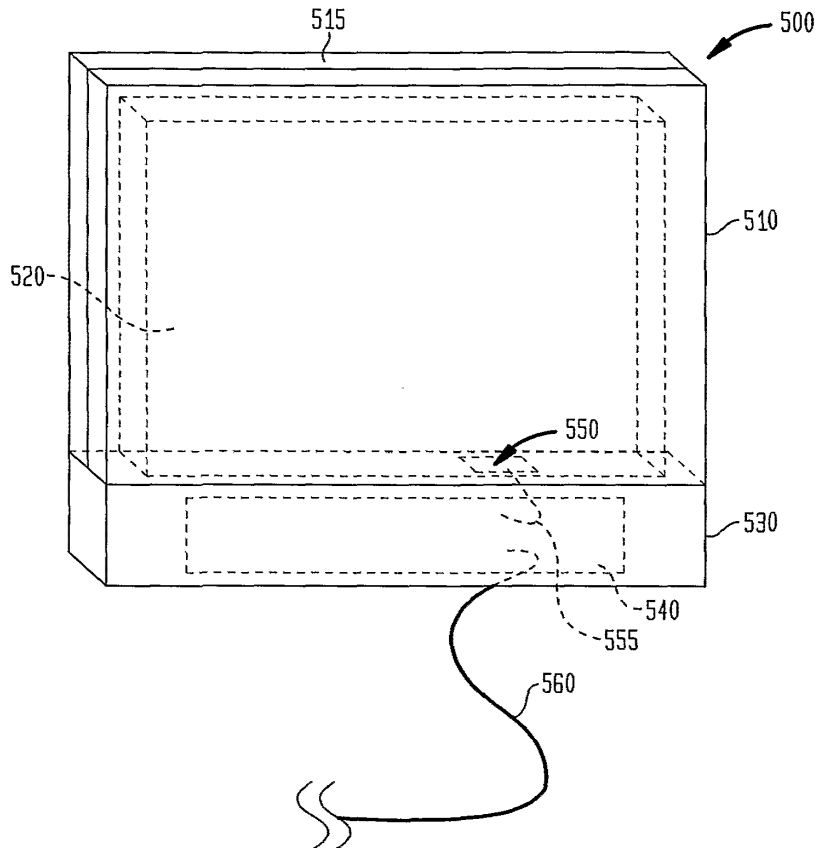
FIG. 7B



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

22/23

FIG. 8A



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

23/23

FIG. 8B

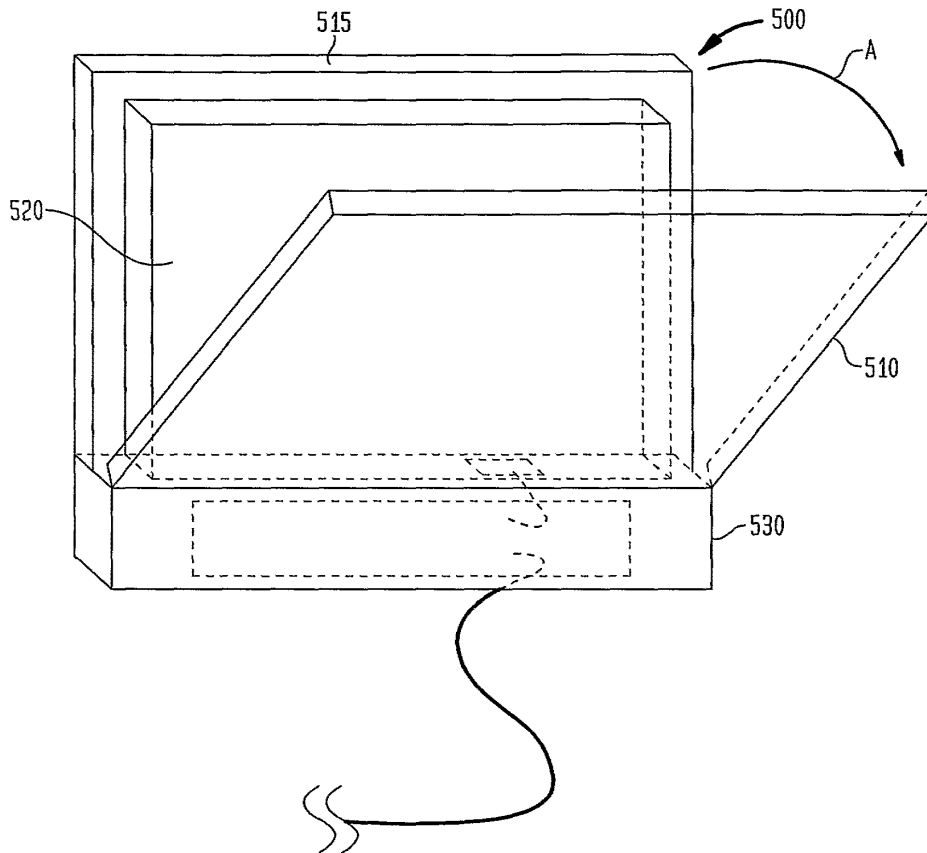
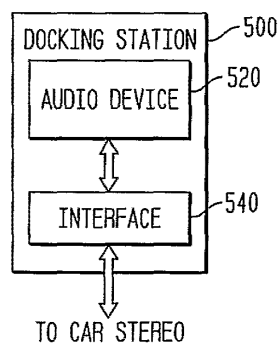


FIG. 9



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US03/39493

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER		
IPC(7) : G06F 17/00; H04B 1/00, 3/00; US CL : 700/94; 381/86, 77		
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC		
B. FIELDS SEARCHED		
Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) U.S. : 700/94; 381/86, 77; 455/346,347; D14/434		
Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched		
Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used) Databases available through EAST (USPAT, US-PGPUB, EPO, JPO, DERWENT)		
C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X --- Y	US 6,396,164 B1 (BARNEA ET AL) 28 May 2002 (28.05.2002), see entire document.	1,2,5,11-21,24-25,27-30,35-36,39-41
Y, P	US 2003/0007649 A1 (RIGGS) 09 January 2003 (09.01.2003), paragraphs 0037-0040 and 0092-0099.	3,4,6-10,22-23,26,31-34,37-38,42-80
Y	US 6,157,725 A (BECKER) 05 December 2000 (05.12.2000), col. 4, lines 41-58; col. 6, lines 6-46; col 8, line 20-col. 10, line 58.	4,26,38,48-50,57,64,67,73-76, 79
Y	US 5,339,362 A (HARRIS) 16 August 1994 (16.08.1994), col. 3, line 25-col. 4, line 61 and Figures 2,3.	3,4,6,9-10,26,34-38,44,47-54,61-62,64,66-67,72,75-79
Y	US 2001/0044664 A1 (MUELLER et al) 22 November 2001 (22.11.2001), paragraphs 0020-0028,0034-0035.	42-46,55-80
Y	US 6,330,337 B1 (NICHOLSON) 11 December 2001 (11.12.2001), Figure 2 and col. 3, line 32-col. 4, line 28.	4,7-12,26,31-38,51-54,61-67,75-76
		22-23,68,80
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.		<input type="checkbox"/> See patent family annex.
* Special categories of cited documents:		"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"E" earlier application or patent published on or after the international filing date	"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		"&" document member of the same patent family
Date of the actual completion of the international search 07 April 2004 (07.04.2004)	Date of mailing of the international search report 12 MAY 2004	
Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Mail Stop PCT, Attn: ISA/US Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450 Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230	Authorized officer Bill Isen <i>Rugenia Zagan</i> Telephone No. 703-305-3900	

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1998)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

PCT/US03/39493

C. (Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US 4,772,079 A (DOUGLAS et al) 20 September 1988 (20.09.1988), col. 3, lines 25-64.	42-46,55-80

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1998)

(19) KOREAN INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY OFFICE

KOREAN PATENT ABSTRACTS

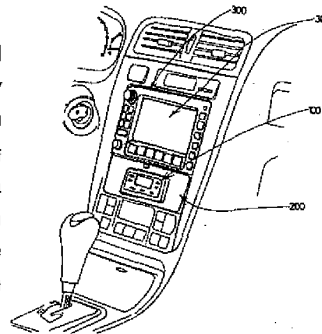
(11)Publication number: 1020010035788 A
 (43)Date of publication of application:
 07.05.2001

(21)Application number:	1019990042524	(71)Applicant:	PARK, GYU JIN
(22)Date of filing:	02.10.1999	(72)Inventor:	PARK, GYU JIN
(30)Priority:	..		
(51)Int. Cl.	G11B 20/10		

(54) CAR DIGITAL COMBINATION SYSTEM

(57) Abstract:

PURPOSE: A car digital combination system is provided to enhance performance of a car A/V system by permitting a digital data each genre, such as a learning data, a car repair guide, a data for so called singing room realization, and so on which are processed in a caption player by organically coupling a digital caption player to a car A/V system, to be displayed on a large size screen for a car A/V system or a car navigation system. CONSTITUTION: A digital caption player(100) downloads various digital data including a caption synchronized with a digital audio, reproduce the digital data, and digital-records a voice inputted from the outside. A docking station(200) accommodates the digital caption player(100) to fix it on a front face panel of a car and connects a digital caption character output signal and an audio output signal and a control signal for function selection/control from the digital caption layer(100) to a car A/V system(300). The car A/V system(300) receives digital data of the digital caption player (100) inputted through the docking station(200) and outputs the audio and caption data to display devices for a speaker and a monitor, respectively. The digital caption player(100) and the car A/V system(300) having a display device(306) of a large size screen are arranged in the vicinity of centerpesia of the car. The digital caption player(100) is organically coupled to the car A/V system(300) through the docking station(200) for holding the digital caption player(100). The car A/V system(300) may include a car navigation.



COPYRIGHT 2001 KIPO

Legal Status

Date of request for an examination (19991002)

Notification date of refusal decision (00000000)

Final disposal of an application (rejection)
Date of final disposal of an application (20020621)
Patent registration number ()
Date of registration (00000000)
Number of opposition against the grant of a patent ()
Date of opposition against the grant of a patent (00000000)
Number of trial against decision to refuse ()
Date of requesting trial against decision to refuse ()

KOREAN PATENT ABSTRACTS XML 2(1-2)



Please Click here to view the drawing

Korean FullDoc. English Fulltext

(19) KOREAN INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY OFFICE

KOREAN PATENT ABSTRACTS

(11)Publication number: 1020010059192 A
(43)Date of publication of application: 06.07.2001

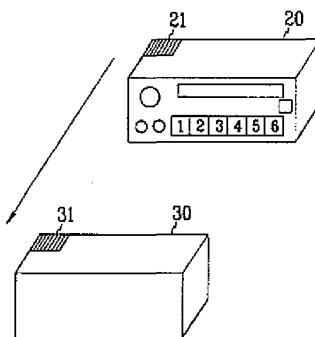
(21)Application number: 1019990066582
(22)Date of filing: 30.12.1999
(30)Priority: ..
(51)Int. Cl G11B 17/02

(71)Applicant: HYUNDAI MOTOR COMPANY
(72)Inventor: LEE, JAE GWANG

(54) COMPACT DISK CHANGER OPERATING SYSTEM

(57) Abstract:

PURPOSE: A compact disk changer operating system is provided to reduce inconvenience caused by installing a cable and a cost by deleting DIN cable. CONSTITUTION: An audio head unit(20) is installed in a vehicle and has a wireless transmitting apparatus to be able to transmit by a wireless. A CD changer(30) has a wireless receiving apparatus receives a signal from the wireless transmitting apparatus and is made an operating control by the audio head unit(20). The wireless transmitting apparatus of the audio head unit(20) is composed of an infrared emitting diode(21). The wireless receiving apparatus of the CD changer(30) is composed of a photo diode(31). The infrared emitting diode(21) and the photo diode(31) are just only one example of practice and is not restricted by practice example if only transmission and reception can be possible by the wireless. In the same manner installation position of the infrared emitting diode(21) and the photo diode (31) also are not limited to a special position.



(19) 日本国特許庁 (J P)

(12) 公開特許公報 (A)

(11) 特許出願公開番号

特開2000-286874

(P2000-286874A)

(43) 公開日 平成12年10月13日 (2000. 10. 13)

(51) Int.Cl. ⁷	識別記号	F I	テームト* (参考)
H 0 4 L	12/40	H 0 4 L 11/00	3 2 0 3 D 0 2 0
B 6 0 R	11/02	B 6 0 R 11/02	B 5 K 0 3 2
H 0 4 L	12/28	H 0 4 L 11/00	3 1 0 Z 5 K 0 3 3

審査請求 未請求 請求項の数 6 O L (全 6 頁)

(21) 出願番号 特願平11-90570

(22) 出願日 平成11年3月31日 (1999. 3. 31)

(71) 出願人 000002082

スズキ株式会社

静岡県浜松市高塚町300番地

(72) 発明者 植村 宏

静岡県浜松市高塚町300番地 スズキ株式

会社内

(74) 代理人 100079164

弁理士 高橋 勇

Fターム (参考) 3D02D BA02 BA05 BA09 BA10 BA13

BB01 BC03 BE03

5K032 BA06 BA08 DB03 DB04

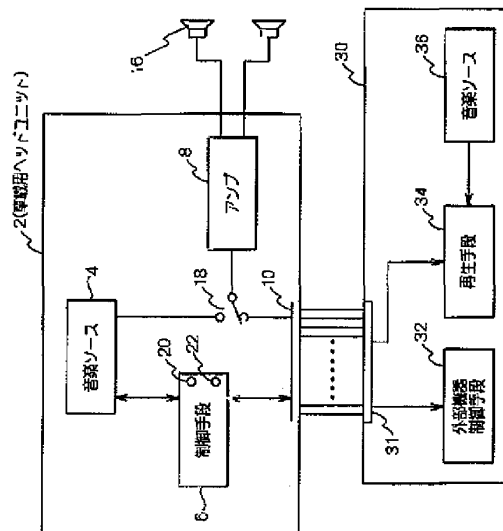
5K033 BA06 BA08 DB03 DB04

(54) 【発明の名称】 車載用ヘッドユニット及び車載用外部機器

(57) 【要約】

【課題】 車載用オーディオの外部機器を低コストでかつ利用しやすいものとする。

【解決手段】 内部音楽ソース4からの音声信号を増幅するアンプ8と、外部機器を接続する外部機器コネクタ10と、この外部機器コネクタ10にケーブルを介して接続される外部機器から入力される音声信号と前記内部音楽ソースから入力される音声信号とを切替える切替スイッチ18と、前記内部音楽ソース4と前記外部機器30との切替えを制御する制御手段6とを備えている。しかも、外部機器コネクタ31が、バス接続用の複数のバス用ピン12を接続するバス用ピン接続端子と、このバス用ピンに併設されコントロール信号を送受する2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子と、前記外部機器と接続される前記バス用ピンおよび前記コントロールピンとを有する1本のケーブルに係合するコネクタ本体11とを備えた。



【特許請求の範囲】

【請求項1】 内部音楽ソースからの音声信号を増幅するアンプと、外部機器を接続する外部機器コネクタと、この外部機器コネクタにケーブルを介して接続される外部機器から入力される音声信号と前記内部音楽ソースから入力される音声信号とを切替える切替スイッチと、前記内部音楽ソースと前記外部機器との切替を制御する制御手段とを備えた車載用ヘッドユニットにおいて、前記外部機器コネクタが、バス接続用の複数のバス用ピン接続端子と、このバス用ピンに併設されコントロール信号を送受する2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子と、前記外部機器と接続される前記バス用ピンおよび前記コントロールピンとを有する1本のケーブルに係合するコネクタ本体とを備えたことを特徴とする車載用ヘッドユニット。

【請求項2】 前記制御手段が、前記始動時に前記バス用ピンと前記コントロールピンとに接続チェック信号それぞれ送信すると共に当該接続チェック信号に応答があった側のピン接続端子を有効と設定する第1の接続開始制御部を備えたことを特徴とする請求項1記載の車載用ヘッドユニット。

【請求項3】 前記制御手段が、前記始動時に前記2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子のうち一方を予め定められた一定期間中ハイにすると共に当該一定期間経過後は当該2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子への出力を前記始動時前の状態に戻す第2の接続開始制御部を備えたことを特徴とする請求項1記載の車載用ヘッドユニット。

【請求項4】 ヘッドユニットに対して外部機器となるTV、CD又はMD等の外部音楽ソースを再生する再生手段と、この再生手段によって再生される音声信号を前記ヘッドユニットへケーブルを介して伝達するためのヘッドユニット用コネクタと、このヘッドユニット用コネクタから入力される制御信号に応じて前記再生手段を制御する外部機器制御手段とを備えた車載用外部機器において、

前記ヘッドユニット用コネクタが、バス接続用の複数のバス用ピン接続端子と、このバス用ピンに併設されコントロール信号を送受する2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子と、前記外部機器と接続される前記バス用ピンおよび前記コントロールピンとを有する1本のケーブルに係合するコネクタ本体とを備えたと共に、前記再生手段に、前記ヘッドユニット用コネクタから入力される接続チェック信号に応じて前記コントロール用ピン接続端子又は前記バス用ピン接続端子の一方を選択する接続切替手段を備えたことを特徴とする車載用外部機器。

【請求項5】 ヘッドユニットに対して外部機器となるTV、CD又はMD等の外部音楽ソースを再生する再生手段と、前記ヘッドユニットから入力される制御信号に応じて前記再生手段を制御する外部機器制御手段とを備

えた車載用外部機器において、

前記外部機器制御手段に、前記ヘッドユニット又は他の外部機器と接続する2以上の拡張コネクタを併設し、前記拡張コネクタが、バス接続用の複数のバス用ピン接続端子と、このバス用ピンに併設されコントロール信号を送受する2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子と、前記外部機器と接続される前記バス用ピンおよび前記コントロールピンとを有する1本のケーブルに係合するコネクタ本体とを備え、

前記外部機器制御手段が、前記ヘッドユニットが接続されたコネクタに対して前記コントロール用ピン接続端子を有効と設定すると共に前記他の外部機器が接続されたコネクタに対して前記バス用ピン接続端子を有効に設定する複数接続制御部を備えたことを特徴とする車載用外部機器。

【発明の詳細な説明】

【0001】

【発明の属する技術分野】本発明は、車載用ヘッドユニット及び車載用外部機器に係り、特に、車載用ヘッドユニットに車載用外部機器を増設する際の接続方式に特徴のある車載用ヘッドユニット及び車載用外部機器に関する。

【0002】

【従来技術】従来、車載用オーディオのヘッドユニットと外部機器の接続方式は、デッキ接続とバス接続の2通がある。一般的には、ヘッドユニットは例えばFM/AMラジオ付きカセットであり、一方、外部機器はCDプレーヤ、MDプレーヤまたはTV等である。

【0003】

【発明が解決しようとする課題】しかしながら、上記従来例では、デッキ接続とバス接続の接続方式は互換性がないため、CDプレーヤはデッキ接続用とバス接続用の二種類を用意しなければならない、という不都合があった。このため、ユーザは、外部機器を選定する時に、自分のヘッドユニットがデッキ接続用であるのか、それともバス接続用であるのかを確認しなければならなかった。

【0004】

【発明の目的】本発明は、係る従来例の有する不都合を改善し、特に、車載用オーディオの外部機器を低コストでかつ利用しやすいものとするのできる車載用ヘッドユニット及び車載用外部機器を提供することを、その目的とする。

【0005】

【課題を解決するための手段】そこで、本発明による車載用ヘッドユニットでは、内部音楽ソースからの音声信号を増幅するアンプと、外部機器を接続する外部機器コネクタと、この外部機器コネクタにケーブルを介して接続される外部機器から入力される音声信号と前記内部音楽ソースから入力される音声信号とを切替える切替スイ

ッチと、前記内部音楽ソースと前記外部機器との切替えを制御する制御手段とを備えている。そして、外部機器コネクタが、バス接続用の複数のバス用ピン接続端子と、このバス用ピンに併設されコントロール信号を送受する2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子と、前記外部機器と接続される前記バス用ピンおよび前記コントロールピンとを有する1本のケーブルに係合するコネクタ本体とを備えた、という構成を採っている。これにより前述した目的を達成しようとするものである。

【0006】ここでは、外部機器コネクタが、バス接続用のバス用ピン接続端子と、デッキ接続用のコントロール用ピン接続端子とを備えたため、いずれの接続形式の外部機器であっても、同一のケーブルで接続される。このため、外部機器の購入に際して、ヘッドユニットのコネクタ形状に応じて外部機器を選択する必要がない。

【0007】

【発明の実施の形態】以下、本発明の実施の形態を図面を参照して説明する。図1は本発明による車載用ヘッドユニットと当該車載用ヘッドユニットに接続した車載用外部機器との構成を示すブロック図である。図1に示すように、車載用ヘッドユニット2は、内部音楽ソース4からの音声信号を増幅するアンプ8と、外部機器を接続する外部機器コネクタ10と、この外部機器コネクタ10にケーブルを介して接続される外部機器から入力される音声信号と前記内部音楽ソースから入力される音声信号とを切替える切替スイッチ18と、前記内部音楽ソース4と前記外部機器30との切替えを制御する制御手段6とを備えている。

【0008】しかも、図2に示すように、外部機器コネクタ31が、バス接続用の複数のバス用ピン12を接続するバス用ピン接続端子(図2のピン番号1, 2のBUS+と-)と、このバス用ピンに併設されコントロール信号を送受する2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子(図2のピン番号5, 13のCONT1及び2)と、前記外部機器と接続される前記バス用ピンおよび前記コントロールピンとを有する1本のケーブルに係合するコネクタ本体11とを備えている。

【0009】図2に示すように、本実施形態ではヘッドユニット2と外部機器30とを接続するコネクタ及び信号ラインをデッキ接続用とバス接続用の両方を含む形態としている。デッキ接続Dは、図3(A)に示すように、外部機器を1台のみ接続する方式である。その長所は低コストで製造できる点にあり、対処は、1台のみの接続であることと、CDチェンジャーなどをヘッドユニットの操作により制御することができない点にある。デッキ接続では、例えば、ヘッドユニットの内部音楽ソース(ラジオ、テープ)が動作中はCONT1を”Hi”とし、外部機器が動作中は、CONT2を”Hi”とする。外部機器が動作中にヘッドユニットが動作すると、CONT1を”Hi”とする。これに応じて外部機器は

再生を停止し、CONT2を”Lo”とする。

【0010】一方、バス接続は複数台の外部機器の接続が可能であり、また、CDチェンジャーなどの制御をヘッドユニットで行うことができる。バス接続では、各機器にアドレスを割り当ててバスにより接続し、動作、停止等の要求をやりとりすることで連携する。バス接続では、通信用ICが必要となり、マイコン処理が増えるため、コストが高くなってしまふ。一般的に、デッキ接続は廉価品に、バス接続は高級品に使用されている。

【0011】本実施形態では、図1に示すように、図2に示した方式の13ピンを用いることで、ヘッドユニットがバス接続であるのかまたはデッキ接続であるのかに関わらず、同一の外部機器を接続することができる。図1に示す例では、外部機器は、ヘッドユニットに対して外部機器となるTV, CD又はMD等の外部音楽ソースを再生する再生手段34と、この再生手段34によって再生される音声信号を前記ヘッドユニットへケーブルを介して伝達するためのヘッドユニット用コネクタ31と、このヘッドユニット用コネクタ31から入力される制御信号に応じて前記再生手段34を制御する外部機器制御手段32とを備えている。そして、ヘッドユニット用コネクタ31は、上述した外部機器コネクタと同一の形状、構造を採っている。そして、ヘッドユニット用コネクタから入力される接続チェック信号に応じて再生手段を前記コントロール用ピン接続端子又は前記バス用ピン接続端子の一方を選択する接続方式切替手段を備えている。この接続方式切替手段が、ヘッドユニットの採用する接続方式に応じて、バス接続またはデッキ接続を選択するため、ユーザがヘッドユニットの接続方式を確認する必要がなくなる。これは、ヘッドユニット側がデッキ接続またはバス接続のみに対応している場合に好適である。

【0012】また、ヘッドユニット側が両方の接続方式に対応している場合には、図1に示したヘッドユニット2の制御手段6が、始動時(ACC ON時)にバス用ピンと前記コントロールピンとに接続チェック信号それぞれ送信すると共に当該接続チェック信号に応答があった側のピン接続端子を有効と設定する第1の接続開始制御部20を備えるといふ。

【0013】さらに、ヘッドユニットがデッキ接続のみに対応している場合には、第1の接続開始制御部20に代えて、始動時に前記2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子のうち一方を予め定められた一定期間中ハイにすると共に当該一定期間経過後は当該2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子への出力を前記始動時前の状態に戻す第2の接続開始制御部を備えるといふ。この場合、デッキ接続にのみ対応した外部機器や、または両方の接続方式に対応した外部機器との間でデッキ接続を確立する。

【0014】図4は本実施形態による13ピンの接続方

式を使用して複数台の外部機器を接続した例を示すブロック図である。図4に示す例では、ヘッドユニットを低コストとするためにデッキ接続専用としつつ、図2に示すコネクタを採用する。そして、外部機器として操作パネルを有するTVを設け、このTVから2台の他の外部機器をバス接続する。そして、TVの操作パネルを操作することで、デッキ接続を介してヘッドユニットに送信する音楽ソースを選択する。図4に示す他の外部機器30、38は、図2に示すコネクタを有しつつ、さらにデッキ接続とバス接続の両方に対応したものとすると、当該他の外部機器を直接ヘッドユニット2に接続することもでき、接続の形態に応じて外部機器の接続方式及びコネクタを選択する必要がなくなる。

【0015】図4に示す外部機器40は、ヘッドユニット又は他の外部機器と接続する2以上の拡張コネクタ41を備えている。そして、当該拡張コネクタは、図1に示す外部機器コネクタと同様の形式、構造を採っている。そして、この外部機器40のコントローラとなる外部機器制御手段は、ヘッドユニット2が接続されたコネクタ41に対して前記コントロール用ピン接続端子を有効と設定することでデッキ接続を行い、さらに、他の外部機器が接続されたコネクタ41に対して前記バス用ピン接続端子を有効に設定することでバス接続する複数接続制御部を備えている。これにより、ヘッドユニット2を低コストとしつつ、複数台の外部機器を接続でき、そして、すべて同一のケーブルを利用して接続できるため、接続及び機器の選定が容易となる。

【0016】図5は本発明による車載用ヘッドユニットの実施例の構成を示すブロック図である。図5に示す車載用ヘッドユニットは、FM/AMラジオ付カセットである。図5に示すように、FM/AMラジオ付カセット(ヘッドユニット)は、車両アンテナで受信する電波に同調するチューナー回路52と、カセットテープを再生するテープヘッド54からの再生信号を増幅するテープイコライザアンプ53と、外部機器30から入力される音声信号を増幅するグラウンドアイソレーションアンプ55と、これらの音楽ソースからの音声信号を切替信号に応じて切り替える音声信号切替スイッチ18とを備えている。

【0017】FM/AMラジオ付カセット2はさらに、切替スイッチから入力される音声信号の増幅を調整するボリウム回路7と、このボリウム回路の出力を増幅するパワーアンプ8とを備えている。また、このパワーアンプ8は、スピーカー16に接続されている。そして、外部機器30とデッキ接続される制御手段としての制御用マイコン6を備えている。

【0018】図6に示すように、FM/AMラジオ付カセット2と外部機器との接続の確立は、AccON時の接続チェック信号の送受信により行う。図6(A)はデッキ接続を確立するための接続チェック信号の一例を示

す波形図であり、FM/AMラジオ付カセット2は、AccON時に500 [ms] CONT1を"Hi"とする。これにより、FM/AMラジオ付カセット2がデッキ接続を要求していることを外部機器に伝達する。また、FM/AMラジオ付カセット2がバス接続を外部機器に要求するには、図6(B)に示すように、AccON時直後に接続チェック信号となるパルス信号を各機器に送信し、返事を待つ。外部機器から当該接続チェック信号に応じた信号が入力されると、当該外部機器とバス接続を確立する。

【0019】図7に示すように、外部機器30は、AccON時に、バス信号とCONT1信号とをチェックして現在接続されているヘッドユニットがどちらの方式かを判断する。すなわち、AccONとなると、バス接続用の接続チェック信号が入力されたか否かを確認し(ステップS1)、図6(B)に示す信号が入力された場合にはバス接続を確立する(ステップS2)。一方、バス接続用の接続チェック信号が入力されない場合には、図6(A)に示すCONT1が"Hi"であるか否かを判定する(ステップS3)。そして、CONT1が"Hi"であれば、デッキ接続を確立する(ステップS4)。

【0020】また、AccONから2秒間バス信号、CONT1も入力されないときには、外部機器はヘッドユニットに対して接続要求のバス信号を送信する。

【0021】上述したように本実施形態によると、1つの接続コネクタの中にデッキ接続とバス接続の2つの方式の配線を入れ、そして、外部機器は、接続されたヘッドユニットがどちらの方式のものであるかを識別するため、外部機器は1機種で対応できるため、品種を少なくすることができ、そして、ユーザが外部機器を選定するときに自分のヘッドユニットがどちらの接続方式であるかを考慮する必要がなくなる。

【0022】

【発明の効果】本発明は以上のように構成され機能するので、これによると、外部機器コネクタが、バス接続用のバス用ピン接続端子と、デッキ接続用のコントロール用ピン接続端子とを備えたため、いずれの接続形式の外部機器であっても、同一のケーブルで接続することができ、従って、同一の機能の外部機器についてコネクタ形状別に外部機器の製造を行う必要がなく、また、ユーザは、外部機器の購入に際して、ヘッドユニットのコネクタ形状に応じて外部機器を選択する必要がなく、このため、外部機器の増設作業を簡単に行うことができる、という従来にない優れた車載用ヘッドユニット及び車載用外部機器を提供することができる。

【図面の簡単な説明】

【図1】本発明の一実施形態の構成を示すブロック図である。

【図2】図1に示した外部機器コネクタ等の形式及び構

造の一例を示す説明図である。

【図3】ヘッドユニットと外部機器の接続の例を示すブロック図であり、図3(A)はデッキ接続の一例を示し、図3(B)はバス接続の一例を示す図である。

【図4】デッキ接続形式のヘッドユニットに複数の外部機器を接続する例を示すブロック図である。

【図5】本発明の一実施例の構成を示すブロック図である。

【図6】接続チェック信号の一例を示す波形図であり、図6(A)はデッキ接続での接続チェック信号の一例を示す図で、図6(B)はバス接続での接続チェック信号の一例を示す図である。

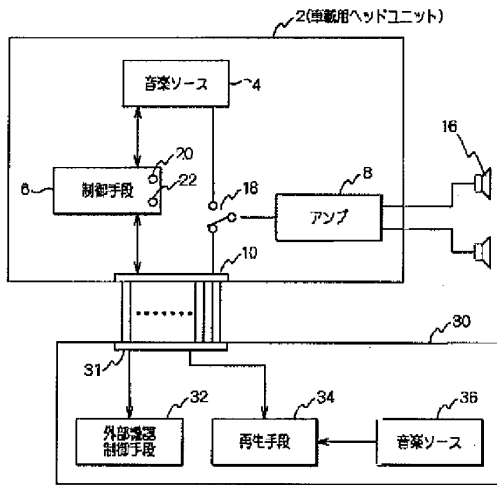
【図7】図6に示す接続チェック信号を用いた外部機器

側の接続確立処理の一例を示すフローチャートである。

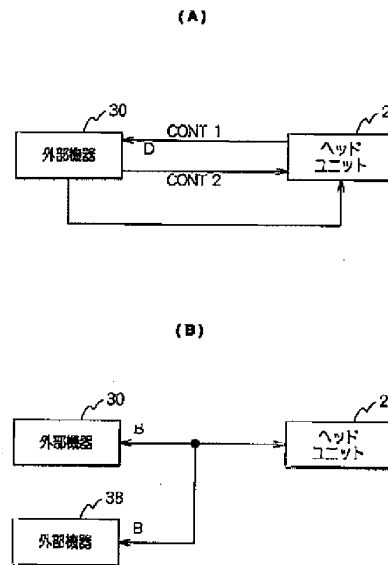
【符号の説明】

- 2 ヘッドユニット (例えば、FM/AMラジオ付カセット)
- 4 ヘッドユニットの音楽ソース (例えば、カセット)
- 6 制御手段 (制御用マイコン)
- 8 アンプ
- 10 外部機器用コネクタ
- 16 スピーカ
- 30 外部機器 (例えば、CDプレーヤ)
- 31 ヘッドユニット用コネクタ
- 32 外部機器接続制御手段 (制御用マイコン及び通信用IC)

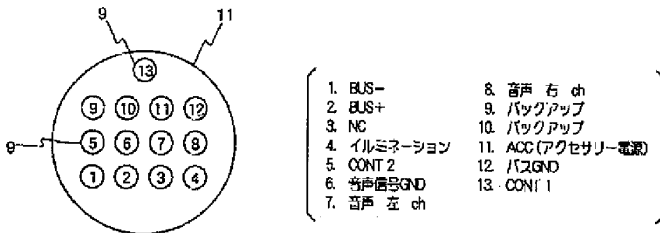
【図1】



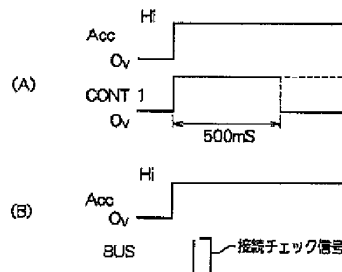
【図3】



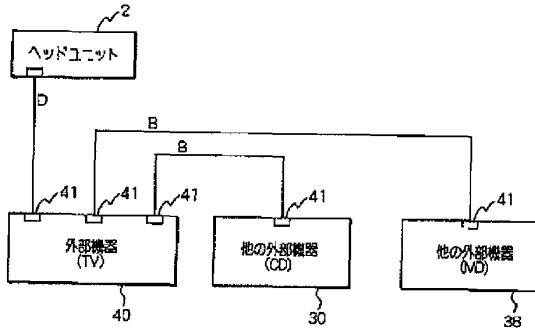
【図2】



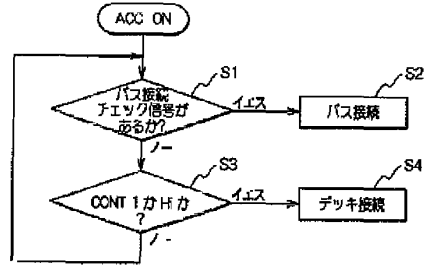
【図6】



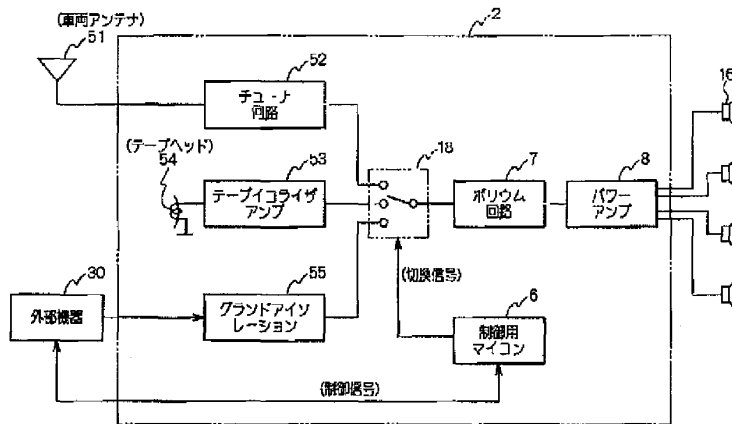
【図4】



【図7】



【図5】



PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN

(11)Publication number : 2000-286874

(43)Date of publication of application : 13.10.2000

(51)Int.Cl. H04L 12/40
B60R 11/02
H04L 12/28

(21)Application number : 11-090570 (71)Applicant : SUZUKI MOTOR CORP

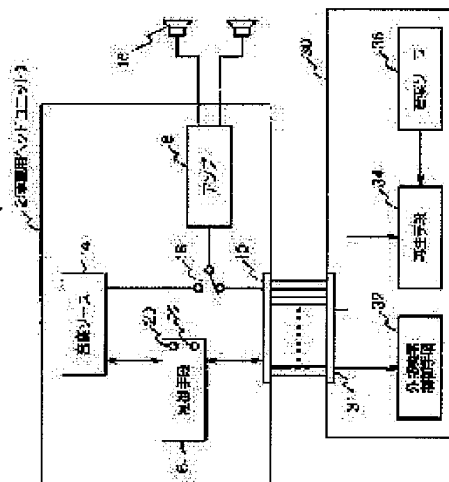
(22)Date of filing : 31.03.1999 (72)Inventor : UEMURA HIROSHI

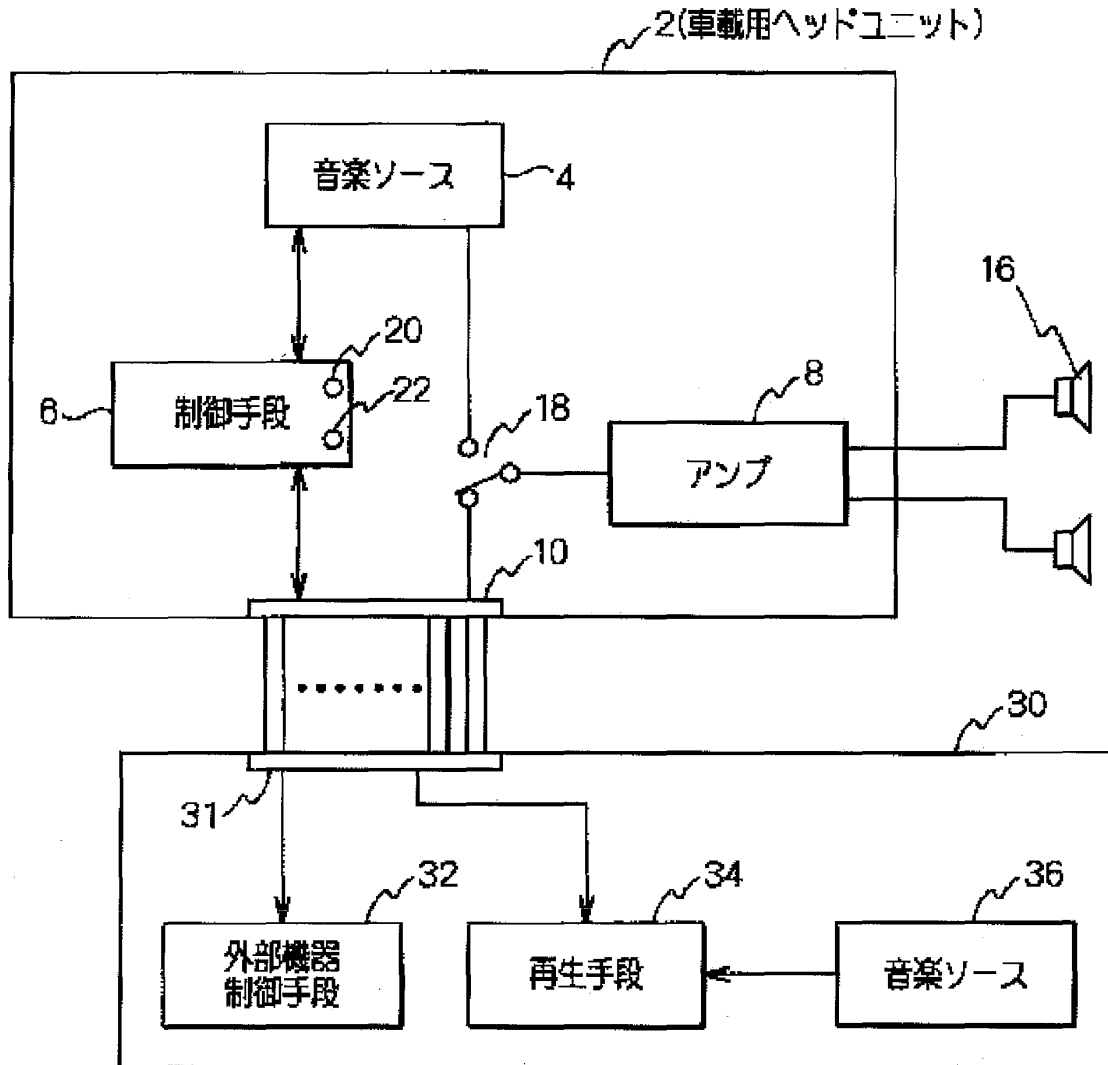
(54) ON-VEHICLE HEAD UNIT AND ON-VEHICLE EXTERNAL DEVICE

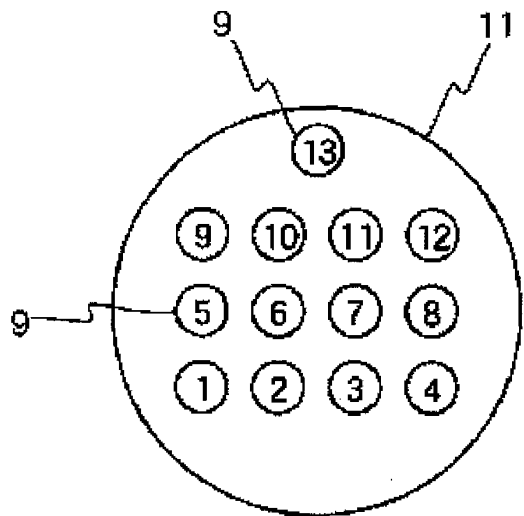
(57)Abstract:

PROBLEM TO BE SOLVED: To provide an external device for an on-vehicle audio unit which device is inexpensive and easily used.

SOLUTION: An on-vehicle head unit 2 is provided with an amplifier 8 that amplifies an audio signal from an internal music source 4, an external unit connector 10 for connecting the head unit 2 to an external device, a changeover switch 18 that selects an audio signal received from the external device connected to the external unit connector 10 via a cable or the audio signal received from the internal music source, and a control means 6 that controls switching between the internal music source 4 and the external device 30. Furthermore, an external device connector 31 is provided with bus use pin connection terminals connected to a plurality of bus pins for bus connection, two control pin connection terminals provided along the bus pins to send/receive a control signal, and a connector main body engaging one cable connected to the external device and having the bus pins and the control pins.

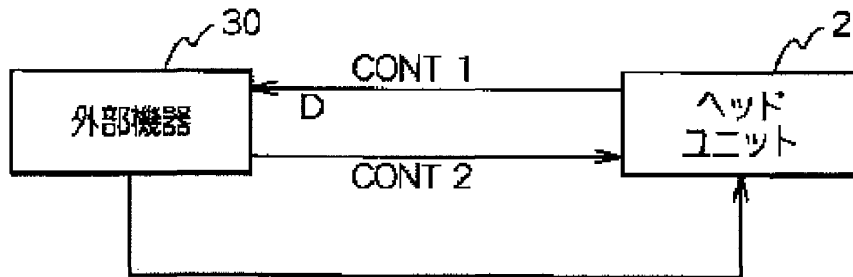




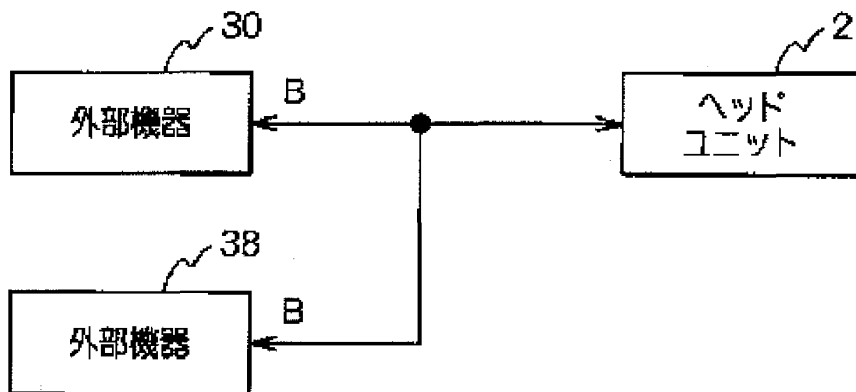


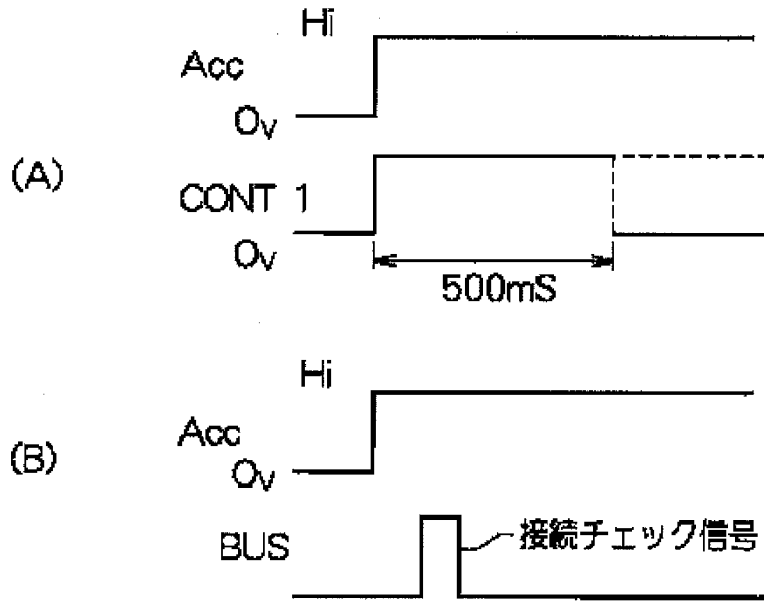
- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. BUS- | 8. 音声 右 |
| 2. BUS+ | 9. バックア |
| 3. NC | 10. バックア |
| 4. イルミネーション | 11. ACC (ア |
| 5. CONT 2 | 12. バスGND |
| 6. 音声信号GND | 13. CONT 1 |
| 7. 音声 左 ch | |

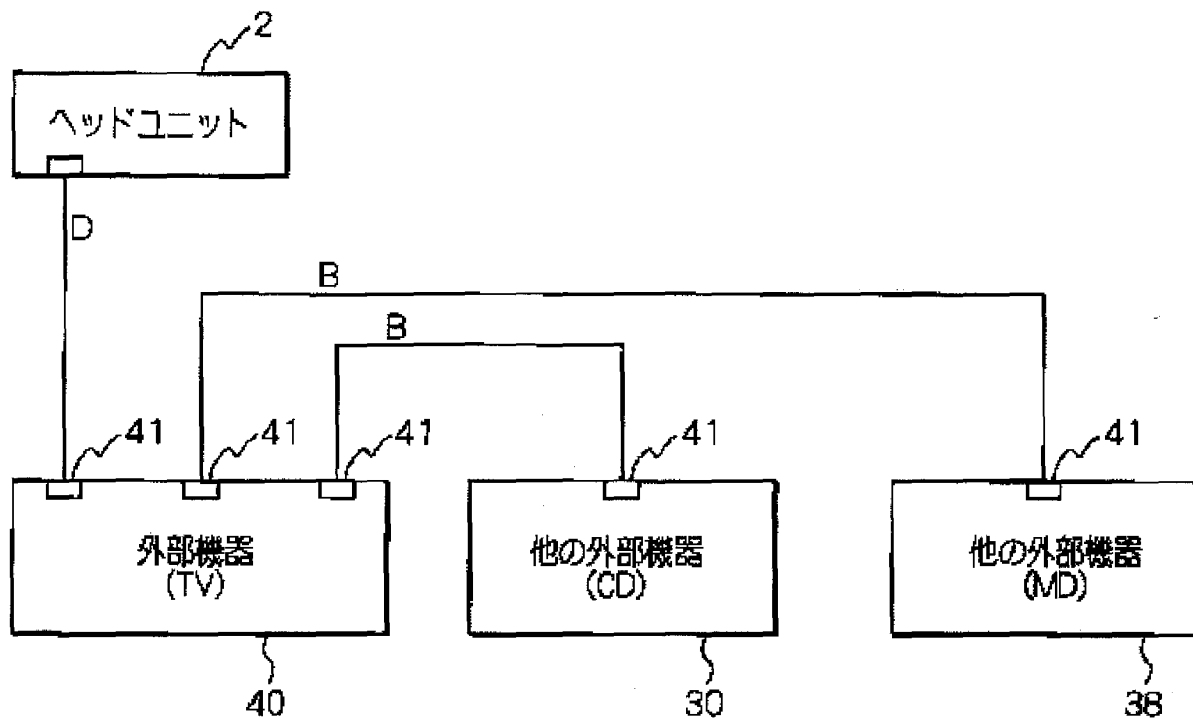
(A)

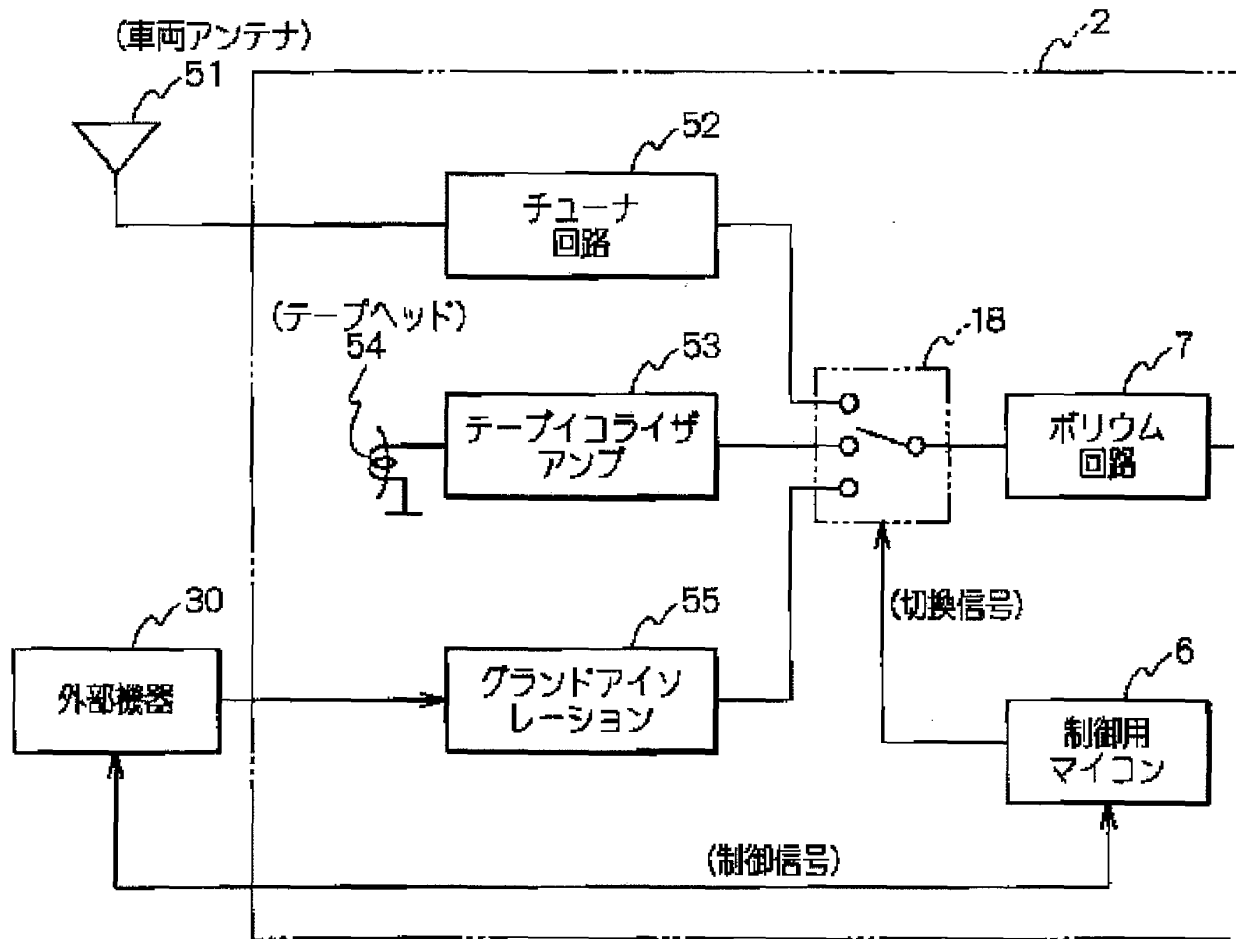


(B)

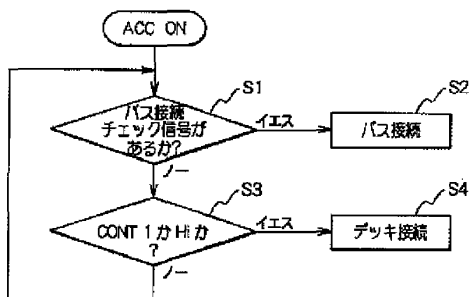








Drawing selection



[Translation done.]

*** NOTICES ***

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.**** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

CLAIMS

[Claim(s)]

[Claim 1]Amplifier which amplifies an audio signal characterized by comprising the following from an internal music source, A changeover switch which changes an external device connector which connects an external instrument, and an audio signal inputted from an external instrument connected to this external device connector via a cable and an audio signal inputted from said internal music source, A head unit for mount provided with a control means which controls a change to said internal music source and said external instrument. A pin connection terminal for buses of plurality [external device connector / said] for bus connections.

Two pin connection terminals for control which are put side by side at this pin for buses, and send and receive a control signal.

Said pin for buses connected with said external instrument, and said control pin.

[Claim 2]Said control means, the time of said start up -- said pin for buses, and said control pin -- a connection check signal -- the head unit for mount according to claim 1 provided with the 1st starting connection control section that sets up a pin connection terminal of a side which it each transmitted and had a response in the connection check signal concerned as it is effective.

[Claim 3]Said control means, Make one side into a high in fixed time which was able to be defined beforehand between said two pin connection terminals for control at the time of said start up, and. The head unit for mount according to claim 1, wherein after the fixed time progress concerned is provided with the 2nd starting connection control section that returns an output to the two pin connection terminals for control concerned to a front state at the time of said start up.

*** NOTICES ***

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.*** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

[Detailed Description of the Invention]

[0001]

[Field of the Invention]This invention relates to the head unit for mount, and the external instrument for mount, and relates to the head unit for mount and the external instrument for mount which have the feature in the connection type at the time of extending the external instrument for mount to the head unit for mount especially.

[0002]

[Description of the Prior Art]Conventionally, the head unit of the audio for mount and the connection type of an external instrument have two copies, deck connection and a bus connection. Generally, a head unit is for example, a cassette with FM/AM radio, and, on the other hand, an external instrument is a CD player, an MD player, or TV.

[0003]

[Problem(s) to be Solved by the Invention]However, in the above-mentioned conventional example, since the connection type of deck connection and a bus connection was incompatible, there was inconvenience that the CD player had to prepare two kinds, the object for deck connection and the object for bus connections. for this reason, when a user selects an external instrument, its head unit is an object for deck connection -- or it had to be checked whether it was an object for bus connections.

[0004]

[Objects of the Invention]This invention improves the inconvenience which the starting conventional example has, and sets it as the purpose to provide the head unit for mount which shall be low cost and shall be especially easy to use the external instrument of the audio for mount, and the external instrument for mount.

[0005]

[Means for Solving the Problem]So, in a head unit for mount by this invention. Amplifier which

amplifies an audio signal from an internal music source, and an external device connector which connects an external instrument, It has a changeover switch which changes an audio signal inputted from an external instrument connected to this external device connector via a cable, and an audio signal inputted from said internal music source, and a control means which controls a change to said internal music source and said external instrument. And a pin connection terminal for buses of plurality [external device connector] for bus connections, Composition of having had a connector body engaged in one cable which has two pin connection terminals for control which are put side by side at this pin for buses, and send and receive a control signal, and said pins for buses connected with said external instrument and said control pins is taken. It is going to attain the purpose which this mentioned above.

[0006]Here, since an external device connector was provided with a pin connection terminal for buses for bus connections, and a pin connection terminal for control for deck connection, even if it is an external instrument of which connection form, it is connected by the same cable. For this reason, it is not necessary when purchasing an external instrument to choose an external instrument according to connector shape of a head unit.

[0007]

[Embodiment of the Invention]Hereafter, an embodiment of the invention is described with reference to drawings. Drawing 1 is a block diagram showing composition with the external instrument for mount linked to the head unit for mount by this invention, and the head unit for mount concerned. As shown in drawing 1, the head unit 2 for mount is provided with the following.

Amplifier 8 which amplifies the audio signal from the internal music source 4.

The external device connector 10 which connects an external instrument.

The changeover switch 18 which changes the audio signal inputted from the external instrument connected to this external device connector 10 via a cable, and the audio signal inputted from said internal music source.

The control means 6 which controls the change to said internal music source 4 and said external instrument 30.

[0008]And the pin connection terminal for buses (BUS+ and - of the pin numbers 1 and 2 of drawing 2) to which the external device connector 31 connects two or more pins 12 for buses for bus connections as shown in drawing 2, Two pin connection terminals for control (CONT1 of the pin numbers 5 and 13 of drawing 2, and 2) which are put side by side at this pin for buses, and send and receive a control signal, It has the connector body 11 engaged in one cable which has said pin for buses connected with said external instrument, and said control pin.

[0009]As shown in drawing 2, in this embodiment, the connector and signal line which connect

the head unit 2 and the external instrument 30 are made into the gestalt containing both the object for deck connection, and for bus connections. The deck connection D is a method which accepts one external instrument and connects, as shown in drawing 3 (A). The strong point is in the point which can be manufactured by low cost, and it being only one set of connection and the point which cannot control a CD changer etc. by operation of a head unit have management. In deck connection, while the internal music source (radio, tape) of a head unit operates, CONT1 is made into "Hi", and while the external instrument operates, CONT2 is made into "Hi", for example. An external instrument will make CONT1 "Hi", if the head unit operates working. According to this, an external instrument suspends reproduction and makes CONT2 "Lo".

[0010]On the other hand, connection of two or more sets of external instruments is possible for a bus connection, and it can control CD changer y- etc. by a head unit. At a bus connection, an address is assigned to each apparatus, and it connects by bus, and cooperates by exchanging the demand of operation, a stop, etc. In a bus connection, since IC for communication is needed and microcomputer processing increases, cost will become high. Generally, deck connection is used for low-priced goods, and the bus connection is used for quality articles.

[0011]a head unit is a bus connection in using 13 pins of the method shown in drawing 2 in this embodiment, as shown in drawing 1 – or although it is deck connection, it cannot be concerned, but the same external instrument can be connected. The reproduction means 34 which plays the alien-frequencies easy sauce in which an external instrument turns into an external instrument to a head unit, such as TV, CD, or MD, in the example shown in drawing 1, The connector 31 for head units for transmitting the audio signal reproduced by this reproduction means 34 to said head unit via a cable, It has the external instrument control means 32 which controls said reproduction means 34 according to the control signal inputted from this connector 31 for head units. And the connector 31 for head units has taken the same shape as the external device connector mentioned above, and structure. And it has the connection type switching means which chooses either said pin connection terminal for control, or said pin connection terminal for buses for a reproduction means according to the connection check signal inputted from the connector for head units. In order that this connection type switching means may choose a bus connection or deck connection according to the connection type which a head unit adopts, it becomes unnecessary for a user to check the connection type of a head unit. This is preferred when the head unit side supports only deck connection or a bus connection.

[0012]When the head unit side supports both connection types and the external instrument supports only one connection type, The control means 6 of the head unit 2 shown in drawing 1, the time of start up (at the time of ACC ON) -- the pin for buses, and said control pin -- a connection check signal -- it each transmits and it is good to have the 1st starting connection

control section 20 that sets up the pin connection terminal of the side which had a response in the connection check signal concerned as it is effective.

[0013]When the head unit supports only deck connection, It replaces with the 1st starting connection control section 20, One side is made into the high in fixed time which was able to be defined beforehand between said two pin connection terminals for control at the time of start up, and after the fixed time progress concerned is good to have the 2nd starting connection control section that returns the output to the two pin connection terminals for control concerned to a front state at the time of said start up. In this case, deck connection is established between the external instrument only corresponding to deck connection, or the external instrument corresponding to both connection types.

[0014]Drawing 4 is a block diagram showing the example which connected two or more sets of external instruments using the connection type of 13 pins by this embodiment. The connector shown in drawing 2 is adopted in the example shown in drawing 4, being only for deck connection, in order to make a head unit into low cost. And TV which has a navigational panel as an external instrument is formed, and the bus connection of two sets of other external instruments is carried out from this TV. And the music source which transmits to a head unit via deck connection by operating the navigational panel of TV is chosen. If other external instruments 30 and 38 shown in drawing 4 should correspond to both deck connection and a bus connection further, having a connector shown in drawing 2, being concerned -- others -- it becomes unnecessary to be also able to connect an external instrument to the head unit 2 directly, and to choose the connection type and connector of an external instrument according to the gestalt of connection

[0015]The external instrument 40 shown in drawing 4 is provided with the two or more expansion connectors 41 linked to a head unit or other external instruments. And the expansion connector concerned has taken the same form as the external device connector shown in drawing 1, and structure. And the external instrument control means used as the controller of this external instrument 40, Deck connection is made by setting up said pin connection terminal for control to the connector 41 to which the head unit 2 was connected, as it is effective, It has two or more connect control part which carries out a bus connection by setting up said pin connection terminal for buses effectively to the connector 41 to which other external instruments were connected. Thereby, making the head unit 2 into low cost, two or more sets of external instruments are connectable, and since it is altogether connectable using the same cable, connection and selection of apparatus become easy.

[0016]Drawing 5 is a block diagram showing the composition of the example of the head unit for mount by this invention. The head unit for mount shown in drawing 5 is a cassette with FM/AM radio. As shown in drawing 5, the cassette with FM/AM radio (head unit) is provided with the following.

The tuner circuit 52 which sides with the electric wave received with a vehicular antenna.
Tape equalizer amplifier 53 which amplifies the regenerative signal from the tape head 54 which plays a cassette tape.

Grand isolation amplifier 55 which amplifies the audio signal inputted from the external instrument 30.

The audio signal changeover switch 18 which changes the audio signal from these music sources according to a switching signal.

[0017]The cassette 2 with FM/AM radio is provided with the BORIUMU circuit 7 which adjusts further amplification of the audio signal inputted from a changeover switch, and the power amplification 8 which amplifies the output of this BORIUMU circuit. This power amplification 8 is connected to the speaker 16. And it has the control oriented microcomputer 6 as a control means by which deck connection is made with the external instrument 30.

[0018]As shown in drawing 6, transmission and reception of the connection check signal at the time of AccON perform establishment of connection between the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio, and an external instrument. Drawing 6 (A) is a wave form chart showing an example of the connection check signal for establishing deck connection, and the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio is 500 at the time of AccON. [ms] CONT1 is made into "Hi". This transmits to an external instrument that the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio is demanding deck connection. In order for the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio to require a bus connection of an external instrument, as shown in drawing 6 (B), he transmits the pulse signal which turns into a connection check signal immediately after at the time of AccON to each apparatus, and waits for the reply. If the signal according to the connection check signal concerned is inputted from an external instrument, the external instrument concerned and bus connection will be established.

[0019]As shown in drawing 7, the head unit which the external instrument 30 checks a bus signal and CONT1 signal at the time of AccON, and is connected now judges which method it is. That is, when it comes to AccON, it checks whether the connection check signal for bus connections has been inputted (Step S1), and a bus connection is established when the signal shown in drawing 6 (B) is inputted (Step S2). On the other hand, when the connection check signal for bus connections is not inputted, it is judged whether CONT1 shown in drawing 6 (A) is "Hi" (Step S3). And deck connection will be established if CONT1 is "Hi" (step S4).

[0020]When a bus signal and CONT1 are not inputted for 2 seconds from AccON, an external instrument transmits the bus signal of a connection request to a head unit.

[0021]According to this embodiment, as mentioned above, put wiring of two methods, deck connection and a bus connection, in one connection connector, and and an external instrument, Variety can be lessened, and when a user selects an external instrument, it becomes unnecessary for its head unit to take into consideration which connection type it is,

since the external instrument can respond by 1 model in order to identify of which method the connected head unit is a thing.

[0022]

[Effect of the Invention] Since this invention was constituted as mentioned above, and functioned and the external device connector was provided with the pin connection terminal for buses for bus connections, and the pin connection terminal for control for deck connection according to this, Even if it is an external instrument of which connection form, can connect by the same cable, therefore it is not necessary to manufacture an external instrument according to connector shape about the external instrument of the same function and, and a user faces the purchase of an external instrument, It is not necessary to choose an external instrument according to the connector shape of a head unit, and, for this reason, the outstanding head unit for mount and the external instrument for mount which are not in the former that the extension work of an external instrument can be done easily can be provided.

[Translation done.]

* NOTICES *

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.*** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

TECHNICAL FIELD

[Field of the Invention]This invention relates to the head unit for mount, and the external instrument for mount, and relates to the head unit for mount and the external instrument for mount which have the feature in the connection type at the time of extending the external instrument for mount to the head unit for mount especially.

[Translation done.]

* NOTICES *

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.**** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

PRIOR ART

[Description of the Prior Art]Conventionally, the head unit of the audio for mount and the connection type of an external instrument have two copies, deck connection and a bus connection. Generally, a head unit is for example, a cassette with FM/AM radio, and, on the other hand, an external instrument is a CD player, an MD player, or TV.

[Translation done.]

* NOTICES *

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.*** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

EFFECT OF THE INVENTION

[Effect of the Invention]Since this invention was constituted as mentioned above, and functioned and the external device connector was provided with the pin connection terminal for buses for bus connections, and the pin connection terminal for control for deck connection according to this, Even if it is an external instrument of which connection form, can connect by the same cable, therefore it is not necessary to manufacture an external instrument according to connector shape about the external instrument of the same function and, and a user faces the purchase of an external instrument, It is not necessary to choose an external instrument according to the connector shape of a head unit, and, for this reason, the outstanding head unit for mount and the external instrument for mount which are not in the former that the extension work of an external instrument can be done easily can be provided.

[Translation done.]

* NOTICES *

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.*** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

TECHNICAL PROBLEM

[Problem(s) to be Solved by the Invention]However, in the above-mentioned conventional example, since the connection type of deck connection and a bus connection was incompatible, there was inconvenience that the CD player had to prepare two kinds, the object for deck connection and the object for bus connections. for this reason, when a user selects an external instrument, its head unit is an object for deck connection -- or it had to be checked whether it was an object for bus connections.

[0004]

[Objects of the Invention]This invention improves the inconvenience which the starting conventional example has, and sets it as the purpose to provide the head unit for mount which shall be low cost and shall be especially easy to use the external instrument of the audio for mount, and the external instrument for mount.

[Translation done.]

*** NOTICES ***

JP0 and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.**** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

MEANS

[Means for Solving the Problem]So, in a head unit for mount by this invention. Amplifier which amplifies an audio signal from an internal music source, and an external device connector which connects an external instrument, It has a changeover switch which changes an audio signal inputted from an external instrument connected to this external device connector via a cable, and an audio signal inputted from said internal music source, and a control means which controls a change to said internal music source and said external instrument. And a pin connection terminal for buses of plurality [external device connector] for bus connections, Composition of having had a connector body engaged in one cable which has two pin connection terminals for control which are put side by side at this pin for buses, and send and receive a control signal, and said pins for buses connected with said external instrument and said control pins is taken. It is going to attain the purpose which this mentioned above.

[0006]Here, since an external device connector was provided with a pin connection terminal for buses for bus connections, and a pin connection terminal for control for deck connection, even if it is an external instrument of which connection form, it is connected by the same cable. For this reason, it is not necessary when purchasing an external instrument to choose an external instrument according to connector shape of a head unit.

[0007]

[Embodiment of the Invention]Hereafter, an embodiment of the invention is described with reference to drawings. Drawing 1 is a block diagram showing composition with the external instrument for mount linked to the head unit for mount by this invention, and the head unit for mount concerned. As shown in drawing 1, the head unit 2 for mount is provided with the following.

Amplifier 8 which amplifies the audio signal from the internal music source 4.

The external device connector 10 which connects an external instrument.

The changeover switch 18 which changes the audio signal inputted from the external

instrument connected to this external device connector 10 via a cable, and the audio signal inputted from said internal music source.

The control means 6 which controls the change to said internal music source 4 and said external instrument 30.

[0008]And the pin connection terminal for buses (BUS+ and - of the pin numbers 1 and 2 of drawing 2) to which the external device connector 31 connects two or more pins 12 for buses for bus connections as shown in drawing 2, Two pin connection terminals for control (CONT1 of the pin numbers 5 and 13 of drawing 2, and 2) which are put side by side at this pin for buses, and send and receive a control signal, It has the connector body 11 engaged in one cable which has said pin for buses connected with said external instrument, and said control pin.

[0009]As shown in drawing 2, in this embodiment, the connector and signal line which connect the head unit 2 and the external instrument 30 are made into the gestalt containing both the object for deck connection, and for bus connections. The deck connection D is a method which accepts one external instrument and connects, as shown in drawing 3 (A). The strong point is in the point which can be manufactured by low cost, and it being only one set of connection and the point which cannot control a CD changer etc. by operation of a head unit have management. In deck connection, while the internal music source (radio, tape) of a head unit operates, CONT1 is made into "Hi", and while the external instrument operates, CONT2 is made into "Hi", for example. An external instrument will make CONT1 "Hi", if the head unit operates working. According to this, an external instrument suspends reproduction and makes CONT2 "Lo".

[0010]On the other hand, connection of two or more sets of external instruments is possible for a bus connection, and it can control CD changer y- etc. by a head unit. At a bus connection, an address is assigned to each apparatus, and it connects by bus, and cooperates by exchanging the demand of operation, a stop, etc. In a bus connection, since IC for communication is needed and microcomputer processing increases, cost will become high. Generally, deck connection is used for low-priced goods, and the bus connection is used for quality articles.

[0011]a head unit is a bus connection in using 13 pins of the method shown in drawing 2 in this embodiment, as shown in drawing 1 -- or although it is deck connection, it cannot be concerned, but the same external instrument can be connected. The reproduction means 34 which plays the alien-frequencies easy sauce in which an external instrument turns into an external instrument to a head unit, such as TV, CD, or MD, in the example shown in drawing 1, The connector 31 for head units for transmitting the audio signal reproduced by this reproduction means 34 to said head unit via a cable, It has the external instrument control means 32 which controls said reproduction means 34 according to the control signal inputted

from this connector 31 for head units. And the connector 31 for head units has taken the same shape as the external device connector mentioned above, and structure. And it has the connection type switching means which chooses either said pin connection terminal for control, or said pin connection terminal for buses for a reproduction means according to the connection check signal inputted from the connector for head units. In order that this connection type switching means may choose a bus connection or deck connection according to the connection type which a head unit adopts, it becomes unnecessary for a user to check the connection type of a head unit. This is preferred when the head unit side supports only deck connection or a bus connection.

[0012]When the head unit side supports both connection types and the external instrument supports only one connection type, The control means 6 of the head unit 2 shown in drawing 1, the time of start up (at the time of ACC ON) -- the pin for buses, and said control pin -- a connection check signal -- it each transmits and it is good to have the 1st starting connection control section 20 that sets up the pin connection terminal of the side which had a response in the connection check signal concerned as it is effective.

[0013]When the head unit supports only deck connection, It replaces with the 1st starting connection control section 20, One side is made into the high in fixed time which was able to be defined beforehand between said two pin connection terminals for control at the time of start up, and after the fixed time progress concerned is good to have the 2nd starting connection control section that returns the output to the two pin connection terminals for control concerned to a front state at the time of said start up. In this case, deck connection is established between the external instrument only corresponding to deck connection, or the external instrument corresponding to both connection types.

[0014]Drawing 4 is a block diagram showing the example which connected two or more sets of external instruments using the connection type of 13 pins by this embodiment. The connector shown in drawing 2 is adopted in the example shown in drawing 4, being only for deck connection, in order to make a head unit into low cost. And TV which has a navigational panel as an external instrument is formed, and the bus connection of two sets of other external instruments is carried out from this TV. And the music source which transmits to a head unit via deck connection by operating the navigational panel of TV is chosen. If other external instruments 30 and 38 shown in drawing 4 should correspond to both deck connection and a bus connection further, having a connector shown in drawing 2, being concerned -- others -- it becomes unnecessary to be also able to connect an external instrument to the head unit 2 directly, and to choose the connection type and connector of an external instrument according to the gestalt of connection

[0015]The external instrument 40 shown in drawing 4 is provided with the two or more expansion connectors 41 linked to a head unit or other external instruments. And the

expansion connector concerned has taken the same form as the external device connector shown in drawing 1, and structure. And the external instrument control means used as the controller of this external instrument 40, Deck connection is made by setting up said pin connection terminal for control to the connector 41 to which the head unit 2 was connected, as it is effective, It has two or more connect control part which carries out a bus connection by setting up said pin connection terminal for buses effectively to the connector 41 to which other external instruments were connected. Thereby, making the head unit 2 into low cost, two or more sets of external instruments are connectable, and since it is altogether connectable using the same cable, connection and selection of apparatus become easy.

[0016]Drawing 5 is a block diagram showing the composition of the example of the head unit for mount by this invention. The head unit for mount shown in drawing 5 is a cassette with FM/AM radio. As shown in drawing 5, the cassette with FM/AM radio (head unit) is provided with the following.

The tuner circuit 52 which sides with the electric wave received with a vehicular antenna.
Tape equalizer amplifier 53 which amplifies the regenerative signal from the tape head 54 which plays a cassette tape.

Grand isolation amplifier 55 which amplifies the audio signal inputted from the external instrument 30.

The audio signal changeover switch 18 which changes the audio signal from these music sources according to a switching signal.

[0017]The cassette 2 with FM/AM radio is provided with the BORIUMU circuit 7 which adjusts further amplification of the audio signal inputted from a changeover switch, and the power amplification 8 which amplifies the output of this BORIUMU circuit. This power amplification 8 is connected to the speaker 16. And it has the control oriented microcomputer 6 as a control means by which deck connection is made with the external instrument 30.

[0018]As shown in drawing 6, transmission and reception of the connection check signal at the time of AccON perform establishment of connection between the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio, and an external instrument. Drawing 6 (A) is a wave form chart showing an example of the connection check signal for establishing deck connection, and the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio is 500 at the time of AccON. [ms] CONT1 is made into "Hi". This transmits to an external instrument that the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio is demanding deck connection. In order for the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio to require a bus connection of an external instrument, as shown in drawing 6 (B), he transmits the pulse signal which turns into a connection check signal immediately after at the time of AccON to each apparatus, and waits for the reply. If the signal according to the connection check signal concerned is inputted from an external instrument, the external instrument concerned and bus connection will be established.

[0019]As shown in drawing 7, the head unit which the external instrument 30 checks a bus signal and CONT1 signal at the time of AccON, and is connected now judges which method it is. That is, when it comes to AccON, it checks whether the connection check signal for bus connections has been inputted (Step S1), and a bus connection is established when the signal shown in drawing 6 (B) is inputted (Step S2). On the other hand, when the connection check signal for bus connections is not inputted, it is judged whether CONT1 shown in drawing 6 (A) is "Hi" (Step S3). And deck connection will be established if CONT1 is "Hi" (step S4).

[0020]When a bus signal and CONT1 are not inputted for 2 seconds from AccON, an external instrument transmits the bus signal of a connection request to a head unit.

[0021]According to this embodiment, as mentioned above, put wiring of two methods, deck connection and a bus connection, in one connection connector, and an external instrument, Variety can be lessened, and when a user selects an external instrument, it becomes unnecessary for its head unit to take into consideration which connection type it is, since the external instrument can respond by 1 model in order to identify of which method the connected head unit is a thing.

[Translation done.]

(19) 日本国特許庁 (J P)

(12) 公開特許公報 (A)

(11) 特許出願公開番号

特開平11-273321

(43) 公開日 平成11年(1999)10月8日

(51) Int.Cl. ⁸	識別記号	F I	
G 1 1 B	31/00	G 1 1 B	31/00 N
B 6 0 R	11/02	B 6 0 R	11/02 B

審査請求 未請求 請求項の数12 OL (全 14 頁)

(21) 出願番号 特願平10-76115

(22) 出願日 平成10年(1998)3月24日

(71) 出願人 000001487

クラリオン株式会社
東京都文京区白山5丁目35番2号

(72) 発明者 井戸 和弘

東京都文京区白山5丁目35番2号 クラリオン株式会社内

(72) 発明者 中鉢 善樹

東京都文京区白山5丁目35番2号 クラリオン株式会社内

(72) 発明者 上原 永敏

東京都文京区白山5丁目35番2号 クラリオン株式会社内

(74) 代理人 弁理士 木内 光春

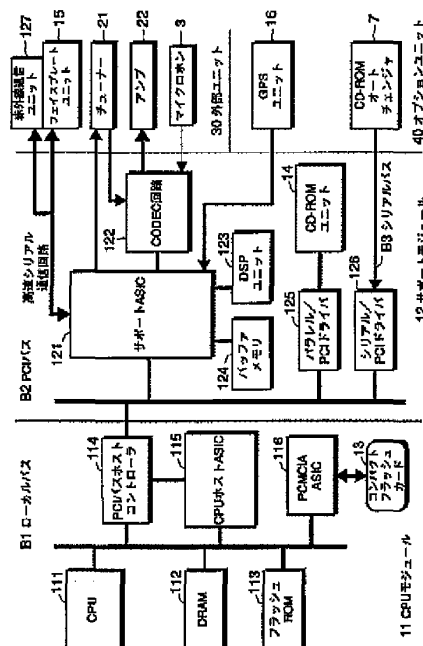
最終頁に続く

(54) 【発明の名称】 カーオーディオシステム、車載用コンピュータ及びカーオーディオシステムの制御方法

(57) 【要約】

【課題】 汎用的なOSを持つ小形コンピュータとカーオーディオシステムとを組み合わせることで、互いの利点を活かす。

【解決手段】 コンピュータに含まれるCPU111の形式に対応したローカルバスB1と、カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器15、21、22、3、16、7を接続するためのPCIバスB2と、それぞれのバスB1、B2の間でデータの形式を変換するPCIバスホストコントローラ114と、を備える。フラッシュROM113にはCPU111のためのOSを格納する。CPUはメモリ112などを効率よくアクセスすることで複雑な処理を高速に行う。コンピュータとカーオーディオシステムの両方の動作をスムーズに行う。音の信号を再生しながら別のバスで別の処理を行うといったマルチタスクが容易になる。CPUの形式を変える場合もCPUの形式に対応したバスだけを変えればよい。



【特許請求の範囲】

【請求項1】 制御用のコンピュータを備えたカーオーディオシステムにおいて、

前記コンピュータはオペレーティングシステムを備え、このオペレーティングシステムは、コンピュータ上の資源を管理する手段と、ユーザインタフェースを含む入出力を制御する手段と、予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行する手段と、を備えたことを特徴とするカーオーディオシステム。

【請求項2】 制御用のコンピュータを備えたカーオーディオシステムにおいて、

前記コンピュータに含まれるCPUの形式に対応した第1のバスと、

前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するための第2のバスと、

を備えたことを特徴とするカーオーディオシステム。

【請求項3】 制御用のコンピュータを備えたカーオーディオシステムにおいて、

前記コンピュータに含まれるCPUの形式に対応したローカルバスと、

前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するためのPCIバスと、

を備えたことを特徴とするカーオーディオシステム。

【請求項4】 それぞれの前記バス間でデータの形式を変換する手段を備えたことを特徴とする請求項2又は3記載のカーオーディオシステム。

【請求項5】 前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる複数の機器をデジチェーン形式で接続するための第3のバスを備えたことを特徴とする請求項1から4のいずれか1つに記載のカーオーディオシステム。

【請求項6】 予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行するために必要な環境を実現するオペレーティングシステムと、

カーオーディオシステムと、

前記カーオーディオシステムを制御する手段と、

を備えたことを特徴とする車載用コンピュータ。

【請求項7】 カーオーディオシステムを備えた車載用コンピュータにおいて、

前記コンピュータに含まれるCPUの形式に対応した第1のバスと、

前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するための第2のバスと、

を備えたことを特徴とする車載用コンピュータ。

【請求項8】 カーオーディオシステムを備えた車載用コンピュータにおいて、

前記コンピュータに含まれるCPUの形式に対応したローカルバスと、

前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するためのPCIバスと、

を備えたことを特徴とする車載用コンピュータ。

【請求項9】 それぞれの前記バス間でデータの形式を変換する手段を備えたことを特徴とする請求項7又は8記載の車載用コンピュータ。

【請求項10】 前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる複数の機器をデジチェーン形式で接続するための第3のバスを備えたことを特徴とする請求項6から9のいずれか1つに記載の車載用コンピュータ。

【請求項11】 オペレーティングシステムを備えたコンピュータを使ってカーオーディオシステムを制御するカーオーディオシステムの制御方法において、前記オペレーティングシステムが、予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行するために必要な環境を実現するステップと、

前記プログラムが前記カーオーディオシステムを制御するステップと、

を含むことを特徴とするカーオーディオシステムの制御方法。

【請求項12】 コンピュータを使ってカーオーディオシステムを制御するカーオーディオシステムの制御方法において、

前記コンピュータに含まれるCPUが、このCPUの形式に対応した第1のバスを通してデータをやり取りするステップと、

前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器が、機器を接続するための第2のバスを通してデータをやり取りするステップと、

を含むことを特徴とするカーオーディオシステムの制御方法。

【発明の詳細な説明】

【0001】

【発明の属する技術分野】本発明は、汎用的なOSを持つ小形コンピュータとカーオーディオシステムとを組み合わせることで、互いの利点を活かす技術に関するものである。

【0002】

【従来の技術】近年、半導体の技術がめざましい進歩をとげており、いろいろな分野の電子機器が、半導体を使うことによって小型化・高性能化している。このように半導体を使うことで小型化・高性能化している電子機器の1つに、パーソナルコンピュータ（以下「パソコン」という）がある。

【0003】特に最近では、ハンドヘルド（持ち運び型）やパームトップなどと呼ばれる小型のパソコン（以下「ハンドヘルドパソコン」と総称する）も増えている。このようなハンドヘルドパソコンに適した基本ソフトウェア、すなわちオペレーティングシステム（Operating System：以下「OS」という）として、例えばWindows（マイクロソフト株式会社の登録商標）CEなどが知られている。

【0004】このような汎用的なOSは、コンピュータ

の持っているCPUの処理能力やメモリなどをきめ細かく管理することで高度な処理能力を実現したり、プログラムに依存しない統一的で使いやすいユーザインタフェースを提供したり、予め決められた形式のプログラムであれば、自由に追加変更することでコンピュータの機能を追加変更できるといった利点を持っている。

【0005】同じように、半導体を使うことで小型化・高性能化している別の電子機器としては、自動車に搭載するカーオーディオシステムやカーナビゲーションシステムが挙げられる。このうちカーオーディオシステムは、俗にカーステレオなどと呼ばれ、CDプレーヤやAMやFMのチューナーなどを、アンプやスピーカなどと組み合わせたものである。また、カーナビゲーションシステムは、方位磁石、走行距離計、GPSなどを使って車の現在位置を特定しながら、指定された目的地まで、地図を画面表示したり道案内をするシステムである。

【0006】なお、最近では、カーオーディオシステムに、カーナビゲーションシステム、ハンズフリーの携帯電話、盗難防止用の警報システムなどを組み合わせることも多いので、以下、これら車載用の電子機器を「カーオーディオシステム」と総称する。

【0007】

【発明が解決しようとする課題】上に述べたような、OSを備えたハンドヘルドパソコンと、カーオーディオシステムとは、従来では互いに全く別々のものであった。つまり、広い意味でのコンピュータを、制御用に備えたカーオーディオシステムは存在したが、この場合のコンピュータは特定の目的だけのために動く組み込みシステムと呼ばれるものである。

【0008】この組み込みシステムは、必要最小限の能力を持ったCPUを使い、スイッチ操作を受け付けたりディスク再生機構を動作させる、といったハードウェアに対する必要最小限の処理を、アセンブラなどを使った小さなプログラムで実現したものである。このため、パソコンのようにデータの加工や保存をしたり、プログラムを変更追加することで機能を変更追加するといった使い方はできない。

【0009】一方、ハンドヘルドパソコンは、自ら音楽を鳴らしたり、カーオーディオシステムを制御する機能は持っていなかった。このため、ユーザは、ハンドヘルドパソコンを事実上車内に持ち込むことはあったが、カーオーディオシステムと関係付けて使うことはなかった。

【0010】ところで、最近のカーオーディオシステムは、ラジオのチューナー、カセットテープデッキやCDプレーヤといった従来の機器だけでなく、MDプレーヤ、CDやMDのオートチェンジャ、カーナビゲーションシステム、ユーザの命令を認識する音声認識装置、ハンズフリーの携帯電話、盗難防止用の警報システムという具合に、ますます多くの機器が組み込まれるようにな

ってきている。そして、このように複雑になってゆくカーオーディオシステムを、個々の装置に設けられたスイッチだけで使いこなすことは非常に難しい。

【0011】つまり、このようにカーオーディオシステムが複雑になると、操作キーやダイヤルといった多くのスイッチが車内のいろいろな場所にあることになる。このため、どれが何の操作キーなのかを覚えるのが大変である。

【0012】すなわち、複雑になってゆくカーオーディオシステムを使いこなすためには、複雑なシステムを制御する高度な処理能力、使いやすいユーザインタフェース、制御に関する機能を追加変更できるような柔軟性を持った小形コンピュータ、とりわけ汎用的なOSを備えたハンドヘルドパソコンと同等の情報処理装置を制御に使うことが望まれる。

【0013】また、ハンドヘルドパソコンの側から考えても、現代のように自動車を使うことが多く、渋滞も多い社会では、車内でも活用の幅を広げることが望まれる。特に、カーオーディオシステムと組み合わせることで、操作キーやメモリを兼用したり、ユーザが車内で知りたい情報をコンピュータを使った合成音声で読み上げさせ、その声をカーオーディオシステムのスピーカから聞いたり、カーオーディオシステムに組み込まれた携帯電話の回線で外部のコンピュータネットワークにアクセスしたり、といった使い方ができれば、今までよりも活用の幅を広げることができる。

【0014】なお、汎用的なOSを使うような高速なCPUと、カーオーディオシステムに含まれるような機器を組み合わせるときは、両者の動作速度の違いなどから、それぞれに合った別々のバスを備えることが望まれる。さらに、いくつもの機器を組み合わせたカーオーディオシステムでは、複数の機器を、単純なすっきりした配線で容易に接続できることが望まれる。

【0015】本発明は、上に述べたような従来技術の問題点を解決するために提案されたもので、その目的は、汎用的なOSを持つ小形コンピュータとカーオーディオシステムとを組み合わせることで、互いの利点を活かすことである。また、本発明の別の目的は、複数のバスを使うことで、高速なCPUとその他の機器の両方を、無駄なくスムーズに働かせることである。また、本発明の別の目的は、いろいろな機器をデジチェーン方式で芋づる式につなげるようにすることである。

【0016】

【課題を解決するための手段】上に述べた目的を達成するため、請求項1の発明は、制御用のコンピュータを備えたカーオーディオシステムにおいて、前記コンピュータはオペレーティングシステムを備え、このオペレーティングシステムは、コンピュータ上の資源を管理する手段と、ユーザインタフェースを含む入出力を制御する手段と、予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行する手段

と、を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項6の車載用コンピュータは、予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行するために必要な環境を実現するオペレーティングシステムと、カーオーディオシステムと、前記カーオーディオシステムを制御する手段と、を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項11の発明は、請求項1の発明を方法という見方からとらえたもので、オペレーティングシステムを備えたコンピュータを使ってカーオーディオシステムを制御するカーオーディオシステムの制御方法において、前記オペレーティングシステムが、予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行するために必要な環境を実現するステップと、前記プログラムが前記カーオーディオシステムを制御するステップと、を含むことを特徴とする。請求項1、6、11の発明では、カーオーディオシステムを制御するコンピュータが汎用的なOSを備えていて、この汎用的なOSは、CPUやメモリといった資源を管理することでコンピュータの能力を最大限発揮させ、また、プログラムに依存しない統一的で使いやすいユーザインタフェースを提供し、さらに、予め決められた形式のプログラムを追加したり変更することで機能の追加や変更を容易にする。このため、複雑なカーオーディオシステムの制御が容易になる。また、車内でもいろいろなプログラムを使ったり、カーオーディオシステムの機器を利用して情報処理をすることが可能になる。

【0017】請求項2の発明は、制御用のコンピュータを備えたカーオーディオシステムにおいて、前記コンピュータに含まれるCPUの形式に対応した第1のバスと、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するための第2のバスと、を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項7の発明は、カーオーディオシステムを備えた車載用コンピュータにおいて、前記コンピュータに含まれるCPUの形式に対応した第1のバスと、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するための第2のバスと、を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項12の発明は、請求項2の発明を方法という見方からとらえたもので、コンピュータを使ってカーオーディオシステムを制御するカーオーディオシステムの制御方法において、前記コンピュータに含まれるCPUが、このCPUの形式に対応した第1のバスを通してデータをやり取りするステップと、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器が、機器を接続するための第2のバスを通してデータをやり取りするステップと、を含むことを特徴とする。請求項3の発明は、制御用のコンピュータを備えたカーオーディオシステムにおいて、前記コンピュータに含まれるCPUの形式に対応したローカルバスと、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するためのPCIバスと、を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項8の発明は、カーオーディオシステムを備えた車載用コンピュータにおいて、前記コンピュータに含まれるCPUの形式に対応したローカルバスと、前記カーオーディオシステ

ムに含まれる機器を接続するためのPCIバスと、を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項4の発明は、請求項2又は3記載のカーオーディオシステムにおいて、それぞれの前記バス間でデータの形式を変換する手段を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項9の発明は、請求項7又は8記載の車載用コンピュータにおいて、それぞれの前記バス間でデータの形式を変換する手段を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項2、3、7、8、12の発明では、コンピュータのCPUと、カーオーディオシステムの機器とが、互いの形式に対応した違ったバスを使ってデータをやり取りし、データは、2つのバスの間では必要に応じて形式を変換して受け渡される(請求項4、9)。このため、各機器の動作よりCPUの動作が速くても、CPUは各機器の動作サイクルに合わせる必要がなく、メモリなどを効率よくアクセスすることで複雑な処理を高速に行うことができる。また、CPUがやり取りするデータと、機器がやり取りするデータとが、同じバスの伝達能力を奪い合うことがないので、コンピュータとカーオーディオシステムの両方の動作をスムーズに行うことができる。また、機器を接続するためのバスを使って音の信号を再生しながら、同時に、CPUの形式に対応したバスを使って別の処理を行うといったマルチタスクが容易になる。また、CPUを別の形式のものに変える場合も、各機器と、それら機器を接続するためのバスはそのまま、CPUの形式に対応したバスだけを新しいCPUの形式に合わせて変えればよいので、CPUの変更にも容易に対応することができる。

【0018】請求項5の発明は、請求項1から4のいずれか1つに記載のカーオーディオシステムにおいて、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる複数の機器をデジタイズチェーン形式で接続するための第3のバスを備えたことを特徴とする。請求項10の発明は、請求項6から9のいずれか1つに記載の車載用コンピュータにおいて、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる複数の機器をデジタイズチェーン形式で接続するための第3のバスを備えたことを特徴とする。請求項5、10の発明では、複数の機器を串ぶる式に次々と、デジタイズチェーン形式でつないでゆくことができる。このため、機器の数が増えたり車内のあちこちに機器を分散設置するときも、スター方式のように長い配線が1箇所に集中することがなく、設置が容易になる。また、配線がすっきりわかりやすくなるので、構成を変えたり保守や修理をすることも容易になる。

【0019】

【発明の実施の形態】次に、本発明の実施の形態(以下「実施形態」という)について、図面を参照して具体的に説明する。この実施形態は、CDプレーヤなどのいろいろな機器を備えたカーオーディオシステムであるが、ハンドヘルドパソコンで使うような汎用的なOSを備えたコンピュータを備えていて、カーオーディオシステム

の制御もこのコンピュータで行うものである。なお、以下の説明で使うそれぞれの図について、それより前で説明した図と同じ部材や同じ種類の部材については同じ符号をつけ、説明は省略する。

【0020】〔1. 構成〕

〔1-1. 全体の構成〕まず、図1は、この実施形態の全体構成を示すブロック図である。この実施形態は、この図に示すように、メインユニット1の他に、カーオーディオシステムを構成する各機器として、チューナーアンプユニット2と、マイクロホン3と、GPSアンテナ4と、セキュリティコントロールユニット5と、電話ユニット6と、CD-ROMオートチェンジャ7と、電源バックアップ用の補助バッテリー9と、を備えている。

【0021】このうちメインユニット1は、制御用のコンピュータを内蔵して、このコンピュータによってシステム全体を制御する部分である。また、チューナーアンプユニット2は、AMとFMのアンテナ2aの他に、図示はしないが、ラジオチューナーと、スピーカを鳴らすためのアンプを備えた部分である。また、マイクロホン3は、音声認識による操作ができるように、ユーザの声を入力するためのものである。この音声認識の機能は、上に述べたコンピュータのプログラムによって実現される。

【0022】〔1-1-1. メインユニット〕また、メインユニット1は、コンパクトフラッシュカード13を差し込むためのソケット13Sと、付け外しできるフェイスプレートユニット15と、を備えている(図1)。コンパクトフラッシュカード13は、フラッシュメモリを使った記憶媒体で、メインユニット1に設けられたソケット13Sに差し込むことで、メインユニット1からデータを読み書きすることができる。このコンパクトフラッシュカード13は、データやプログラムなどを他のコンピュータとやり取りしたり、このカーオーディオシステムでのいろいろな設定データをバックアップしておくために使う。

【0023】また、付け外しできるフェイスプレートユニット15は、ユーザにいろいろな情報を表示する表示部と、ユーザがいろいろな操作をするための操作キーなどを設けた操作部と、を備えていて、DCP(Detachable Control Panel)とも呼ばれるものである。このフェイスプレートユニット15の表示部は、例えば横256ドット縦64ドットといった大型のカラーLCD(液晶表示装置)などである。

【0024】このフェイスプレートユニット15は、車を降りるときに取り外して持ち出せば、盗人がカーオーディオシステムを物色しても、肝心の表示部も操作部のないのを見て利用も販売もできないことをさとり、盗むことをあきらめるといって盗難防止効果がある。取り外したフェイスプレートユニット15は、ケース15aに入れて持ち歩けば、それ自体や周りのものを傷つける

ことがない。

【0025】また、このフェイスプレートユニット15は、図1には示さないが、ハンドヘルドパソコン8とIrDAなどの形式でデータをやり取りするための赤外線通信ユニットを備えている。

【0026】〔1-1-2. 他の機器〕また、GPSアンテナ4は、GPS衛星から電波を受け取るためのアンテナである。このGPSアンテナ4からの信号は、GPS受信機4aを経てメインユニット1内のGPSユニットに送られる。このGPSユニットは、図1には示さないが、受信機のある地球上の位置を電波から計算するものである。また、上に述べたコンピュータ上では、プログラムによってカーナビゲーションシステムの機能が実現され、計算結果はこのカーナビゲーションシステムの機能に渡される。

【0027】また、セキュリティコントロールユニット5は、振動や衝撃を検出するセンサ5aで、盗難やいたずらなどを検出すると、サイレン5bを鳴らすといった対応をする部分である。また、電話ユニット6は、自動車電話の機能を制御するユニットであり、電話アンテナ6aやハンドセット6bを使った通話を実現する部分である。また、CD-ROMオートチェンジャ7は、予めセットされた何枚かのCDを自動的に掛け替えることで、ユーザの選んだディスクや曲を再生するユニットである。

【0028】〔1-1-3. デイジーチェーン接続〕ここで、これらセキュリティコントロールユニット5、電話ユニット6及びCD-ROMオートチェンジャ7は、USB(Universal Serial Bus)によってメインユニット1に接続されている。このUSBは、複数の機器をデイジーチェーン形式で接続するためのシリアルバス(第3のバス)である。

【0029】この実施形態では、このようにUSBによって接続される機器は、外部とのデータのやり取りを、このUSBの形式で行うように構成されている。例えば、CD-ROMオートチェンジャ7は、アップストリーム用とダウンストリーム用のハブ(HUB)を備え、このCD-ROMオートチェンジャ7の内部では、音楽CDやCD-ROMからデジタルデータが一旦ATAPI形式(パラレル形式)で読み出されるが、読み出されたデータは、内蔵されているデータコンバータによって、シリアル形式であるUSB(Universal Serial Bus)形式に変換されたうえでUSBに送り出される。

【0030】この様な構成により、ユニット5、6、CD-ROMオートチェンジャ7の結線がシリアル結線となるので、それらユニット5、6、7をメインユニット1から離れた場所に設置する場合、その設置が容易となる。なお、図1ではユニット5、ユニット6、オートチェンジャ7の順で接続されているが、接続順は任意であり、また、必要なものみの接続としても良い。

【0031】〔1-2. メインユニットの内部構成〕次に、図2は、上に述べた各部分のうち主なものを示したブロック図であり、特に、メインユニット1内部の具体的な構成を中心に説明するものである。この図の全体は、破線で4つに区切っており、左寄りがCPUモジュール11、中央がサポートモジュール12、右上が外部ユニット30、右下がオプションユニット40になっている。このうち、CPUモジュール11とサポートモジュール12は、メインユニット1の内部に設けられている。

【0032】また、外部ユニット30とオプションユニット40は、メインユニット1に接続されているいくつかの機器をまとめて指しているものである。なお、図2では、説明の都合で、コンパクトフラッシュカード13はCPUモジュール11の下の方に、フェイスプレートユニット15は、外部ユニット30の上の方に示している。

【0033】このうちCPUモジュール11とサポートモジュール12は、カーオーディオシステム全体を制御する制御用コンピュータを構成している。このうちCPUモジュール11は、CPU111を中心とした論理的な演算処理をする部分であり、サポートモジュール12は、カーオーディオシステムに含まれる他の機器との入出力を行う部分である。

【0034】CPUモジュール11でデータの主な通り道になっているのは、CPU111を中心として形成されたローカルバスB1（第1のバス）である。一方、サポートモジュール12でデータの主な通り道になっているのは、各機器を接続するためのPCI（Peripheral Component Interconnect）バスB2（第2のバス）である。

【0035】〔1-2-1. CPUモジュールの構成〕CPUモジュール11のローカルバスB1は、CPU111の形式に合わせたもので、このローカルバスB1には、DRAM112と、フラッシュROM113と、PCIバスホストコントローラ114と、CPUホストASIC115と、PCMCIA・ASIC116が接続されている。このうちDRAM112は、CPU111がカーオーディオシステムの制御などの情報処理を行うときに、変数領域などのワークエリアを提供する部分である。

【0036】また、フラッシュROM113は、書き換え可能なROMで、ここでは、OS、BIOS、アプリケーションプログラムといった広い意味でのソフトウェアを格納している部分である。ここに格納されているOSの機能は、コンピュータ上の資源を管理すること、ユーザインタフェースを含む入出力を制御すること、予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行することなどであり、例えば、従来技術のところで述べたWindows CEをベースにしたものなどが考えられる。

【0037】また、PCIバスホストコントローラ114は、ローカルバスB1とPCIバスB2とを接続し、これら2つのバスの間でやり取りするデータの形式を変換する手段である。

【0038】また、CPUホストASIC115などの「ASIC」は、Application Specific Integrated Circuitの略で、ROMやRAM、CPUといった汎用的な集積回路に対して、特定の用途向けに作られたICやLSIを指す。具体的には、このCPUホストASIC115は、ローカルバスB1とPCIバスホストコントローラ114とのインタフェース用のASICである。つまり、このCPUホストASIC115は、PCIバスB2とCPUモジュール11との間でやり取りされるデータの窓口になる部分であり、具体的には、CPUモジュール11と外部との入出力をCPU111に代わって行うほか、PCIバスB2から送られてきたデータについて、CPU111に渡す種類のものかどうかを見分ける。

【0039】そして、CPUホストASIC115は、CPU111に渡すべきものはローカルバスB1を通じてCPU111に送るが、それ以外のもの、例えば送られてきたデータに対してCPU111が演算をするまでもなく、予め決められた反応を機械的に返せば足りるものについては、そのような反応を返す。

【0040】また、PCMCIA・ASIC116は、コンパクトフラッシュカード13が、いわゆるPCカードとしてPCMCIA（Personal Computer Memory Card International Association）の規格に基づいているのに対応したインタフェース用の部分であり、コンパクトフラッシュカード13に対するデータの読み書きを制御する部分である。

【0041】〔1-2-2. サポートモジュールにかかわる構成〕次に、サポートモジュール12のPCIバスB2は、カーオーディオシステムを構成するいろいろな機器との間でデータをやり取りするためのバスである。ここで、このPCIバスB2に接続される機器としては、外部ユニット30とオプションユニット40があり、これらはそれぞれ、いくつかの機器をまとめて指しているものである。

【0042】つまり、外部ユニット30は、図1に示したメインユニット1とは別のユニットになっているもので、この例では具体的には、メインユニット1から付け外しできるフェイスプレートユニット15、チューナーアンテナユニット2内に設けられたチューナー21とアンテナ22、マイクロホン3である。このうちフェイスプレートユニット15は、赤外線通信ユニット127を備えている。

【0043】また、オプションユニット40は、このカーオーディオシステムに組み込むかどうかをオプションとして選べるユニットであり、この例では具体的には、

GPSユニット16とCD-ROMオートチェンジャ7である。さらに、メインユニット1の内部にはCD-ROMユニット14があり、このCD-ROMユニット14もPCIバスB2に接続されている。このCD-ROMユニット14は、1枚のCDやCD-ROMからデジタルデータを読み出すためのプレーヤである。これらCD-ROMオートチェンジャ7とCD-ROMユニット14はどちらも、いわゆる音楽CDからデータを読み出す事もできるし、CD-ROMからデータを読み出す事もできるという互換性のある(コンパチブルな)ものである。

【0044】サポートモジュール12において、PCIバスB2がこれらの機器との間でデータをやり取りするためには、サポートASIC121、CODEC回路122、DSPユニット123、バッファメモリ124、パラレル/PCIドライバ125、シリアル/PCIドライバ126が使われる。

【0045】このうちサポートASIC121は、サポートモジュール12と各機器との間で、どこから来たデータをどこへ送るかというデータの交通整理をする部分である。また、CODEC回路122の「CODEC」とは「Coder/Decoder」つまりデータの符号化復号化技術の略語であり、このCODEC回路122は、例えば、与えられたデジタルデータをアナログ信号に変換するD/A変換をしたり、逆に、アナログ信号をデジタルデータに変換するA/D変換などを行う部分である。

【0046】また、DSPユニット123の「DSP」はデジタルサウンドプロセッサ、つまりデジタル形式の音の信号を専門に処理する回路を意味する略語で、このDSPユニット123は、音楽などを表わすデジタルデータを与えられると、システムに設定されている左右のバランス、ボリューム、フェイダー、サラウンド、イコライザといった項目が音の内容に反映されるように、デジタルデータを処理する部分である。

【0047】また、バッファメモリ124は、CD-ROMユニットなどの音響機器とPCIバスB2とではデータを読み書きするサイクルが違うことから、データを蓄えて少しずつ取り出すことでこの違いを埋めるためのバッファであり、SRAMなどで構成されている。

【0048】また、パラレル/PCIドライバ125は、CD-ROMユニット14から送られてくるパラレル形式のデジタルデータを、PCIバスB2のデータ形式に変換する部分である。また、シリアル/PCIドライバ126は、CD-ROMオートチェンジャ7から送られてくるシリアル形式のデジタルデータを、PCIバスB2のデータ形式に変換する部分である。

【0049】なお、赤外線通信ユニット127を含むフェイスプレートユニット15は、サポートASIC121に高速シリアル通信回路で接続され、GPSユニット16はサポートASIC121に、UART(Universal

Asynchronous Receiver-Transmitter)などの調歩同期シリアル通信回路で接続されている。また、CD-ROMユニット14はパラレル/PCIドライバ125に、ATAPI(AT Attachment Packet Interface)などのパラレル通信回路で接続されている。また、図示はしないが、赤外線通信ユニット127には、赤外線によるデータのやり取りを司るASICが設けられている。

【0050】〔2.作用〕上に述べたように構成されたこの実施形態は次のように働く。

〔2-1. 全体的な作用〕

〔2-1-1. データの入力〕この実施形態では、各機器から入力されてくるデータのうち、デジタルデータは、サポートモジュール12のサポートASIC121に直接入力される。例えば、フェイスプレートユニット15からは、どのキーが押されたかというデータが送られてくる。また、GPSユニット16からは、GPS衛星からの電波を使って計算した緯度、経度といったデジタルデータが送られてくる。また、フェイスプレートユニット15に設けられた赤外線通信ユニット127からは、ハンドヘルドパソコン8から赤外線で転送されたデジタルデータが送られてくる。

【0051】また、CD-ROMユニット14及びCD-ROMオートチェンジャ7からは、音楽CDから読み出した音のデータ、すなわちオーディオデータや、CD-ROMから読み出したデジタルデータ、すなわちCD-ROMデータが、パラレル/PCIドライバ125やシリアル/PCIドライバ126によってPCIバスB2のデータ形式に変換されたうえで、PCIバスB2経由でサポートASIC121に送られてくる。

【0052】さらに、図2には示さないが、図1に示したセキュリティコントロールユニット5からは異常の発生を知らせるデジタルデータが送られてくる。同様に、図1に示した電話ユニット6からは、通話の着信や発信元の電話番号などを知らせるデジタルデータ、すなわち文字データが送られてくるし、通話中には、相手の話し声を伝えるデジタルデータ、すなわち音声データがサポートASIC121に送られてくる。

【0053】なお、これらセキュリティコントロールユニット5や電話ユニット6は、シリアルバスB3にデジチェーン接続されているので、セキュリティコントロールユニット5や電話ユニット6から送られてくる情報は、CD-ROMオートチェンジャ7からのデジタルデータと同じように、シリアル/PCIドライバ126によってPCIバスB2のデータ形式に変換されたうえで、PCIバスB2経由で送られてくる。

【0054】一方、各機器から入力されてくるデータのうち、アナログ信号は、一旦CODEC回路122に入力され、このCODEC回路122によってデジタルデータに変換(A/D変換)されたうえで、サポートASIC121に渡される。例えば、マイクロホン3からは

ユーザの声がアナログ信号で入力され、チューナー21からは、チューニングの結果受信されたラジオの放送内容がアナログ信号で入力されてくる。

【0055】〔2-1-2. 入力されたデータの行き先〕このように集まってくる情報に対して、サポートASIC121はどの情報をどこに送るかという交通整理の役割を果たす。すなわち、サポートASIC121は、大まかには、音のデータはDSPユニット123で処理したうへCODEC回路122を通してアンプ22に送り、音以外のデータはCPUモジュール11に送る。但し、音のデータのなかでもマイクロホン3から入力されたデータは音声認識のためにCPUモジュール11に送る。

【0056】アンプ22に送られる音のデータとしては、例えば、チューナー21でチューニングされたラジオ放送の内容、CD-ROMユニット14やCD-ROMオートチェンジャ7で音楽CDから読み出された録音内容、電話ユニット6から送られてきた通話相手の話し声などが考えられる。

【0057】また、音以外のデータとしては、例えば、フェイスプレートユニット15でどの操作キーが押されたかのデータ、赤外線通信ユニット127から送られてきたファイルなどのデータ、GPSユニット16から送られてきた緯度、経度といったデジタルデータ、CD-ROMユニット14やCD-ROMオートチェンジャ7で、CD-ROMから読み出されたカーナビゲーションシステム用の地図の内容や地域ごとの情報の内容、セキュリティコントロールユニット5から送られてくる異常発生を知らせるデータ、電話ユニット6から送られてくる通話着信や発信元の電話番号などを知らせるデータなどが考えられる。

【0058】〔2-1-3. CPUモジュールでの情報処理〕CPUモジュール11では、サポートASIC121からデジタルデータが送られてくると、PCIバスホストコントローラ114が、送られてきたデータをローカルバスB1のデータ形式に変換したうへCPUホストASIC115に渡す。このCPUホストASIC115は、CPU111に代わって入出力を司り、データを渡されると、そのデータがCPU111に渡すべきものかそうでないかを、データの形式などから判断する。

【0059】つまり、CPUホストASIC115は、機械的に一定の反応を返せば足りるデータに対しては、予め決められた反応を、PCIバスホストコントローラ114を通してサポートモジュール12に返すが、それ以外のデータはCPU111に渡す。

【0060】CPU111は、フラッシュROM113に記録されているOSやプログラムのコードにしたがって、渡されたデータを処理し、この処理の際に必要なワークエリアなどの記憶領域としてはDRAM112を利

用する。例えば、マイクロホン3から入力されたユーザの声が送られてくると、CPU111は、予め用意している命令語の特徴を表わすパラメータや波形などと、受け取ったユーザの声とを比較し、一番似ている命令語をユーザが言ったものと推定し、その命令語にしたがって動作を行う。

【0061】また、コンパクトフラッシュカード13の読み書きは、CPUモジュール11において、CPU111からの依頼にしたがって、CPUホストASIC115がPCMCIA・ASIC116を制御することによって行われる。

【0062】そして、CPU111による情報処理の結果は、PCIバスホストコントローラ114によってPCIバスB2のデータ形式に変換されたうへで、サポートモジュール12に送られる。情報処理の結果としてサポートモジュール12に送られるデータとしては、サポートモジュール12の各部分や各機器に対する動作の指令などであり、サポートモジュール12では、このように送られてきたデータにしたがって入出力などの処理が行われる。

【0063】〔2-1-4. サポートモジュールでの入出力などの処理〕例えば、CDからのデータ読み出しやラジオのチューニングをさせる指令がCPUモジュール11から届くと、CD-ROMユニット14、CD-ROMオートチェンジャ7やチューナー21がそれにしたがった動作を行う。また、スピーカから出ている音の音源を現在とは別の機器に切り替える指令がCPUモジュール11から届くと、サポートASIC121はCODEC回路122に送り出すデジタルデータを、それまでの機器のものから、新しく指定された機器によるものに切り替える。

【0064】なお、デジタルデータをアンプ22に出力する場合、アンプ22はアナログ信号しか受け付けないので、CODEC回路122は、デジタルデータをアナログ信号に変換(D/A変換)したうへでアンプ22に出力する。

【0065】また、例えばユーザに対する表示データが、CPUモジュール11やその他の機器からサポートASIC121に送られてくると、サポートASIC121は、この表示データを高速シリアル通信回路を通してフェイスプレートユニット15に転送する。この場合、フェイスプレートユニット15では、転送されてきた表示データにしたがって、ユーザに対する情報が表示部に表示される。

【0066】続いて、上に述べたような各部分の動きによって、ユーザがこの実施形態のカーオーディオシステムをどのように使うことができるのかを具体的に説明する。

【0067】〔2-2. 操作と情報の表示〕この実施形態のカーオーディオシステムを操作するとき、ユーザ

は、フェイスプレートユニット15に設けられている操作キーを押してもよいし、操作の内用ごとに予め決められている語句を発話してもよい。例えば、ユーザがCDやFMチューナーを利用したいときは、CDに切り替える操作キーを押してもよいし、予め決められた語句として例えば「しーでいー」や「えふえむ」などとマイクロホン3に向かって発話すればよい。

【0068】ユーザが操作キーを押したときは、そのデータがサポートASIC121からCPUモジュール11に転送され、CPU111が新たな表示データをサポートASIC121に送り、フェイスプレートユニット15の表示部は、この表示データを使って、ラジオを操作するための画面表示やCDを操作するための画面表示などに切り替わる。

【0069】また、例えば、ユーザが「しーでいー」といった語句を発話すると、マイクロホン3からアナログ信号がCODEC回路122によってデジタルデータに変換され、このデジタルデータが、サポートASIC121からPCIBASホストコントローラとCPUホストASIC115を経てCPU111に送られ、CPU111は、このデジタルデータに基づいて、ユーザがどの言葉と言ったのかを認識し、認識結果に応じて、操作キーが押されたときと同じような対応をする。

【0070】なお、例えば、フェイスプレートユニット15の表示部をタッチパネルにしておき、コンピュータのグラフィカルユーザインタフェースとして、例えばその時点で使える機能をアイコンで表示部に表示し、ユーザが使いたい機能のアイコンを指で触るとその機能が働くようにすることもできる。さらに、例えば、そのようなアイコンによる表示と音声認識を合わせて使えば、一度にいくつかのアイコンが表示され、ユーザが「つぎ」と発話すれば画面が切り替わって次のいくつかのアイコンが表示され、ユーザが「もどる」と発話すれば画面が1つ前の状態に戻る、といった使い方も可能である。

【0071】〔2-3. ラジオを聞く場合〕上に述べたような操作で、例えばユーザが「えふえむ」と発話してラジオのFM放送を選び、CPU111がそれを認識すると、サポートASIC121はCPU111からの命令にしたがってチューナー21をFMの受信状態に切り替え、また、アンプ22に送り出すデータのソースをチューナー21からの音声のデータに切り替える。この場合、チューナー21は、前回選局した周波数を受信してもよいし、また、例えば、ユーザが「シークアップ」といった語句を発話することで、周波数を少しずつ変えながら受信状態のよい次の周波数を自動的に探す（自動導引）ようにしてもよい。

【0072】このようにラジオを聞く場合は、チューナー21から送られてくる受信内容はアナログ信号なので、このアナログ信号はCODEC回路122に入力され、デジタルデータに変換されたうえでサポートAS I

C121に送られる。サポートASIC121は、CODEC回路122から受け取ったデジタルデータをDSPユニット123に渡し、DSPユニット123は、予めシステム上で設定されているバランスやボリュームといった設定項目にしたがってこのデジタルデータを処理し、サポートASIC121に送り返す。

【0073】そして、サポートASIC121は、このように返ってきたデジタルデータをCODEC回路122に再び送り返し、CODEC回路122はこのデジタルデータを再びアナログ信号に変換して戻したうえで、今度はアンプ22に送ってスピーカから流れるようにする。

【0074】〔2-4. CDの再生〕また、ユーザは、音楽CDを聞きたいときは、CD-ROMユニット14やCD-ROMオートチェンジャ7に聞きたい音楽CDをセットし、「すたーと」となど音声などで再生を指示したり、次の曲へ飛ぶといった指示をすればよい。例えば、CD-ROMユニット14内の音楽CDを再生するときは、サポートASIC121からの指令によってCD-ROMユニット14が作動し、CD-ROMユニット14からはデジタルデータであるオーディオデータが送られてくる。

【0075】そして、パラレル/PCIDライバ125は、このオーディオデータをPCIBASB2のデータ形式に変換してサポートASIC121に送り、サポートASIC121は、PCIBASB2からオーディオデータを受け取ると、このオーディオデータを一旦DSPユニット123に渡して処理させ、処理されたオーディオデータを再びDSPユニット123から受け取ると、処理されたオーディオデータをデジタル入出力ポートからCODEC回路122に渡し、アナログ信号の形でアンプ22に出力させる。

【0076】音楽CDを再生するのがCD-ROMオートチェンジャ7のときは、シリアルバスB3から送られてくるシリアル形式のオーディオデータを、シリアル/PCIDライバ126がPCIBASB2のデータ形式に変換するが、それ以降の処理はCD-ROMユニット14の場合と同じように行われる。

【0077】なお、CD-ROMユニット14やCD-ROMオートチェンジャ7と、CODEC回路122やDSPユニット123とを相対的に比べると、前者は長い時間のサイクルでまとまった量のデータを送ってくるのに対して、後者は短い時間のサイクルでデータを少しずつ処理するため、両者の間にサイクルにずれがある。このため、サポートASIC121は、CD-ROMユニット14又はCD-ROMオートチェンジャ7がまとめて送ってきたデジタルデータをバッファメモリ124に格納し、一番古い部分から次々と取り出してはDSPユニット123に渡して処理させることで、上に述べたようなずれを埋めて再生が滑らかに行われるようにす

る。

【0078】〔2-5. CD-ROMとカーナビゲーションの利用〕また、ユーザが例えばカーナビゲーションシステムの機能を使いたいときは、例えばCD-ROMユニット14に、カーナビゲーションシステム用のデータ（アプリケーションソフト、地図等）が記録されたCD-ROMをセットしたうえで、カーナビゲーションシステムの機能を起動する。このようなカーナビゲーションシステムの機能は、例えばコンピュータのプログラムとしてCPUモジュール11のフラッシュROM113に記録しておき、CPU111にこのようなプログラムを実行させることによって実現することができる。

【0079】このようなカーナビゲーションシステムが、CD-ROMに記録された地図のデータや地域ごとのいろいろな情報などを読み出そうとするときは、例えばCD-ROMユニット14から読み出されたデジタルデータがパラレル/PCIドライバ125、PCIバスホストコントローラ114、CPUホストASIC115を経てCPU111に渡される。CPU111は、このように受け取った地図などのデータに基づいてフェイスプレートユニット15の表示部に表示するためのビットマップイメージをDRAM112上に作成したうえで、サポートモジュール12に送り出す。

【0080】また、このようにカーナビゲーションシステムを使うときは、図1に示したGPSアンテナ4でGPS衛星からの電波を受信し、図2のGPSユニット16がこの電波から緯度や経度などを計算し、このデータがCPU111に送られてくる。すると、CPU111は、これらの緯度や経度などのデータから、このカーオーディオシステムを積んだ車が現在どこを走っているのかを地図上で特定する事ができる。この結果、ユーザが入力しなくても出発地点として現在地を設定したり、現在の地点が中心となるような大まかな地図を表示したり、次の右折や左折を指示する図形を表示したりすることができる。

【0081】なお、ナビゲーション用のデータは、コンパクトフラッシュカード13（又はDRAM112）、又はフラッシュROM113に記憶しておいても良い。

【0082】また、すでに説明したような音声認識による操作の仕方は、このようにカーナビゲーションシステムの機能を使うときにも利用することができ、例えば、曲がり角ごとに右折や左折といった指示を出すカーナビゲーションシステムを使う場合、1つ前の指示や1つ先の指示をユーザが見たいときは、「つぎ」とか「もどる」といった語句を発話することで次々と表示を切り替えることもできる。

【0083】さらに、このような道案内はアンプ22を通して合成音声を出力することでユーザに知らせることもでき、このようにすれば、次にどこを曲がるか知るために表示部に視線を移す必要がなくなる。

【0084】〔2-6. 電話の利用〕また、ユーザは、電話ユニット6を使って通話するとき、次のようにコンピュータの利点とカーオーディオシステムの利点を活かすことができる。例えば、ユーザは、コンピュータのプログラムを使って、自分の知っている人の電話番号と名前をシステムの、例えばDRAM112、コンパクトフラッシュカード13に予め登録しておく。

【0085】電話が着信すると、図2には図示しないが、電話ユニット6からシリアルバスB3とシリアル/PCIドライバ126を通じて、電話が着信したことを知らせるデジタルデータと、発信元の電話番号を表わすデジタルデータがサポートASIC121に送られる。これらのデータはさらに、CPUモジュール11のCPU111に送られ、CPU111は、予め登録された電話番号の中に、今かかってくる発信元の電話番号が登録されているかどうかを検索する。

【0086】予め登録された電話番号の中に、今かかってくる発信元の電話番号があったときは、CPU111はその電話番号に対応する名前をサポートモジュール12に送り返すことで、フェイスプレートユニット15に電話をかけてきている人の名前を表示させたり、合成音声による「〇〇さんからです」といった案内を車載スピーカから流すことで、誰が電話をかけてきているのかをユーザに知らせることができる。

【0087】このような表示や案内、また呼び出し音などで電話がかかってくることを知ったユーザが、予め決められた語句を発話して電話をつなぐように指示すると、相手の声がスピーカから流れると同時に、マイクロホン3から入力されるユーザの音がCODEC回路122によってデジタルデータに変換され、サポートASIC121、シリアル/PCIドライバ126、シリアルバスB3を経て電話ユニット6に送られ、ユーザは手を使わずにいわゆるハンズフリーの状態で行うことができる。

【0088】なお、呼び出し音が一定の回数だけ鳴ったところで、例えば電話ユニット6やCPUモジュール11に用意された留守番電話機能が電話に応答する。

【0089】また、ユーザの側から発信しようとするときも、例えば、予め登録してある電話番号と名前を表示画面の上でつぎつぎに表示させ、電話を掛けたい相手が表示されたところで発信のアイコンなどを指でタッチすると、その電話番号がCPUモジュール11からデジタルデータとして電話ユニット6に転送されて自動的に電話がかかり、相手が出ればそのまま話することができる。

【0090】また、ユーザが登録した名前を発話し、CPUモジュール11がこれを認識することでその名前に対応する電話番号に自動的に発信したり、掛けたい電話番号を1桁ずつ発話して認識させたり、ユーザが「りだいやる」と発話したことを認識して電話を掛ける先を決めるようにすることもできる。

【0091】〔2-7. セキュリティコントロールユニットの利用〕また、セキュリティコントロールユニット5は、単独で使うこともできるし、上に述べた電話ユニット6と連動させて使うこともできる。例えば(図1)、ユーザは車を離れるときに、セキュリティコントロールユニット5を作動させ、送信機5cを持って降りる。車両のユーザと何ら関係のない第三者がドアノブに触れたり、鍵穴をいじったり、ドアやトランクをこじ開けようとしたり、車を無断で移動させようとする、それによる衝撃や振動をセンサ5aが感じ取り、センサ5aからの信号を受けたセキュリティコントロールユニット5は、例えばサイレン5bを大音量で鳴らす。これにより車外の環境に対し警報の効果がもたらされる。

【0092】ユーザ自身は、車に戻ってきたとき、持っている送信機5cを操作すれば、予め決められた暗号がセキュリティコントロールユニット5に送られ、セキュリティコントロールユニット5の機能は解除されるので、鍵を使ったり車を動かしてもサイレンが鳴ったりすることはない。

【0093】このようなセキュリティコントロールユニット5は、電話ユニット6と連動させて使えばさらに効果がある。つまり、センサ5aが異常を感知したとき、セキュリティコントロールユニット5は、サイレンを鳴らすだけでなく、割り込み信号を送ってCPUモジュール11及びサポートモジュール12を含むカーオーディオシステムを起動させる。このような起動を可能にするためには、カーオーディオシステムの電源と起動スイッチに接続した電子回路を用意し、割り込み信号が来ないかをこの電子回路に常に監視させておき、割り込み信号が来るとただちに電源と起動スイッチをオンにしてカーオーディオシステムを起動させればよい。

【0094】このように起動されたCPU11は、セキュリティコントロールユニット5から異常発生を知らせるデータを受け取ると、電話ユニット6に指令を送ることで電話を掛けさせる。このときに電話を掛ける先は、異常時の通報先として予め設定しておけばよく、例えば、警察、ユーザの持っている携帯電話、警備会社などとすればよい。そして、掛けた先に電話がつながると、合成音声や予め録音したアナウンスを相手に聞かせることで異常を知らせる。このようにすれば、知らせを受けた者が現場に急行できる。

【0095】〔2-8. ユーティリティプログラムの利用〕また、通常のハンドヘルドパソコンと同じように、OSやアプリケーションプログラムの機能として、アドレス帳、カレンダー、スケジュール管理、音声録音、時計、電卓、ゲームといった機能を利用すれば、車の中でもいろいろな情報処理を行うことが可能となる。さらに、これらの機能を実現するアプリケーションプログラムを削除したり、新しいものに入れ替えたり、追加することで、個々のユーザが自分にあった情報処理の環境を

整えることができる。

【0096】〔2-9. コンパクトフラッシュカードの利用〕また、この実施形態のカーオーディオシステムでは、コンパクトフラッシュカード13を使うことで、他のハンドヘルドパソコンや他のカーオーディオシステムなどとの間で情報をやり取りすることができる。

【0097】例えば、コンパクトフラッシュカード13から新しいアプリケーションプログラムやOSをフラッシュROM113に読み込ませることで、新しい機能を追加するしたりOSを更新することが容易になる。特に、汎用のOSを使うことによって、一般のソフトウェアメーカーがアプリケーションプログラムやOSの機能モジュールなどを作りやすくなるので、それを記録したコンパクトフラッシュカード13も出回って手に入れやすくなり、ユーザはこのカーオーディオシステムを、コンピュータとしても、より便利に使えるようになる。

【0098】また、他のパソコンやハンドヘルドパソコンで作ったアドレス帳のような個人的なデータを、コンパクトフラッシュカード13でこのカーオーディオシステムに持ち込めば、それまでの作業をこのカーオーディオシステム上で続けることができる。さらに、これとは逆に、このカーオーディオシステムで作ったデータをコンパクトフラッシュカード13で他のパソコンやハンドヘルドパソコンに移して作業を続けることもできる。

【0099】また、上に述べたようなユーティリティプログラムを使って自分が作ったデータを、コンパクトフラッシュカード13にバックアップコピーしておけば、カーオーディオシステムの不調や他人が使ったためにデータが消えたような場合でも、コンパクトフラッシュカード13からデータを再びメインユニット1に読み込ませて情報処理を続けることができる。

【0100】また、自分に合ったカーオーディオシステムのいろいろな設定をコンパクトフラッシュカード13にバックアップコピーしておけば、たとえ家族の他の誰かが設定を変えても、自分が車を使うときは自分の持っていたコンパクトフラッシュカード13をメインユニット1に差し込んで内容を読み込ませることで、自分にとって使い勝手のよい元通りの設定でカーオーディオシステムを使うことができる。

【0101】〔2-10. ハンドヘルドパソコンとの通信〕さらに、この実施形態では、赤外線通信ユニット127を使うことで、ハンドヘルドパソコン8との間で、コンパクトフラッシュカード13を抜き差ししたりケーブルなどで接続するといった手間をかけずに、容易にデータをやり取りすることができる。このため、ハンドヘルドパソコン8内に記録しておいたファイルなどを使ってOSやアプリケーションプログラムを更新したり、カーオーディオシステム上で作った個人的なデータをハンドヘルドパソコン8に直接移し替えたり、そのような個人的なデータのバックアップを、ハンドヘルドパソコン

8の持っている比較的大きな記憶領域に保存しておいたり、カーオーディオシステムの設定などをハンドヘルドパソコン8を通して他の車のカーオーディオシステムに移し替えたり、といったいろいろな使い方も可能になる。

【0102】〔3. 効果〕以上のように、この実施形態では、カーオーディオシステムを制御するコンピュータが汎用的なOSを備えていて、この汎用的なOSは、CPUやメモリといった資源を管理することでコンピュータの能力を最大限發揮させ、また、プログラムに依存しない統一的で使いやすいユーザインタフェースを提供し、さらに、予め決められた形式のプログラムを追加したり変更することで機能の追加や変更も容易にする。このため、複雑なカーオーディオシステムの制御が容易になる。

【0103】また、OSの規格にあったプログラムであれば、車内でもいろいろなプログラムを使うことが可能になり、カーオーディオシステムの表示部や操作キー、スピーカといった機器を利用して情報処理をすることも可能になる。もちろん、この場合でも、ハンドヘルドパソコン並の大きなメモリを使ってユーザが自分の個人的な情報を保存したり、パソコンのように情報を編集することができる。

【0104】また、この実施形態では、コンピュータのCPUと、カーオーディオシステムの機器とが、互いの形式に対応した違ったバスを使ってデータをやり取りし、データは、2つのバスの間では必要に応じて形式を変換して受け渡される。このため、各機器の動作よりCPUの動作が速くても、CPUは各機器の動作サイクルに合わせる必要がなく、メモリなどを効率よくアクセスすることで複雑な処理を高速に行うことができる。また、CPUがやり取りするデータと、機器がやり取りするデータとが、同じバスの伝達能力を奪い合うことがないので、コンピュータとカーオーディオシステムの両方がそれぞれの動作をスムーズに行うことができる。

【0105】また、機器を接続するためのバスを使って音の信号を再生しながら、同時に、CPUの形式に対応したバスを使って別の処理を行うといったマルチタスクが容易になる。また、CPUを別の形式のものに変える場合も、各機器と、それら機器を接続するためのバスはそのまま、CPUの形式に対応したバスだけを新しいCPUの形式に合わせて変えればよいので、CPUの変更にも容易に対応することができる。

【0106】特に、この実施形態では、複数の機器を芋づる式に次々と、デジチェーン形式でつないでゆくことができる。このため、機器の数が増えたり車内のあちこちに機器を分散設置するときも、スター方式のように長い配線が1箇所に集中することがなく設置が容易になる。また、配線がすっきりわかりやすくなるので、カーオーディオシステムの構成を変えたり保守や修理をす

ることも容易になる。

【0107】加えて、この実施形態では、オーディオデータであるか文字データであるかといったデータの種類の関係なく、どのようなデータもUSBなどを通してデジタルデータとしてやり取りされ、処理されるので、環境変化やノイズの影響を受けにくく、オーディオ特性も安定する。

【0108】〔4. 他の実施の形態〕なお、本発明は上に述べた実施形態に限定されるものではなく、次に例示するような他の実施の形態も含むものである。例えば、上に述べた実施形態では、コンピュータのOSの具体例としてWindows CEを挙げたが、これは単なる例示に過ぎないので、他の種類の既にあるOSを使ったり、今後新しく登場するOSを使うことも本発明の範囲に含まれる。

【0109】また、上に述べた実施形態では車載用のカーオーディオシステムを制御する例を示したが、本発明は、家庭内で据え置き型ステレオなどの電気製品を制御するのに使うことも可能で、この場合も、新しいアプリケーションソフトウェアを使ったり、全体が小型で済むといった本発明の利点を活かすことができる。

【0110】また、上に述べた実施形態では、いろいろなバスや通信回路について具体的な規格を挙げたが、そのような規格は例示に過ぎず、同じような使い方ができるほかの規格に置き換えることもできる。また、例えば、第1のバスや第2のバスは、CPUモジュールとサポートモジュールをワンチップ化することで内部バスにすることもできる。

【0111】

【発明の効果】以上のように、本発明によれば、汎用的なOSを持つコンピュータとカーオーディオシステムを組み合わせることで互いの利点を活かし、複雑なカーオーディオシステムも容易に制御し、コンピュータの使い方も広げることができる。

【図面の簡単な説明】

【図1】この発明の実施形態の全体構成を示すブロック図。

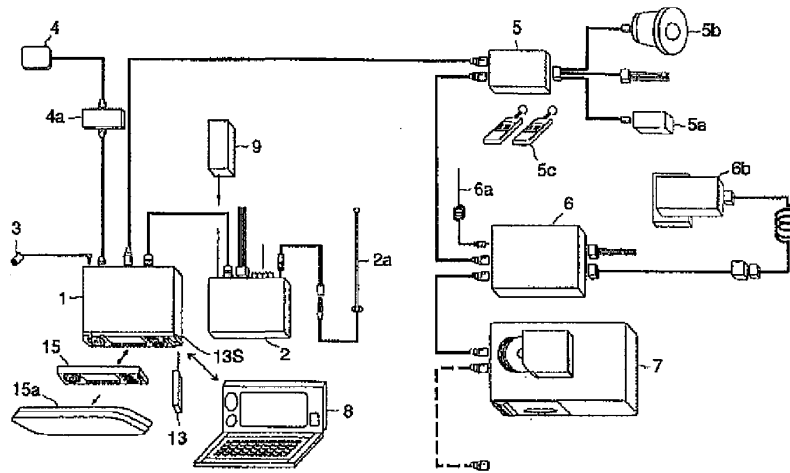
【図2】この発明の実施形態について、メインユニットの内部構成を中心に示したブロック図。

【符号の説明】

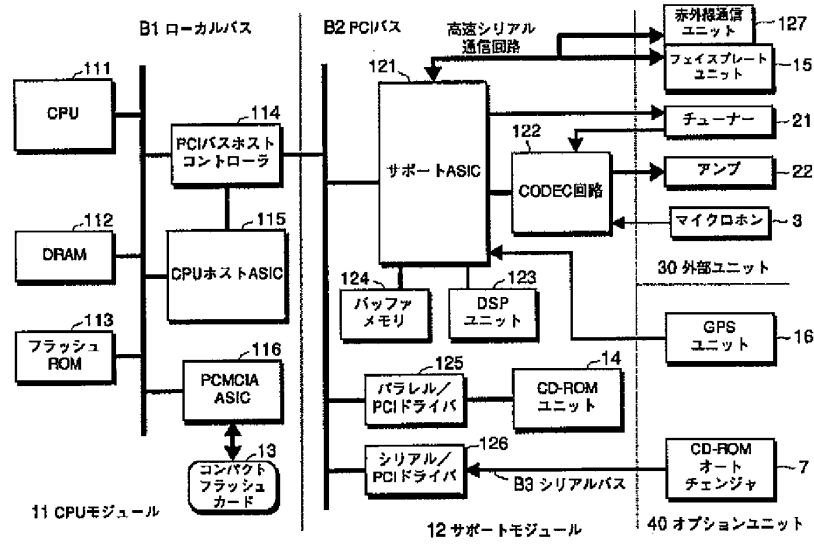
- 1…メインユニット1
- 11…CPUモジュール
- 111…CPU
- 112…DRAM
- 113…フラッシュROM
- 114…PCIバスホストコントローラ
- 115…CPUホストASIC
- 116…PCMCIA・ASIC
- 12…サポートモジュール
- 121…サポートASIC

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 122...CODEC回路 | 3...マイクロホン |
| 123...DSPユニット | 4...GPSアンテナ |
| 124...バッファメモリ | 4a...受信機 |
| 125...パラレル/PCIドライバ | 5...セキュリティコントロールユニット |
| 126...シリアル/PCIドライバ | 5a...センサ |
| 127...赤外線通信ユニット | 5b...サイレン |
| 13...コンパクトフラッシュカード | 5c...送信機 |
| 13S...ソケット | 6...電話ユニット |
| 14...CD-ROMユニット | 6a...アンテナ |
| 15...フェイスプレートユニット | 6b...ハンドセット |
| 15a...ケース | 7...CD-ROMオートチェンジャ |
| 16...GPSユニット | 8...ハンドヘルドパソコン |
| 2...チューナーアンプユニット | 9...補助バッテリー |
| 2a...アンテナ | 30...外部ユニット |
| 21...チューナー | 40...オプションユニット |
| 22...アンプ | |

【図1】



【図2】



フロントページの続き

(72)発明者 浜島 貞文
 東京都文京区白山5丁目35番2号 クラリ
 オン株式会社内

PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN

(11)Publication number : 11-273321
 (43)Date of publication of application : 08.10.1999

(51)Int.Cl. G11B 31/00
 B60R 11/02

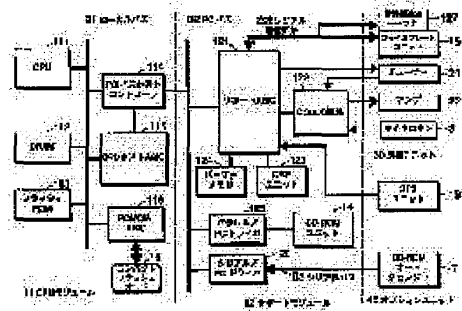
(21)Application number : 10-076115 (71)Applicant : CLARION CO LTD
 (22)Date of filing : 24.03.1998 (72)Inventor : IDO KAZUHIRO
 NAKABACHI YOSHIKI
 UEHARA NAGATOSHI
 HAMASHIMA SADAFUMI

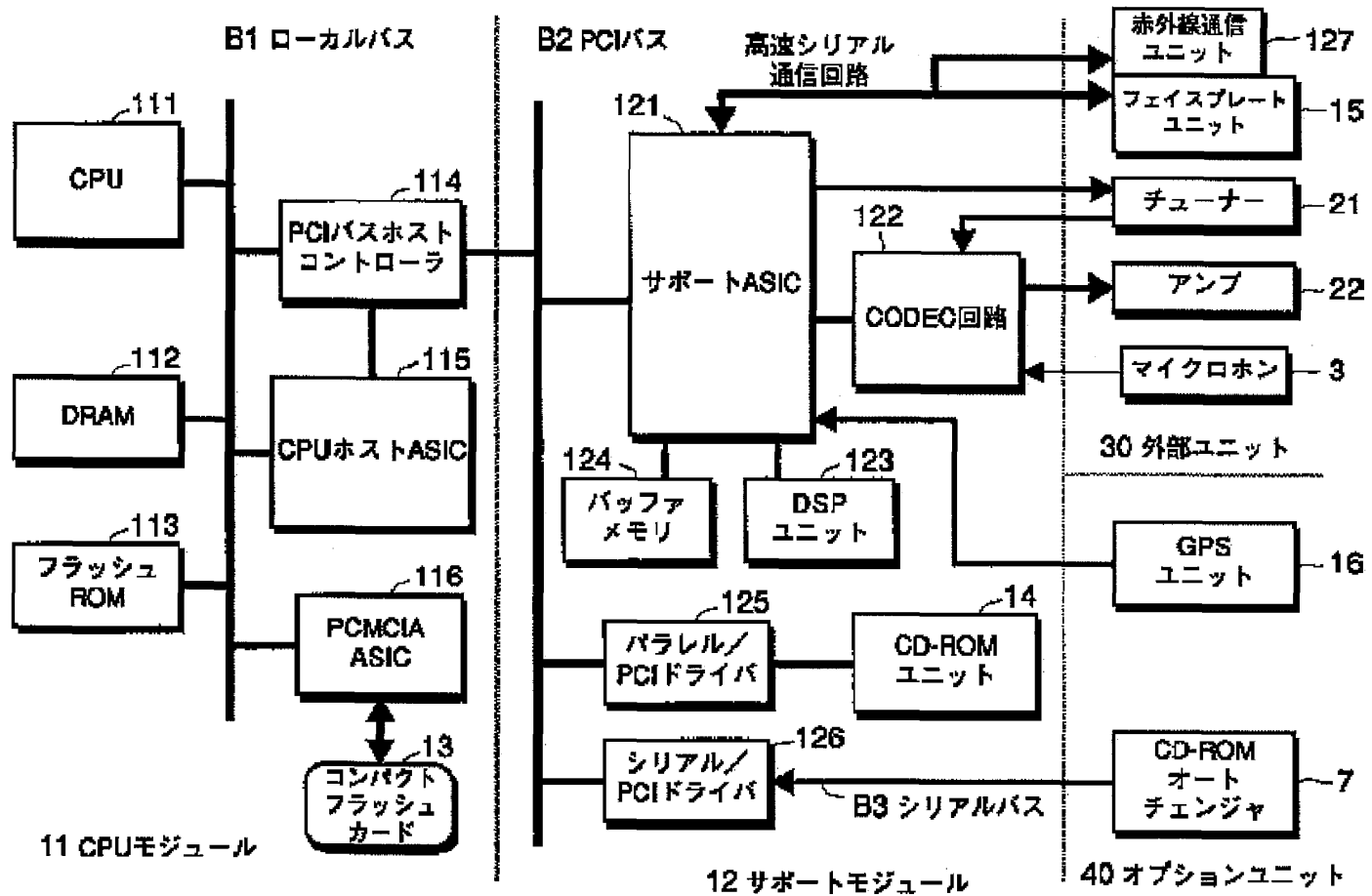
(54) CAR AUDIO SYSTEM, VEHICLE-MOUNTED COMPUTER, AND METHOD FOR CONTROLLING CAR AUDIO SYSTEM

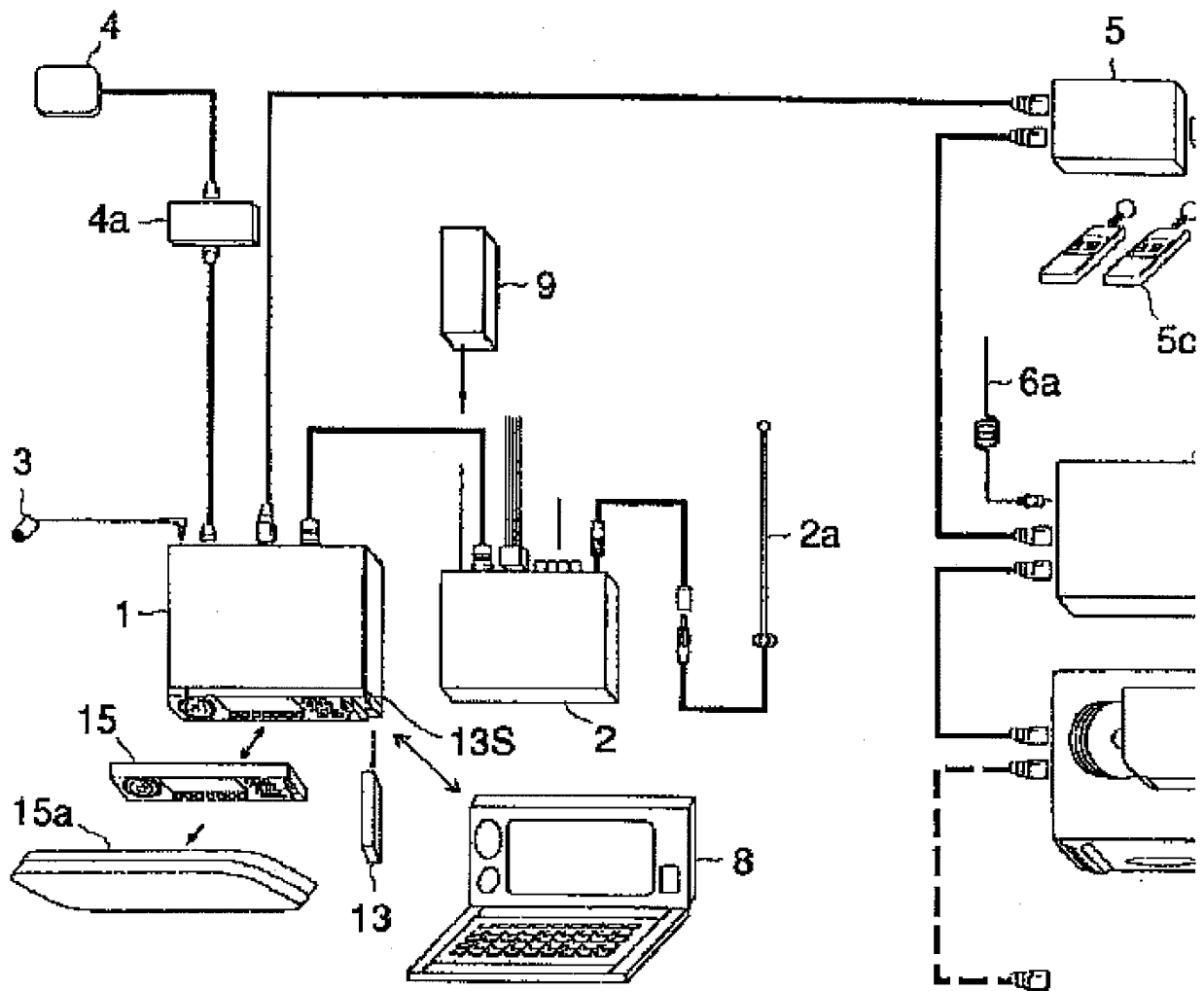
(57)Abstract:

PROBLEM TO BE SOLVED: To utilize both advantages by combining a compact computer with a universal OS and a car audio system.

SOLUTION: A local bus B1 corresponding to the form of a CPU 11 included in a computer, a PCI bus B2 for connecting equipment 15, 21, 22, 3, 16, and 7 included in a car audio system, and a PCI bus host controller 114 for converting data form between the buses B1 and B2 are provided. An OS for the CPU 111 is stored in a flash ROM 113. The CPU 111 can speedily perform complex processing by efficiently accessing a memory 112 or the like. The computer and the car audio system can be operated smoothly. A multi-task can be facilitated, where another processing can be made with another path while an audio signal is being reproduced. Only the path corresponding to the form of the CPU 111 may be changed when the form of the CPU 111 is to be changed.







* NOTICES *

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.*** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

CLAIMS

[Claim(s)]

[Claim 1]A car audio system comprising provided with a computer for control:

A means by which said computer is provided with an operating system and this operating system manages resources on a computer.

A means to execute a program of form beforehand decided to be a means to control input and output containing a user interface.

[Claim 2]A car audio system comprising provided with a computer for control:

The 1st bus corresponding to form of CPU contained in said computer.

The 2nd bus for connecting apparatus contained in said car audio system.

[Claim 3]A car audio system comprising provided with a computer for control:

A local bus corresponding to form of CPU contained in said computer.

A PCI bus for connecting apparatus contained in said car audio system.

[Claim 4]The car audio system according to claim 2 or 3 provided with a means to change form of data between said each bus.

[Claim 5]A car audio system of any one statement of four from claim 1 provided with the 3rd bus for connecting two or more apparatus contained in said car audio system in daisy chain form.

[Claim 6]A computer for mount characterized by comprising the following.

An operating system which realizes environment required in order to execute a program of form decided beforehand.

A means to control a car audio system and said car audio system.

[Claim 7]A computer for mount provided with a car audio system characterized by comprising the following.

The 1st bus corresponding to form of CPU contained in said computer.

The 2nd bus for connecting apparatus contained in said car audio system.

[Claim 8]A computer for mount provided with a car audio system characterized by comprising the following.

A local bus corresponding to form of CPU contained in said computer.

A PCI bus for connecting apparatus contained in said car audio system.

[Claim 9]The computer for mount according to claim 7 or 8 provided with a means to change form of data between said each bus.

[Claim 10]A computer for mount of any one statement of nine from claim 6 provided with the 3rd bus for connecting two or more apparatus contained in said car audio system in daisy chain form.

[Claim 11]A control method of a car audio system which controls a car audio system using a computer provided with an operating system characterized by comprising the following.

A step which realizes environment which needs said operating system in order to execute a program of form decided beforehand.

A step by which said program controls said car audio system.

[Claim 12]A control method of a car audio system which controls a car audio system using a computer characterized by comprising the following.

A step with which CPU contained in said computer exchanges data through the 1st bus corresponding to form of this CPU.

A step which exchanges data through the 2nd bus for apparatus contained in said car audio system to connect apparatus.

[Translation done.]

*** NOTICES ***

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.*** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

[Detailed Description of the Invention]

[0001]

[Field of the Invention]This invention is combining a small computer with general-purpose OS, and a car audio system, and relates to the art of harnessing a mutual advantage.

[0002]

[Description of the Prior Art]In recent years, progress with remarkable art of a semiconductor is accomplished and the electronic equipment of various fields has become a miniaturization and highly efficient by using a semiconductor. Thus, one of the electronic equipment made a miniaturization and highly efficient by using a semiconductor has a personal computer (henceforth a "personal computer").

[0003]The small personal computers (it names generically the following "hand-held PC") called [especially] a handheld computer (carried type), a palm top, etc. these days are also increasing in number. Windows(registered trademark of Microsoft Corp.) CE etc. are known, for example as base software (it is called below Operating System: "OS") suitable for such a hand-held PC, i.e., an operating system.

[0004]Such a general-purpose OS realizes advanced throughput by managing finely throughput, a memory, etc. of CPU which the computer has, or, If it is a program of the form which provided the user interface independent of a program which it is unific and is easy to use, or was decided beforehand, it has the advantage that the current update of the function of a computer can be carried out by carrying out a current update freely.

[0005]As another electronic equipment which similarly has been made a miniaturization and highly efficient by using a semiconductor, the car audio system and car-navigation system which are carried in a car are mentioned. Among these, a car audio system is commonly called a car stereo etc., and combines the tuner of a CD player, AM, or FM, etc. with amplifier, a loudspeaker, etc. A car-navigation system is a shown system to which a screen display of the

map is carried out to the specified destination, pinpointing the current position of a car using an azimuth magnet, an odometer, GPS, etc.

[0006]These days, since a car-navigation system, a handsfree cellular phone, an anti-theft alarm system, etc. are combined with a car audio system in many cases, the electronic equipment for these mount is hereafter named a "car audio system" generically.

[0007]

[Problem(s) to be Solved by the Invention]The hand-held PC provided with OS which was described above, and the car audio system were mutual completely separate in the former. That is, although the car audio system which prepared the computer in the large meaning for control existed, the computer in this case is called the embedded system which works only for the specific purpose.

[0008]CPU with necessary minimum capability is used for this embedded system, and it realizes necessary minimum processing to the hardware of receiving an operation switch or operating a disk reproduction mechanism, by the small program using an assembler etc. For this reason, usage of carrying out the change addition of the function by carrying out processing and preservation of data like a personal computer, or carrying out the change addition of the program cannot be done.

[0009]On the other hand, it did not have a function which a hand-held PC sounds music itself, or controls a car audio system. For this reason, although the user might carry the hand-held PC into in the car as a matter of fact, he did not use, having connected with the car audio system.

[0010]By the way, the latest car audio system, Not only in conventional apparatus called the tuner, cassette tape deck, and CD player of radio, Many apparatus is increasingly built into the condition of an MD player, CD, the autochanger of MD, a car-navigation system, the voice recognition equipment that recognizes a user's command, a handsfree cellular phone, and an anti-theft alarm system. And it is dramatically difficult to master the car audio system which becomes complicated in this way only with the switch in which it was provided by each device.

[0011]That is, when a car audio system becomes complicated in this way, many switches, such as an operation key and a dial, will be in various places in the car. For this reason, it is serious to memorize which is what operation key.

[0012]Namely, in order to master the car audio system which becomes complicated. To use for control an information processor equivalent to the hand-held PC provided with the small computer with the pliability which can carry out the current update of the function about the advanced throughput which controls a complicated system, the user interface, and control which are easy to use, and especially general-purpose OS is desired.

[0013]Even if it thinks from the hand-held PC side, a car is used like the present age in many cases, and in the car is wanted to expand the width of practical use in society also with much

traffic congestion. By combining with a car audio system especially, make an operation key and a memory serve a double purpose, or, The information which a user wants to know in the car is made to be read out by the synthesized speech using a computer, If usage of hearing the voice from the loudspeaker of a car audio system, or accessing an external computer network by the circuit of the cellular phone built into the car audio system can be done, the width of practical use can be expanded rather than former.

[0014]When combining high-speed CPU which uses general-purpose OS, and apparatus which is contained in a car audio system, to have a separate bus suitable for each from the difference in both working speed, etc. is desired. In the car audio system which combined a lot of apparatus, two or more apparatus is wanted to be easily connectable with simple refreshed wiring.

[0015]Proposed in order that this invention might solve the problem of conventional technology which was described above, it is combining a small computer with general-purpose OS, and a car audio system, and the purpose is to harness a mutual advantage. Another purpose of this invention is to use two or more buses, and is using both high-speed apparatus of CPU and others smoothly without futility. Another purpose of this invention is to connect various apparatus one after another with a daisy chain mode.

[0016]

[Means for Solving the Problem]In order to attain the purpose described above, an invention of claim 1 equips a car audio system provided with a computer for control with the following. A means by which said computer is provided with an operating system and this operating system manages resources on a computer.

A means to control input and output containing a user interface.

A means to execute a program of form decided beforehand.

A computer for mount of claim 6 is provided with the following.

An operating system which realizes environment required in order to execute a program of form decided beforehand.

Car audio system.

A means to control said car audio system.

An invention of claim 11 is what caught an invention of claim 1 from a view of a method, In a control method of a car audio system which controls a car audio system using a computer provided with an operating system, A step which realizes environment which needs said operating system in order to execute a program of form decided beforehand, and a step by which said program controls said car audio system are included. A computer which controls a car audio system by invention of claims 1, 6, and 11 is provided with general-purpose OS, and it this general-purpose OS, A user interface which carries out the maximum exertion of the capability of a computer by managing resources, such as CPU and a memory, and is not

dependent on a program and which it is unified and is easy to use is provided, and an addition and change of a function are made easy by adding a program of form decided further beforehand, or changing. For this reason, control of a complicated car audio system becomes easy. It becomes possible for in the car to use various programs, or to process information using apparatus of a car audio system.

[0017]An invention of claim 2 was provided with the 1st bus corresponding to form of CPU contained in said computer, and the 2nd bus for connecting apparatus contained in said car audio system in a car audio system provided with a computer for control. An invention of claim 7 was provided with the 1st bus corresponding to form of CPU contained in said computer, and the 2nd bus for connecting apparatus contained in said car audio system in a computer for mount provided with a car audio system. An invention of claim 12 is what caught an invention of claim 2 from a view of a method, In a control method of a car audio system which controls a car audio system using a computer, A step with which CPU contained in said computer exchanges data through the 1st bus corresponding to form of this CPU, Apparatus contained in said car audio system contains a step which exchanges data through the 2nd bus for connecting apparatus. An invention of claim 3 was provided with a PCI bus for connecting apparatus contained in said car audio system with a local bus corresponding to form of CPU contained in said computer in a car audio system provided with a computer for control. An invention of claim 8 was provided with a PCI bus for connecting apparatus contained in said car audio system with a local bus corresponding to form of CPU contained in said computer in a computer for mount provided with a car audio system. An invention of claim 4 was provided with a means to change form of data between said each bus, in the car audio system according to claim 2 or 3. An invention of claim 9 was provided with a means to change form of data between said each bus, in the computer for mount according to claim 7 or 8. In an invention of claims 2, 3, 7, 8, and 12, data is exchanged using a bus CPU of a computer and apparatus of a car audio system made the mistake in corresponding to a mutual form, and between two buses, if needed, data changes form, wins popularity and is passed (claims 4 and 9). For this reason, even if operation of CPU is quicker than operation of each apparatus, it is not necessary to double CPU with a motion cycle of each apparatus, and complicated processing can be performed at high speed by accessing a memory etc. efficiently. Since data which CPU exchanges, and data which apparatus exchanges do not scramble for communicative competence of the same bus, it can operate smoothly in both a computer and a car audio system. Multitasking of performing another processing using a bus corresponding to form of CPU becomes easy simultaneously, reproducing a signal of a sound using a bus for connecting apparatus. Also when changing CPU into a thing of another form, a bus for connecting these apparatus with each apparatus remains as it is, and since what is necessary is to change only a bus corresponding to form of CPU according to form of new CPU, it can

respond also to change of CPU easily.

[0018]An invention of claim 5 was provided with the 3rd bus for connecting two or more apparatus contained in said car audio system in a car audio system of any one statement of four from claim 1 in daisy chain form. An invention of claim 10 was provided with the 3rd bus for connecting two or more apparatus contained in said car audio system in a computer for mount of any one statement of nine from claim 6 in daisy chain form. In an invention of claims 5 and 10, two or more apparatus can be connected in daisy chain form one after another, and it can die. For this reason, also when the number of apparatus increases or distributed installation of the apparatus is carried out here and there [in the car], long wiring is not concentrated in one place like a star method, and installation becomes easy. Since wiring becomes intelligible shapely, it also becomes easy to change composition or to carry out maintenance and repair.

[0019]

[Embodiment of the Invention]Next, an embodiment of the invention (henceforth a "embodiment") is concretely described with reference to drawings. Although this embodiment is the car audio system provided with various apparatus, such as a CD player, it is provided with the computer provided with general-purpose OS which is used for a hand-held PC, and also performs control of a car audio system by this computer. The same numerals are attached about the member same about each figure used by the following explanation as the figure explained before it, or the same kind of member, and explanation is omitted.

[0020][1. composition]

[Composition of whole 1-1.] First, drawing 1 is a block diagram showing the entire configuration of this embodiment. As shown in this figure, this embodiment as each apparatus which constitutes a car audio system other than the main unit 1, It has the tuner amplifier unit 2, the microphone 3, the GPS antenna 4, the security control unit 5, the telephone unit 6, the CD-ROM autochanger 7, and the auxiliary battery 9 for power supply backup.

[0021]Among these, the main unit 1 is a portion which builds in the computer for control and controls the whole system by this computer. Although the tuner amplifier unit 2 does not carry out the graphic display other than the antenna 2a of AM and FM, it is the portion provided with a radio tuner and the amplifier for sounding a loudspeaker. The microphone 3 is for inputting a user's voice so that operation by speech recognition can be performed. The function of this speech recognition is realized by the program of the computer described above.

[0022][1-1-1. main unit] The main unit 1 is provided with the socket 13S for inserting CompactFlash card 13, and the face plate unit 15 removed [attach and] and made (drawing 1). CompactFlash card 13 is a storage using a flash memory, and data can be written from the main unit 1 by inserting in the socket 13S formed in the main unit 1. This CompactFlash card 13 is used in order to exchange data, a program, etc. with other computers or to back up

various information sets in this car audio system.

[0023]The face plate unit 15 attached, removed and made, It has the indicator which displays various information on a user, and the final controlling element which provided the operation key for a user to do various operations etc., and is referred to also as DCP (Detachable Control Panel). The indicator of this face plate unit 15 is large-sized color LCD (liquid crystal display) of 64 dots by 256 dots, etc., for example.

[0024]if it removes and carries out when getting off a car, even if a thief looks for a car audio system, neither use nor resale can do this face plate unit 15, also seeing an important indicator not have a final controlling element -- there are ** and a theft preventive effect of giving up stealing. If the removed face plate unit 15 is put into the case 15a and it carries around, it will damage neither itself nor a surrounding thing.

[0025]Although this face plate unit 15 is not shown in drawing 1, it is provided with the infrared-ray-communication unit for exchanging data in the form of the hand-held PC 8, IrDA, etc.

[0026][Apparatus] besides 1-1-2. The GPS antenna 4 is an antenna for receiving an electric wave from a GPS Satellite. The signal from this GPS antenna 4 is sent to the GPS unit in the main unit 1 through GPS receiver 4a. Although this GPS unit is not shown in drawing 1, it calculates the position on the earth with a receiver from an electric wave. On the computer described above, by a program, the function of a car-navigation system is realized and a calculation result is passed to the function of this car-navigation system.

[0027]The security control unit 5 is the sensor 5a which detects vibration and a shock, and when a theft, a mischief, etc. are detected, it is a portion which carries out correspondence of sounding the siren 5b. The telephone unit 6 is a unit which controls the function of a car telephone, and is a portion which realizes the telephone call using the telephone antenna 6a or the hand set 6b. The CD-ROM autochanger 7 is hanging automatically some CDs set beforehand again, and is a unit which plays the disk which the user chose, and music.

[0028][1-1-3. daisy chain connection] Here, these security control unit 5, the telephone unit 6, and the CD-ROM autochanger 7 are connected to the main unit 1 by USB (Universal Serial Bus). This USB is a serial bus (the 3rd bus) for connecting two or more apparatus in daisy chain form.

[0029]The apparatus connected by USB in this way comprises this embodiment so that data with the exterior may be exchanged in the form of this USB. For example, the CD-ROM autochanger 7, Although it has the hub (HUB) the object for upstreams, and for downstreams and digital data is once read from an audio CD or CD-ROM according to ATAPI form (parallel form) inside this CD-ROM autochanger 7, After the read data is changed into the USB (Universal Serial Bus) form which is serial form by the data converter built in, it is sent out to USB.

[0030]The installation becomes easy when installing these units 5, 6, and 7 in the place distant

from the main unit 1, since connection of the units 5 and 6 and the CD-ROM autochanger 7 turns into serial connection with such composition. Although connected in order of the unit 5, the unit 6, and the autochanger 7 in drawing 1, connection order is good also as connection of only arbitrary and required things.

[0031][The internal configuration of a 1-2. main unit] Next, drawing 2 is a block diagram showing the main things among each portion described above, and is especially explained focusing on the concrete composition of main unit 1 inside. This whole figure is divided into four with the dashed line, in the left, CPU module 11 and a center become the support module 12, the upper right becomes the external unit 30, and the lower right has become the option unit 40. Among these, CPU module 11 and the support module 12 are formed in the inside of the main unit 1.

[0032]The external unit 30 and the option unit 40 have pointed out collectively the apparatus of every some connected to the main unit 1. On account of explanation, CompactFlash card 13 is shown in the direction under CPU module 11, and drawing 2 shows the face plate unit 15 to the direction on the external unit 30.

[0033]Among these, CPU module 11 and the support module 12 constitute the computer for control which controls the whole car audio system. Among these, CPU module 11 is a portion which carries out logical data processing centering on CPU111, and the support module 12 is a portion which performs input and output with other apparatus contained in a car audio system.

[0034]The local bus B1 (the 1st bus) formed considering CPU111 as a center is a way with CPU module 11 as [main] data. PCI (Peripheral Component Interconnect) for that it is a way by the support module 12 as [main] data to connect each apparatus on the other hand It is bus B-2 (the 2nd bus).

[0035][Composition of a 1-2-1. CPU module] The local bus B1 of CPU module 11, It is what was doubled with the form of CPU111, and DRAM112, the flash ROM 113, the PCI bus host controller 114, CPU host ASIC115, and PCMCIA-ASIC116 are connected to this local bus B1. Among these, DRAM112 is a portion which provides work areas, such as a variable area, when CPU111 processes information in control of a car audio system, etc.

[0036]The flash ROM 113 is rewritable ROM and is a portion which stores the software in large meanings, such as OS, BIOS, and an application program, here. The function of OS stored here manages the resources on a computer, It is controlling the input and output containing a user interface, executing the program of the form decided beforehand, etc., for example, what used as the base Windows CE which conventional technology described by the way can be considered.

[0037]The PCI bus host controller 114 is a means to change the form of the data which connects the local bus B1 and PCI bus B-2, and is exchanged between these two buses.

[0038]"ASIC", such as CPU host ASIC115, is the abbreviation for Application Specific Integrated Circuit, and points out IC and LSI which were made for specific uses to general-purpose integrated circuits, such as ROM, RAM, and CPU. Specifically, this CPU host ASIC115 is ASIC for the interface of the local bus B1 and the PCI bus host controller 114. This CPU host ASIC115 [that is,], Between PCI bus B-2 and CPU module 11, are a portion which becomes a window of the data exchanged and specifically, Input and output with CPU module 11 and the exterior are performed instead of CPU111, and also it is recognized whether it is a thing of the kind passed to CPU111 about the data sent from PCI bus B-2.

[0039]And although what should pass CPU host ASIC115 to CPU111 is sent to CPU111 through the local bus B1, CPU111 does not need to calculate to the other thing, for example, the sent data, and such a reaction is returned about that for which it is sufficient if the reaction for which it opted beforehand is returned mechanically.

[0040]PCMCIA-ASIC116 CompactFlash card 13, It is a portion for an interface corresponding to being based on the standard of PCMCIA (Personal Computer Memory Card International Association) as what is called a PC card, It is a portion which controls the reading and writing of data to CompactFlash card 13.

[0041][Composition in connection with a 1-2-2. support module] Next, PCI bus B-2 of the support module 12 is a bus for exchanging data among various apparatus which constitutes a car audio system. Here, as apparatus connected to this PCI bus B-2, there are the external unit 30 and the option unit 40, and these have pointed out some apparatus collectively, respectively.

[0042]That is, the external unit 30 is unit with the another main unit 1 shown in drawing 1, and in this example specifically, It is the tuner 21, the amplifier 22, and the microphone 3 which were formed in the face plate unit 15 attached, removed and made from the main unit 1, and the tuner amplifier unit 2. Among these, the face plate unit 15 is provided with the infrared-ray-communication unit 127.

[0043]The option unit 40 is a unit from which it can choose whether to include in this car audio system as an option, and, specifically, are GPS unit 16 and the CD-ROM autochanger 7 in this example. There is the CD-ROM unit 14 in the inside of the main unit 1, and this CD-ROM unit 14 is also connected to PCI bus B-2. This CD-ROM unit 14 is a player for reading digital data from one CD or CD-ROM. These CD-ROM autochanger 7 and the CD-ROM unit 14 have the compatibility that data can also be read from what is called an audio CD, and both can also read data from CD-ROM (it is compatible).

[0044]In the support module 12, in order for PCI bus B-2 to exchange data among these apparatus, Support ASIC121, CODEC circuit 122, DSP unit 123, the buffer memory 124, the parallel / PCI driver 125, and the serial / PCI driver 126 are used.

[0045]Among these, support ASIC121 is a portion which controls traffic in the data where to

send the data which came from where between the support module 12 and each apparatus. "CODEC" of CODEC circuit 122 is an abbreviation of "Coder/Decoder", i.e., the coding decryption art of data, and this CODEC circuit 122, For example, it is a portion which performs the A/D conversion etc. which carry out D/A conversion which changes the given digital data into an analog signal, or change an analog signal into digital data conversely.

[0046]"DSP" of DSP unit 123 is an abbreviation to mean a digital sound processor, i.e., the circuit which processes the signal of the sound of digital format specially, and this DSP unit 123, When the digital data showing music etc. can be given, as items, such as balance of the right and left set as the system, volume, Feder, surround, and an equalizer, are reflected in the contents of the sound, it is a portion which processes digital data.

[0047]By audio equipment and PCI bus B-2s, such as a CD-ROM unit, since the buffer memory 124 differs in the cycle which write data, it is a buffer for this difference to be filled up with storing data and taking it out little by little, and comprises SRAM etc.

[0048]Parallel / PCI driver 125 is portions which change into the data format of PCI bus B-2 the digital data of parallel form sent from the CD-ROM unit 14. A serial / PCI driver 126 is portions which change into the data format of PCI bus B-2 the digital data of serial form sent from the CD-ROM autochanger 7.

[0049]The face plate unit 15 containing the infrared-ray-communication unit 127, It is connected to support ASIC121 in a high-speed serial communication circuit, and GPS unit 16 is connected to support ASIC121 in start-stop serial communication circuits, such as UART (UniversalAsynchronous Receiver-Transmitter). The CD-ROM unit 14 is connected to parallel / PCI driver 125 by parallel communication circuits, such as ATAPI (AT Attachment Packet Interface). Although a graphic display is not carried out, ASIC which manages an exchange of the data based on infrared rays is provided in the infrared-ray-communication unit 127.

[0050][2. operation] This embodiment constituted as stated above works as follows.

[2-1. -- overall operation]

[2-1-1. entry of data] According to this embodiment, the direct entry of the digital data is carried out to support ASIC121 of the support module 12 among the data inputted from each apparatus. For example, the data which key was pressed is sent from the face plate unit 15. From GPS unit 16, digital data called the latitude and longitude which were calculated using the electric wave from a GPS Satellite is sent. From the infrared-ray-communication unit 127 provided in the face plate unit 15, the digital data transmitted with infrared rays from the hand-held PC 8 is sent.

[0051]From the CD-ROM unit 14 and the CD-ROM autochanger 7. The data of the sound read from the audio CD, i.e., audio information, After the digital data read from CD-ROM, i.e., CD-ROM data, is changed into the data format of PCI bus B-2 by parallel / PCI driver 125, and the serial / PCI driver 126, it is sent to support ASIC121 via PCI bus B-2.

[0052]Although not shown in drawing 2, the digital data which tells generating of abnormalities is sent from the security control unit 5 shown in drawing 1. Similarly, from the telephone unit 6 shown in drawing 1, the digital data which tells the telephone number of the mail arrival and dispatch origin of a telephone call, etc., i.e., alphabetic data, is sent, and the digital data which tells a partner's voice, i.e., voice data, is sent during a telephone call support ASIC121.

[0053]These security control unit 5 and the telephone unit 6, Since daisy chain connection is carried out to the serial bus B3, the information sent from the security control unit 5 or the telephone unit 6, Like the digital data from the CD-ROM autochanger 7, after being changed into the data format of PCI bus B-2 by a serial / PCI driver 126, it is sent via PCI bus B-2.

[0054]On the other hand, among the data inputted from each apparatus, after the analog signal was once inputted into CODEC circuit 122 and is changed into digital data by this CODEC circuit 122 (A/D conversion), it is passed to support ASIC121. For example, from the microphone 3, a user's voice is inputted with an analog signal, and the contents of broadcast of the radio received as a result of tuning are inputted with an analog signal from the tuner 21.

[0055]Destination [of the data of which the [2-1-2. input was done]] The role of traffic control which information support ASIC121 sends where is played to the information for which it gathers in this way. That is, roughly, support ASIC121 was processed with DSP unit 123, and also it sends the data of a sound to the amplifier 22 through CODEC circuit 122, and data other than a sound is sent to CPU module 11. However, the data inputted from the microphone 3 also in the data of a sound is sent to CPU module 11 for speech recognition.

[0056]The contents of the radio broadcast tuned up by the tuner 21 as data of a sound sent to the amplifier 22, for example, The voice etc. of the contents of sound recording read from the audio CD with the CD-ROM unit 14 or the CD-ROM autochanger 7 and the call partner seen off from the telephone unit 6 can be considered.

[0057]The data of which operation key was pressed by the face plate unit 15 as data other than a sound, for example, With the digital data, the CD-ROM unit 14, and the CD-ROM autochanger 7 which are called the latitude and longitude which have been sent from the data of the file etc. which have been sent from the infrared-ray-communication unit 127, and GPS unit 16. The contents of the map for car-navigation systems and the contents of the information for every area which were read from CD-ROM, The data which tells the abnormal occurrence led from the security control unit 5, the data which tells the telephone number etc. of telephone call arrival [which is sent from the telephone unit 6] and dispatch origin, etc. can be considered.

[0058][[Information processing with a 2-1-3. CPU module] In CPU module 11, if digital data is sent from support ASIC121, after the PCI bus host controller 114 changes the sent data into the data format of the local bus B1, CPU host ASIC115 will be passed. If this CPU host ASIC115 manages input and output instead of CPU111 and is passed data, it will judge [what

that data should pass to CPU111, or] from the form of data, etc. whether that is right.

[0059]That is, the other data is passed to CPU111 although the reaction for which it opted beforehand to the data for which it is sufficient if CPU host ASIC115 returns a fixed reaction mechanically is returned to the support module 12 through the PCI bus host controller 114.

[0060]CPU111 processes the passed data according to the code of OS and the program which are recorded on the flash ROM 113, and uses DRAM112 as storage areas, such as a work area required in the case of this processing. For example, when a user's voice inputted from the microphone 3 is sent, CPU111, The parameter showing the feature of the instruction word currently prepared beforehand, a waveform, etc. are compared with the voice of the user who received, a most alike instruction word is presumed to be what the user said, and it operates according to the instruction word.

[0061]In CPU module 11, according to the request from CPU111, reading and writing of CompactFlash card 13 are performed, when CPU host ASIC115 controls PCMCIA-ASIC116.

[0062]And the result of information processing by CPU111 is sent to the support module 12, after being changed into the data format of PCI bus B-2 by the PCI bus host controller 114. As data sent to the support module 12 as a result of information processing, it is instructions of the operation to each portion and each apparatus of the support module 12, etc., and processing of input and output etc. is performed in the support module 12 according to the data sent in this way.

[0063][Processing of input and output with a 2-1-4. support module etc.] For example, if the instructions which tuning of the data read from CD or radio is made arrive from CPU module 11, the CD-ROM unit 14, the CD-ROM autochanger 7, and the tuner 21 will perform operation according to it. If the instructions which change the sound source of the sound which has come out of the loudspeaker to apparatus different from the present arrive from CPU module 11, support ASIC121 will change the digital data sent out to CODEC circuit 122 from the thing of the apparatus till then to what is depended on the apparatus specified newly.

[0064]When outputting digital data to the amplifier 22, since the amplifier 22 receives only an analog signal, after CODEC circuit 122 changes digital data into an analog signal (D/A conversion), it outputs it to the amplifier 22.

[0065]If the indicative data to a user is sent to support ASIC121 from CPU module 11 or other apparatus, for example, support ASIC121 will transmit this indicative data to the face plate unit 15 through a high-speed serial communication circuit. In this case, in the face plate unit 15, the information to a user is displayed on an indicator according to the transmitted indicative data.

[0066]Then, work of each portion which was described above explains concretely how a user can use the car audio system of this embodiment.

[0067][Presenting of 2-2. operation and information] When operating the car audio system of this embodiment, a user may press the operation key provided in the face plate unit 15, and

may utter the words and phrases beforehand decided for every internal use of operation. as the words and phrases which may press the operation key changed to CD when a user wants to use CD and an FM tuner and which carried out and were decided beforehand -- for example, -- "-- carrying out - ****-" -- "-- what is necessary is to obtain, to increase and just to speak toward ***" etc. and the microphone 3

[0068]When a user presses the operation key, the data is transmitted to CPU module 11 from support ASIC121, CPU111 sends a new indicative data to support ASIC121, and the indicator of the face plate unit 15 changes to a screen display for operating a screen display and CD for operating radio using this indicative data, etc.

[0069]a user -- ", if it carries out and the words and phrases - ****-" are uttered, An analog signal is changed into digital data from the microphone 3 by CODEC circuit 122, From support ASIC121, through PCI bus host controller and CPU host ASIC115, it is sent to CPU111 by this digital data and CPU111, Based on this digital data, it recognizes which language the user said, and the same correspondence as the time of the operation key being pressed is carried out according to a recognition result.

[0070]For example, use the indicator of the face plate unit 15 as the touch panel, and as a graphical user interface of a computer, For example, the function which can be used at the time is displayed on an indicator by an icon, and if the icon of the function which a user wants to use is touched with a finger, the function can work. If they use, for example, a display and speech recognition in one voice by such an icon, The usage that a screen will return to the state in front of one if a screen will change, some following icons will be displayed if some icons are displayed at once and a user speaks with the "next", and a user speaks, saying "It returns" is also possible.

[0071][When 2-3. radio is listened to] it is the operation which was described above -- a user -- ", if obtain, and increase, it speaks with ***", FM broadcasting of radio is chosen and CPU111 recognizes it, Support ASIC121 changes the sauce of the data which changes the tuner 21 to the receive state of FM according to the command from CPU111, and is sent out to the amplifier 22 to the data of the sound from the tuner 21. in this case, the good next frequency of a receive state is looked for automatically, the tuner 21 being that carry out and a user utters the words and phrases "a seeking rise" which may receive the frequency tuned in last time, for example, and changing frequency little by little (automatic scanning) -- it may be made like.

[0072]Thus, since the receiving contents sent from the tuner 21 are analog signals when listening to radio, this analog signal is inputted into CODEC circuit 122, and after being changed into digital data, it is sent to support ASIC121. Support ASIC121 passes the digital data received from CODEC circuit 122 to DSP unit 123, and DSP unit 123, This digital data is processed according to the setting-out item of the balance and volume which are beforehand set up on the system, and it returns to support ASIC121.

[0073]And support ASIC121 returns again the digital data which has returned in this way to CODEC circuit 122, and after it changed this digital data into the analog signal again and CODEC circuit 122 returns it, it is sent to the amplifier 22 and it is made to flow through it from a loudspeaker shortly.

[0074][Playback of 2-4.CD] A user sets an audio CD to ask the CD-ROM unit 14 and the CD-ROM autochanger 7 and should just do directions of pointing to playback with "**** -", etc. a sound, etc., or flying to the following music to hear an audio CD. For example, when playing the audio CD in the CD-ROM unit 14, the CD-ROM unit 14 operates by the instructions from support ASIC121, and the audio information which is digital data is sent from the CD-ROM unit 14.

[0075]And parallel / PCI driver 125, Change this audio information into the data format of PCI bus B-2, send to support ASIC121 and support ASIC121, If the audio information which once passes this audio information to DSP unit 123, made process it, and was processed when audio information was received from PCI bus B-2 is again received from DSP unit 123, The processed audio information is passed to CODEC circuit 122 from a digital-input/output port, and it is made to output to the amplifier 22 in the form of an analog signal.

[0076]When the CD-ROM autochanger 7 reproduces an audio CD, a serial / PCI driver 126 changes into the data format of PCI bus B-2 the audio information of the serial form sent from the serial bus B3, but. Processing after it is performed like the case of the CD-ROM unit 14.

[0077]The CD-ROM unit 14 and the CD-ROM autochanger 7, If CODEC circuit 122 and DSP unit 123 are compared relatively, in order that the latter may process data little by little in the cycle of short time to the former sending the data of the quantity collected in the cycle of long time, a cycle has a gap among both. For this reason, support ASIC121 stores in the buffer memory 124 the digital data which the CD-ROM unit 14 or the CD-ROM autochanger 7 has sent collectively, A gap which was described above is filled up with passing DSP unit 123 and making it process, if it takes out from the oldest portion one after another, and reproduction is made to be performed smoothly.

[0078][Use of 2-5.CD-ROM and car navigation] A user for example, to use the function of a car-navigation system. For example, after setting to the CD-ROM unit 14 CD-ROM on which the data for car-navigation systems (application software, a map, etc.) was recorded, the function of a car-navigation system is started. The function of such a car-navigation system is realizable by recording on the flash ROM 113 of CPU module 11, for example as a program of a computer, and making CPU111 execute such a program.

[0079]When such a car-navigation system tries to read the data of the map recorded on CD-ROM, various information for every area, etc., For example, the digital data read from the CD-ROM unit 14 is passed to CPU111 through parallel / PCI driver 125, PCI bus host controller 114, and CPU host ASIC115. CPU111 created on DRAM112 the bitmapped image for

displaying on the indicator of the face plate unit 15 based on the data of the map etc. which were received in this way, and also it is sent out to the support module 12.

[0080]When using a car-navigation system in this way, the GPS antenna 4 shown in drawing 1 receives the electric wave from a GPS Satellite, GPS unit 16 of drawing 2 calculates latitude, longitude, etc. from this electric wave, and this data is sent to CPU111. Then, CPU111 can specify on a map where the car loading with this car audio system is running from the data of such latitude, longitude, etc. now. As a result, even if a user does not input, a its present location can be set up as a departure point, or the rough map that the present point takes the lead can be displayed, or the figure which directs next right-turn and left turn can be displayed.

[0081]The data for navigation may be memorized to CompactFlash card 13 (or DRAM112) or the flash ROM 113.

[0082]The method of operation by speech recognition which was already explained, Thus, also when using the function of a car-navigation system, it can use, For example, when using the car-navigation system which issues directions, such as right-turn and left turn, for every corner of a street and a user wants to see the directions before one, and directions of one beyond, one display after another can also be changed by uttering the "next" and the words and phrases of "returning."

[0083]In order to know where it will next turn, it becomes unnecessary to turn a look to an indicator, if a user can also be told about such guidance and it does in this way with outputting synthesized speech through the amplifier 22.

[0084][Use of a 2-6. telephone] The user can harness the advantage of a computer, and the advantage of a car audio system as follows, when talking over the telephone using the telephone unit 6. For example, the user registers into DRAM112 and CompactFlash card 13 of the system beforehand people's telephone number and name which he knows using the program of a computer.

[0085]If a telephone receives a message, it will not illustrate to drawing 2, but the digital data which tells that the telephone received a message from the telephone unit 6 through the serial bus B3, and the serial / PCI driver 126, and the digital data showing the telephone number of a sending agency are sent to support ASIC121. These data is further sent to CPU111 of CPU module 11, and CPU111 searches whether the telephone number of the dispatch origin which is hanging now into the telephone number registered beforehand is registered.

[0086]When there is a telephone number of the dispatch origin which is hanging now into the telephone number registered beforehand, CPU111 is returning the name corresponding to the telephone number to the support module 12, A user can be told about who is telephoning by displaying the name of those who are telephoning the face plate unit 15, or pouring the guidance by synthesized speech "it is from Mr. OO" from a mounted loudspeaker.

[0087]If the user who knew getting a telephone call in such a display, guidance, a calling

sound, etc. directs to utter the words and phrases decided beforehand and to connect a telephone, A user's voice inputted from the microphone 3 is changed into digital data by CODEC circuit 122 at the same time a partner's voice flows from a loudspeaker, It is sent to the telephone unit 6 through support ASIC121, the serial / PCI driver 126, and the serial bus B3, and the user can talk over the telephone in what is called the handsfree state, without using a hand.

[0088]The answering machine function etc. which were prepared for the telephone unit 6 or CPU module 11, for example answer a telephone in the place where only the number of times with a constant calling sound sounded.

[0089]If the icon of dispatch, etc. are touched with a finger in the place which displayed the telephone number and name which have been registered beforehand one after another on the display screen, for example and where the partner who wants to telephone was displayed also when it is going to send from the user side, The telephone number is transmitted to the telephone unit 6 as digital data from CPU module 11, and a telephone call is got automatically, and if a partner comes out, it can talk as it is.

[0090]Send to the telephone number corresponding to the name automatically because utter the name which the user registered and CPU module 11 recognizes this, or, a single figure speaks at a time, and a telephone number to hang is made to recognize, or a user is "person -- are and it does -- " -- the point which recognizes having spoken and telephones can be decided.

[0091][Use of a 2-7. security control unit] The security control unit 5 can also be used alone, and it can also be used for it, making it the telephone unit 6 described above interlocked with. For example, when leaving a car, (drawing 1) and a user operate the security control unit 5, and get down with the transmitter 5c. If the third party who is unrelated to the user of vehicles in any way is going to touch a doorknob, tamper with a keyhole, wrench a door and a suitcase open or is going to move a car without notice, The sensor 5a takes in the shock and vibration by it, and the security control unit 5 which received the signal from the sensor 5a sounds the siren 5b with Ryo Oto, for example. Thereby, the effect of an alarm is brought about to the environment outside a car.

[0092]Since the code decided beforehand will be sent to the security control unit 5 and the function of the security control unit 5 will be canceled if he operates the transmitter 5c which it has when the user itself has returned to the car, A key is not used, or even if it moves a car, a siren does not sound.

[0093]It is further effective if such a security control unit 5 uses making it the telephone unit 6 interlocked with. That is, when the sensor 5a has detected abnormalities, the security control unit 5 starts the car audio system which sends an interrupt signal and it not only sounds a siren, but contains CPU module 11 and the support module 12. In order to enable such

starting, the electronic circuit linked to the power supply and start switch of the car audio system is prepared, What is necessary is to make a power supply and a start switch one immediately, and just to start a car audio system, if this electronic circuit is made to always supervise whether the interrupt signal is coming and an interrupt signal comes it.

[0094]CPU111 started in this way makes it telephone by sending instructions to the telephone unit 6, when the data which tells an abnormal occurrence is received from the security control unit 5. The point which telephones at this time should just be taken as a cellular phone, a security company, etc. which what is necessary is just to set up beforehand as an information destination at the time of abnormalities, and the police and a user have. And abnormalities are told by the thing which hung and which will be told synthesized speech and against the announcement recorded beforehand if a telephone is connected previously. If it does in this way, those who received the notice can hasten at the spot.

[0095][Use of a 2-8. utility program] Like the usual hand-held PC, if functions, such as an address book, a calendar, schedule management, voice recording, a clock, a calculator, and a game, are used as a function of OS or an application program, it will become possible to perform information processing various also in a car. The environment of information processing which suited to itself can be improved by deleting the application program which realizes these functions, changing to a new thing, or adding.

[0096][Use of a 2-9. CompactFlash card] In the car audio system of this embodiment, information can be exchanged between other hand-held PCs, other car audio systems, etc. by using CompactFlash card 13.

[0097]For example, it becomes easy to add a new function, and it to be sufficient to make a new application program and OS read into the flash ROM 113 from CompactFlash card 13, and to update OS. Since it becomes easy for ordinary software makers to make an application program, the functional module of OS, etc. by using general-purpose OS especially, CompactFlash card 13 which recorded it also appears on the market, it becomes easy to get, and the user can use this car audio system now for convenience more also as a computer.

[0098]If individual data like the address book made with other personal computers and hand-held PCs is carried into this car audio system by CompactFlash card 13, the work till then can be continued on this car audio system. Contrary to this, the data made with this car audio system can be moved to other personal computers and hand-held PCs by CompactFlash card 13, and work can also be continued.

[0099]If the backup copy of the data which he made using a utility program which was described above is carried out to CompactFlash card 13, Since the bad condition and others of the car audio system used, even when data disappears, data can be made to be able to read into the main unit 1 from CompactFlash card 13 again, and information processing can be continued.

[0100]If the backup copy of various setting out of the car audio system suitable for itself is carried out to CompactFlash card 13, Even if someone of other families change setting out, inserting in the main unit 1 CompactFlash card 13 which he had, and making the contents read, when he uses a car can use a car audio system by user-friendly original setting out for itself.

[0101][Communication with a 2-10. hand-held PC] At this embodiment, data can be easily exchanged by using the infrared-ray-communication unit 127, without applying the time and effort of taking out and inserting CompactFlash card 13 or connecting by a cable etc., between the hand-held PCs 8. For this reason, update OS and an application program using the file etc. which were recorded in the hand-held PC 8, or. Move to the hand-held PC 8 directly the individual data made on the car audio system, or, Save backup of such individual data in the comparatively big storage area which the hand-held PC 8 has, or, Various usage of moving setting out of a car audio system, etc. to the car audio system of other cars through the hand-held PC 8 also becomes possible.

[0102][3. effect] As mentioned above, the computer which controls a car audio system by this embodiment is provided with general-purpose OS, and it this general-purpose OS, The user interface which carries out the maximum exertion of the capability of a computer by managing resources, such as CPU and a memory, and is not dependent on a program and which it is unific and is easy to use is provided, and an addition and change of a function are also made easy by adding the program of the form decided further beforehand, or changing. For this reason, control of a complicated car audio system becomes easy.

[0103]If it is the program which suited the standard of OS, it will become possible to use a program also with in the car [various], and it will also become possible to process information using apparatus, such as an indicator of a car audio system, an operation key, and a loudspeaker. Of course, a user can save his individual information even in this case using about the same big memory as a hand-held PC, or information can be edited like a personal computer.

[0104]In this embodiment, data is exchanged using the bus CPU of a computer and the apparatus of the car audio system made the mistake in corresponding to a mutual form, and between two buses, if needed, data changes form, wins popularity and is passed. For this reason, even if operation of CPU is quicker than operation of each apparatus, it is not necessary to double CPU with the motion cycle of each apparatus, and complicated processing can be performed at high speed by accessing a memory etc. efficiently. Since the data which CPU exchanges, and the data which apparatus exchanges do not scramble for the communicative competence of the same bus, both a computer and a car audio system can perform each operation smoothly.

[0105]Multitasking of performing another processing using the bus corresponding to the form

of CPU becomes easy simultaneously, reproducing the signal of a sound using the bus for connecting apparatus. Also when changing CPU into the thing of another form, the bus for connecting these apparatus with each apparatus remains as it is, and since what is necessary is to change only the bus corresponding to the form of CPU according to the form of new CPU, it can respond also to change of CPU easily.

[0106]In particular, in this embodiment, two or more apparatus can be connected in daisy chain form one after another, and it can die. For this reason, also when the number of apparatus increases or distributed installation of the apparatus is carried out here and there [in the car], long wiring is not concentrated in one place like a star method, and installation becomes easy. Since wiring becomes intelligible shapely, it also becomes easy to change the composition of a car audio system or to carry out maintenance and repair.

[0107]In addition, since any data is exchanged as digital data and processed through USB etc. in this embodiment regardless of the kind of data whether to be audio information or to be alphabetic data, It is hard to be influenced by the environmental variation or a noise, and an audio characteristic is also stabilized.

[0108][An embodiment] besides 4. This invention is not limited to the embodiment described above, and contains other embodiments which are illustrated next. For example, in the embodiment described above, although Windows CE was mentioned as an example of OS of a computer, since this is only mere illustration, using OS of other kinds which already uses a certain OS or will appear newly from now on is also included in the range of this invention.

[0109]Although the example which controls the car audio system for mount by the embodiment described above was shown, This invention can harness the advantage of this invention that it is also possible to use for controlling electric products, such as a non-portable stereo, new application software is used also in this case, or the whole is small and can be managed in a home.

[0110]Although the standard concrete about various buses and communication circuits was mentioned in the embodiment described above, such a standard is only illustration and can also be transposed to other standards which can do same usage. For example, the 1st bus and 2nd bus can also make a CPU module and a support module an internal bus by one-chip-izing.

[0111]

[Effect of the Invention]As mentioned above, according to this invention, taking advantage of a mutual advantage, a complicated car audio system and how to use a computer by controlling easily can be extended by combining a computer with general-purpose OS, and a car audio system.

[Translation done.]

* NOTICES *

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.**** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

TECHNICAL FIELD

[Field of the Invention]This invention is combining a small computer with general-purpose OS, and a car audio system, and relates to the art of harnessing a mutual advantage.

[Translation done.]

*** NOTICES ***

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
2. **** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

PRIOR ART

[Description of the Prior Art]In recent years, progress with remarkable art of a semiconductor is accomplished and the electronic equipment of various fields has become a miniaturization and highly efficient by using a semiconductor. Thus, one of the electronic equipment made a miniaturization and highly efficient by using a semiconductor has a personal computer (henceforth a "personal computer").

[0003]The small personal computers (it names generically the following "hand-held PC") called [especially] a handheld computer (carried type), a palm top, etc. these days are also increasing in number. Windows(registered trademark of Microsoft Corp.) CE etc. are known, for example as base software (it is called below Operating System: "OS") suitable for such a hand-held PC, i.e., an operating system.

[0004]Such a general-purpose OS realizes advanced throughput by managing finely throughput, a memory, etc. of CPU which the computer has, or, If it is a program of the form which provided the user interface independent of a program which it is unific and is easy to use, or was decided beforehand, it has the advantage that the current update of the function of a computer can be carried out by carrying out a current update freely.

[0005]As another electronic equipment which similarly has been made a miniaturization and highly efficient by using a semiconductor, the car audio system and car-navigation system which are carried in a car are mentioned. Among these, a car audio system is commonly called a car stereo etc., and combines the tuner of a CD player, AM, or FM, etc. with amplifier, a loudspeaker, etc. A car-navigation system is a shown system to which a screen display of the map is carried out to the specified destination, pinpointing the current position of a car using an azimuth magnet, an odometer, GPS, etc.

[0006]These days, since a car-navigation system, a handsfree cellular phone, an anti-theft alarm system, etc. are combined with a car audio system in many cases, the electronic equipment for these mount is hereafter named a "car audio system" generically.

[Translation done.]

*** NOTICES ***

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.**** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

EFFECT OF THE INVENTION

[3. effect] As mentioned above, the computer which controls a car audio system by this embodiment is provided with general-purpose OS, and in this general-purpose OS, The user interface which carries out the maximum exertion of the capability of a computer by managing resources, such as CPU and a memory, and is not dependent on a program and which is unified and is easy to use is provided, and an addition and change of a function are also made easy by adding the program of the form decided further beforehand, or changing. For this reason, control of a complicated car audio system becomes easy.

[0103]If it is the program which suited the standard of OS, it will become possible to use a program also within the car [various], and it will also become possible to process information using apparatus, such as an indicator of a car audio system, an operation key, and a loudspeaker. Of course, a user can save his individual information even in this case using about the same big memory as a hand-held PC, or information can be edited like a personal computer.

[0104]In this embodiment, data is exchanged using the bus CPU of a computer and the apparatus of the car audio system made the mistake in corresponding to a mutual form, and between two buses, if needed, data changes form, wins popularity and is passed. For this reason, even if operation of CPU is quicker than operation of each apparatus, it is not necessary to double CPU with the motion cycle of each apparatus, and complicated processing can be performed at high speed by accessing a memory etc. efficiently. Since the data which CPU exchanges, and the data which apparatus exchanges do not scramble for the communicative competence of the same bus, both a computer and a car audio system can perform each operation smoothly.

[0105]Multitasking of performing another processing using the bus corresponding to the form of CPU becomes easy simultaneously, reproducing the signal of a sound using the bus for connecting apparatus. Also when changing CPU into the thing of another form, the bus for

connecting these apparatus with each apparatus remains as it is, and since what is necessary is to change only the bus corresponding to the form of CPU according to the form of new CPU, it can respond also to change of CPU easily.

[0106]In particular, in this embodiment, two or more apparatus can be connected in daisy chain form one after another, and it can die. For this reason, also when the number of apparatus increases or distributed installation of the apparatus is carried out here and there [in the car], long wiring is not concentrated in one place like a star method, and installation becomes easy. Since wiring becomes intelligible shapely, it also becomes easy to change the composition of a car audio system or to carry out maintenance and repair.

[0107]In addition, since any data is exchanged as digital data and processed through USB etc. in this embodiment regardless of the kind of data whether to be audio information or to be alphabetic data, It is hard to be influenced by the environmental variation or a noise, and an audio characteristic is also stabilized.

[0108][An embodiment] besides 4. This invention is not limited to the embodiment described above, and contains other embodiments which are illustrated next. For example, in the embodiment described above, although Windows CE was mentioned as an example of OS of a computer, since this is only mere illustration, using OS of other kinds which already uses a certain OS or will appear newly from now on is also included in the range of this invention.

[0109]Although the example which controls the car audio system for mount by the embodiment described above was shown, This invention can harness the advantage of this invention that it is also possible to use for controlling electric products, such as a non-portable stereo, new application software is used also in this case, or the whole is small and can be managed in a home.

[0110]Although the standard concrete about various buses and communication circuits was mentioned in the embodiment described above, such a standard is only illustration and can also be transposed to other standards which can do same usage. For example, the 1st bus and 2nd bus can also make a CPU module and a support module an internal bus by one-chip-izing.

[Translation done.]

*** NOTICES ***

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.**** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

TECHNICAL PROBLEM

[Problem(s) to be Solved by the Invention]The hand-held PC provided with OS which was described above, and the car audio system were mutual completely separate in the former. That is, although the car audio system which prepared the computer in the large meaning for control existed, the computer in this case is called the embedded system which works only for the specific purpose.

[0008]CPU with necessary minimum capability is used for this embedded system, and it realizes necessary minimum processing to the hardware of receiving an operation switch or operating a disk reproduction mechanism, by the small program using an assembler etc. For this reason, usage of carrying out the change addition of the function by carrying out processing and preservation of data like a personal computer, or carrying out the change addition of the program cannot be done.

[0009]On the other hand, it did not have a function which a hand-held PC sounds music itself, or controls a car audio system. For this reason, although the user might carry the hand-held PC into in the car as a matter of fact, he did not use, having connected with the car audio system.

[0010]By the way, the latest car audio system, Not only in conventional apparatus called the tuner, cassette tape deck, and CD player of radio, Many apparatus is increasingly built into the condition of an MD player, CD, the autochanger of MD, a car-navigation system, the voice recognition equipment that recognizes a user's command, a handsfree cellular phone, and an anti-theft alarm system. And it is dramatically difficult to master the car audio system which becomes complicated in this way only with the switch in which it was provided by each device.

[0011]That is, when a car audio system becomes complicated in this way, many switches, such as an operation key and a dial, will be in various places in the car. For this reason, it is serious to memorize which is what operation key.

[0012]Namely, in order to master the car audio system which becomes complicated. To use for

control an information processor equivalent to the hand-held PC provided with the small computer with the pliability which can carry out the current update of the function about the advanced throughput which controls a complicated system, the user interface, and control which are easy to use, and especially general-purpose OS is desired.

[0013]Even if it thinks from the hand-held PC side, a car is used like the present age in many cases, and in the car is wanted to expand the width of practical use in society also with much traffic congestion. By combining with a car audio system especially, make an operation key and a memory serve a double purpose, or, The information which a user wants to know in the car is made to be read out by the synthesized speech using a computer, If usage of hearing the voice from the loudspeaker of a car audio system, or accessing an external computer network by the circuit of the cellular phone built into the car audio system can be done, the width of practical use can be expanded rather than former.

[0014]When combining high-speed CPU which uses general-purpose OS, and apparatus which is contained in a car audio system, to have a separate bus suitable for each from the difference in both working speed, etc. is desired. In the car audio system which combined a lot of apparatus, two or more apparatus is wanted to be easily connectable with simple refreshed wiring.

[0015]Proposed in order that this invention might solve the problem of conventional technology which was described above, it is combining a small computer with general-purpose OS, and a car audio system, and the purpose is to harness a mutual advantage. Another purpose of this invention is to use two or more buses, and is using both high-speed apparatus of CPU and others smoothly without futility. Another purpose of this invention is to connect various apparatus one after another with a daisy chain mode.

[Translation done.]

*** NOTICES ***

JP0 and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.*** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

MEANS

[Means for Solving the Problem]In order to attain the purpose described above, an invention of claim 1 equips a car audio system provided with a computer for control with the following. A means by which said computer is provided with an operating system and this operating system manages resources on a computer.

A means to control input and output containing a user interface.

A means to execute a program of form decided beforehand.

A computer for mount of claim 6 is provided with the following.

An operating system which realizes environment required in order to execute a program of form decided beforehand.

Car audio system.

A means to control said car audio system.

An invention of claim 11 is what caught an invention of claim 1 from a view of a method, In a control method of a car audio system which controls a car audio system using a computer provided with an operating system, A step which realizes environment which needs said operating system in order to execute a program of form decided beforehand, and a step by which said program controls said car audio system are included. A computer which controls a car audio system by invention of claims 1, 6, and 11 is provided with general-purpose OS, and it this general-purpose OS, A user interface which carries out the maximum exertion of the capability of a computer by managing resources, such as CPU and a memory, and is not dependent on a program and which it is unific and is easy to use is provided, and an addition and change of a function are made easy by adding a program of form decided further beforehand, or changing. For this reason, control of a complicated car audio system becomes easy. It becomes possible for in the car to use various programs, or to process information using apparatus of a car audio system.

[0017]An invention of claim 2 was provided with the 1st bus corresponding to form of CPU

contained in said computer, and the 2nd bus for connecting apparatus contained in said car audio system in a car audio system provided with a computer for control. An invention of claim 7 was provided with the 1st bus corresponding to form of CPU contained in said computer, and the 2nd bus for connecting apparatus contained in said car audio system in a computer for mount provided with a car audio system. An invention of claim 12 is what caught an invention of claim 2 from a view of a method, In a control method of a car audio system which controls a car audio system using a computer, A step with which CPU contained in said computer exchanges data through the 1st bus corresponding to form of this CPU, Apparatus contained in said car audio system contains a step which exchanges data through the 2nd bus for connecting apparatus. An invention of claim 3 was provided with a PCI bus for connecting apparatus contained in said car audio system with a local bus corresponding to form of CPU contained in said computer in a car audio system provided with a computer for control. An invention of claim 8 was provided with a PCI bus for connecting apparatus contained in said car audio system with a local bus corresponding to form of CPU contained in said computer in a computer for mount provided with a car audio system. An invention of claim 4 was provided with a means to change form of data between said each bus, in the car audio system according to claim 2 or 3. An invention of claim 9 was provided with a means to change form of data between said each bus, in the computer for mount according to claim 7 or 8. In an invention of claims 2, 3, 7, 8, and 12, data is exchanged using a bus CPU of a computer and apparatus of a car audio system made the mistake in corresponding to a mutual form, and between two buses, if needed, data changes form, wins popularity and is passed (claims 4 and 9). For this reason, even if operation of CPU is quicker than operation of each apparatus, it is not necessary to double CPU with a motion cycle of each apparatus, and complicated processing can be performed at high speed by accessing a memory etc. efficiently. Since data which CPU exchanges, and data which apparatus exchanges do not scramble for communicative competence of the same bus, it can operate smoothly in both a computer and a car audio system. Multitasking of performing another processing using a bus corresponding to form of CPU becomes easy simultaneously, reproducing a signal of a sound using a bus for connecting apparatus. Also when changing CPU into a thing of another form, a bus for connecting these apparatus with each apparatus remains as it is, and since what is necessary is to change only a bus corresponding to form of CPU according to form of new CPU, it can respond also to change of CPU easily.

[0018]An invention of claim 5 was provided with the 3rd bus for connecting two or more apparatus contained in said car audio system in a car audio system of any one statement of four from claim 1 in daisy chain form. An invention of claim 10 was provided with the 3rd bus for connecting two or more apparatus contained in said car audio system in a computer for mount of any one statement of nine from claim 6 in daisy chain form. In an invention of claims

5 and 10, two or more apparatus can be connected in daisy chain form one after another, and it can die. For this reason, also when the number of apparatus increases or distributed installation of the apparatus is carried out here and there [in the car], long wiring is not concentrated in one place like a star method, and installation becomes easy. Since wiring becomes intelligible shapely, it also becomes easy to change composition or to carry out maintenance and repair.

[0019]

[Embodiment of the Invention]Next, an embodiment of the invention (henceforth a "embodiment") is concretely described with reference to drawings. Although this embodiment is the car audio system provided with various apparatus, such as a CD player, it is provided with the computer provided with general-purpose OS which is used for a hand-held PC, and also performs control of a car audio system by this computer. The same numerals are attached about the member same about each figure used by the following explanation as the figure explained before it, or the same kind of member, and explanation is omitted.

[0020][1. composition]

[Composition of whole 1-1.] First, drawing 1 is a block diagram showing the entire configuration of this embodiment. As shown in this figure, this embodiment as each apparatus which constitutes a car audio system other than the main unit 1, It has the tuner amplifier unit 2, the microphone 3, the GPS antenna 4, the security control unit 5, the telephone unit 6, the CD-ROM autochanger 7, and the auxiliary battery 9 for power supply backup.

[0021]Among these, the main unit 1 is a portion which builds in the computer for control and controls the whole system by this computer. Although the tuner amplifier unit 2 does not carry out the graphic display other than the antenna 2a of AM and FM, it is the portion provided with a radio tuner and the amplifier for sounding a loudspeaker. The microphone 3 is for inputting a user's voice so that operation by speech recognition can be performed. The function of this speech recognition is realized by the program of the computer described above.

[0022][1-1-1. main unit] The main unit 1 is provided with the socket 13S for inserting CompactFlash card 13, and the face plate unit 15 removed [attach and] and made (drawing 1). CompactFlash card 13 is a storage using a flash memory, and data can be written from the main unit 1 by inserting in the socket 13S formed in the main unit 1. This CompactFlash card 13 is used in order to exchange data, a program, etc. with other computers or to back up various information sets in this car audio system.

[0023]The face plate unit 15 attached, removed and made, It has the indicator which displays various information on a user, and the final controlling element which provided the operation key for a user to do various operations etc., and is referred to also as DCP (Detachable Control Panel). The indicator of this face plate unit 15 is large-sized color LCD (liquid crystal display) of 64 dots by 256 dots, etc., for example.

[0024]if it removes and carries out when getting off a car, even if a thief looks for a car audio system, neither use nor resale can do this face plate unit 15, also seeing an important indicator not have a final controlling element -- there are ** and a theft preventive effect of giving up stealing. If the removed face plate unit 15 is put into the case 15a and it carries around, it will damage neither itself nor a surrounding thing.

[0025]Although this face plate unit 15 is not shown in drawing 1, it is provided with the infrared-ray-communication unit for exchanging data in the form of the hand-held PC 8, IrDA, etc.

[0026][Apparatus] besides 1-1-2. The GPS antenna 4 is an antenna for receiving an electric wave from a GPS Satellite. The signal from this GPS antenna 4 is sent to the GPS unit in the main unit 1 through GPS receiver 4a. Although this GPS unit is not shown in drawing 1, it calculates the position on the earth with a receiver from an electric wave. On the computer described above, by a program, the function of a car-navigation system is realized and a calculation result is passed to the function of this car-navigation system.

[0027]The security control unit 5 is the sensor 5a which detects vibration and a shock, and when a theft, a mischief, etc. are detected, it is a portion which carries out correspondence of sounding the siren 5b. The telephone unit 6 is a unit which controls the function of a car telephone, and is a portion which realizes the telephone call using the telephone antenna 6a or the hand set 6b. The CD-ROM autochanger 7 is hanging automatically some CDs set beforehand again, and is a unit which plays the disk which the user chose, and music.

[0028][1-1-3. daisy chain connection] Here, these security control unit 5, the telephone unit 6, and the CD-ROM autochanger 7 are connected to the main unit 1 by USB (Universal Serial Bus). This USB is a serial bus (the 3rd bus) for connecting two or more apparatus in daisy chain form.

[0029]The apparatus connected by USB in this way comprises this embodiment so that data with the exterior may be exchanged in the form of this USB. For example, the CD-ROM autochanger 7, Although it has the hub (HUB) the object for upstreams, and for downstreams and digital data is once read from an audio CD or CD-ROM according to ATAPI form (parallel form) inside this CD-ROM autochanger 7, After the read data is changed into the USB (Universal Serial Bus) form which is serial form by the data converter built in, it is sent out to USB.

[0030]The installation becomes easy when installing these units 5, 6, and 7 in the place distant from the main unit 1, since connection of the units 5 and 6 and the CD-ROM autochanger 7 turns into serial connection with such composition. Although connected in order of the unit 5, the unit 6, and the autochanger 7 in drawing 1, connection order is good also as connection of only arbitrary and required things.

[0031][The internal configuration of a 1-2. main unit] Next, drawing 2 is a block diagram showing the main things among each portion described above, and is especially explained

focusing on the concrete composition of main unit 1 inside. This whole figure is divided into four with the dashed line, in the left, CPU module 11 and a center become the support module 12, the upper right becomes the external unit 30, and the lower right has become the option unit 40. Among these, CPU module 11 and the support module 12 are formed in the inside of the main unit 1.

[0032]The external unit 30 and the option unit 40 have pointed out collectively the apparatus of every some connected to the main unit 1. On account of explanation, CompactFlash card 13 is shown in the direction under CPU module 11, and drawing 2 shows the face plate unit 15 to the direction on the external unit 30.

[0033]Among these, CPU module 11 and the support module 12 constitute the computer for control which controls the whole car audio system. Among these, CPU module 11 is a portion which carries out logical data processing centering on CPU111, and the support module 12 is a portion which performs input and output with other apparatus contained in a car audio system.

[0034]The local bus B1 (the 1st bus) formed considering CPU111 as a center is a way with CPU module 11 as [main] data. PCI (Peripheral Component Interconnect) for that it is a way by the support module 12 as [main] data to connect each apparatus on the other hand It is bus B-2 (the 2nd bus).

[0035][Composition of a 1-2-1. CPU module] The local bus B1 of CPU module 11, It is what was doubled with the form of CPU111, and DRAM112, the flash ROM 113, the PCI bus host controller 114, CPU host ASIC115, and PCMCIA-ASIC116 are connected to this local bus B1. Among these, DRAM112 is a portion which provides work areas, such as a variable area, when CPU111 processes information in control of a car audio system, etc.

[0036]The flash ROM 113 is rewritable ROM and is a portion which stores the software in large meanings, such as OS, BIOS, and an application program, here. The function of OS stored here manages the resources on a computer, It is controlling the input and output containing a user interface, executing the program of the form decided beforehand, etc., for example, what used as the base Windows CE which conventional technology described by the way can be considered.

[0037]The PCI bus host controller 114 is a means to change the form of the data which connects the local bus B1 and PCI bus B-2, and is exchanged between these two buses.

[0038]"ASIC", such as CPU host ASIC115, is the abbreviation for Application Specific Integrated Circuit, and points out IC and LSI which were made for specific uses to general-purpose integrated circuits, such as ROM, RAM, and CPU. Specifically, this CPU host ASIC115 is ASIC for the interface of the local bus B1 and the PCI bus host controller 114. This CPU host ASIC115 [that is,], Between PCI bus B-2 and CPU module 11, are a portion which becomes a window of the data exchanged and specifically, Input and output with CPU module

11 and the exterior are performed instead of CPU111, and also it is recognized whether it is a thing of the kind passed to CPU111 about the data sent from PCI bus B-2.

[0039]And although what should pass CPU host ASIC115 to CPU111 is sent to CPU111 through the local bus B1, CPU111 does not need to calculate to the other thing, for example, the sent data, and such a reaction is returned about that for which it is sufficient if the reaction for which it opted beforehand is returned mechanically.

[0040]PCMCIA-ASIC116 CompactFlash card 13, It is a portion for an interface corresponding to being based on the standard of PCMCIA (Personal Computer Memory Card International Association) as what is called a PC card, It is a portion which controls the reading and writing of data to CompactFlash card 13.

[0041][Composition in connection with a 1-2-2. support module] Next, PCI bus B-2 of the support module 12 is a bus for exchanging data among various apparatus which constitutes a car audio system. Here, as apparatus connected to this PCI bus B-2, there are the external unit 30 and the option unit 40, and these have pointed out some apparatus collectively, respectively.

[0042]That is, the external unit 30 is unit with the another main unit 1 shown in drawing 1, and in this example specifically, It is the tuner 21, the amplifier 22, and the microphone 3 which were formed in the face plate unit 15 attached, removed and made from the main unit 1, and the tuner amplifier unit 2. Among these, the face plate unit 15 is provided with the infrared-ray-communication unit 127.

[0043]The option unit 40 is a unit from which it can choose whether to include in this car audio system as an option, and, specifically, are GPS unit 16 and the CD-ROM autochanger 7 in this example. There is the CD-ROM unit 14 in the inside of the main unit 1, and this CD-ROM unit 14 is also connected to PCI bus B-2. This CD-ROM unit 14 is a player for reading digital data from one CD or CD-ROM. These CD-ROM autochanger 7 and the CD-ROM unit 14 have the compatibility that data can also be read from what is called an audio CD, and both can also read data from CD-ROM (it is compatible).

[0044]In the support module 12, in order for PCI bus B-2 to exchange data among these apparatus, Support ASIC121, CODEC circuit 122, DSP unit 123, the buffer memory 124, the parallel / PCI driver 125, and the serial / PCI driver 126 are used.

[0045]Among these, support ASIC121 is a portion which controls traffic in the data where to send the data which came from where between the support module 12 and each apparatus. "CODEC" of CODEC circuit 122 is an abbreviation of "Coder/Decoder", i.e., the coding decryption art of data, and this CODEC circuit 122, For example, it is a portion which performs the A/D conversion etc. which carry out D/A conversion which changes the given digital data into an analog signal, or change an analog signal into digital data conversely.

[0046]"DSP" of DSP unit 123 is an abbreviation to mean a digital sound processor, i.e., the

circuit which processes the signal of the sound of digital format specially, and this DSP unit 123, When the digital data showing music etc. can be given, as items, such as balance of the right and left set as the system, volume, Feder, surround, and an equalizer, are reflected in the contents of the sound, it is a portion which processes digital data.

[0047]By audio equipment and PCI bus B-2s, such as a CD-ROM unit, since the buffer memory 124 differs in the cycle which write data, it is a buffer for this difference to be filled up with storing data and taking it out little by little, and comprises SRAM etc.

[0048]Parallel / PCI driver 125 is portions which change into the data format of PCI bus B-2 the digital data of parallel form sent from the CD-ROM unit 14. A serial / PCI driver 126 is portions which change into the data format of PCI bus B-2 the digital data of serial form sent from the CD-ROM autochanger 7.

[0049]The face plate unit 15 containing the infrared-ray-communication unit 127, It is connected to support ASIC121 in a high-speed serial communication circuit, and GPS unit 16 is connected to support ASIC121 in start-stop serial communication circuits, such as UART (UniversalAsynchronous Receiver-Transitter). The CD-ROM unit 14 is connected to parallel / PCI driver 125 by parallel communication circuits, such as ATAPI (AT Attachment Packet Interface). Although a graphic display is not carried out, ASIC which manages an exchange of the data based on infrared rays is provided in the infrared-ray-communication unit 127.

[Translation done.]

* NOTICES *

JP0 and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.**** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

OPERATION

[2. operation] This embodiment constituted as stated above works as follows.

[Translation done.]

*** NOTICES ***

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.**** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

DESCRIPTION OF DRAWINGS

[Brief Description of the Drawings]

[Drawing 1]The block diagram showing the entire configuration of the embodiment of this invention.

[Drawing 2]The block diagram shown focusing on the internal configuration of a main unit about the embodiment of this invention.

[Description of Notations]

- 1 -- Main unit 1
- 11 -- CPU module
- 111 -- CPU
- 112 -- DRAM
- 113 -- Flash ROM
- 114 -- PCI bus host controller
- 115 -- CPU host ASIC
- 116 -- PCMCIA-ASIC
- 12 -- Support module
- 121 -- Support ASIC
- 122 -- CODEC circuit
- 123 -- DSP unit
- 124 -- Buffer memory
- 125 -- Parallel / PCI driver
- 126 -- A serial / PCI driver
- 127 -- Infrared-ray-communication unit
- 13 -- CompactFlash card
- 13S -- Socket
- 14 -- CD-ROM unit

- 15 -- Face plate unit
- 15a -- Case
- 16 -- GPS unit
- 2 -- Tuner amplifier unit
- 2a -- Antenna
- 21 -- Tuner
- 22 -- Amplifier
- 3 -- Microphone
- 4 -- GPS antenna
- 4a -- Receiver
- 5 -- Security control unit
- 5a -- Sensor
- 5b -- Siren
- 5c -- Transmitter
- 6 -- Telephone unit
- 6a -- Antenna
- 6b -- Hand set
- 7 -- CD-ROM autochanger
- 8 -- Hand-held PC
- 9 -- Auxiliary battery
- 30 -- External unit
- 40 -- Option unit

[Translation done.]

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

(PCT Article 18 and Rules 43 and 44)

Applicant's or agent's file reference 9809/1/4	FOR FURTHER ACTION	see Notification of Transmittal of International Search Report (Form PCT/ISA/220) as well as, where applicable, item 5 below.
International application No. PCT/US03/39493	International filing date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 11 December 2003 (11.12.2003)	(Earliest) Priority Date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 11 December 2002 (11.12.2002)
Applicant BLITZSAFE OF AMERICA, INC.		

This international search report has been prepared by this International Searching Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 18. A copy is being transmitted to the International Bureau.

This international search report consists of a total of 4 sheets.

It is also accompanied by a copy of each prior art document cited in this report.

1. Basis of the Report

a. With regard to the language, the international search was carried out on the basis of the international application in the language in which it was filed, unless otherwise indicated under this item.

the international search was carried out on the basis of a translation of the international application furnished to this Authority (Rule 23.1(b)).

b. With regard to any nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosed in the international application, the international search was carried out on the basis of the sequence listing:

contained in the international application in written form.

filed together with the international application in computer readable form.

furnished subsequently to this Authority in written form.

furnished subsequently to this Authority in computer readable form.

the statement that the subsequently furnished written sequence listing does not go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed has been furnished.

the statement that the information recorded in computer readable form is identical to the written sequence listing has been furnished.

2. Certain claims were found unsearchable (See Box I).

3. Unity of invention is lacking (See Box II).

4. With regard to the title,

the text is approved as submitted by the applicant.

the text has been established by this Authority to read as follows:

5. With regard to the abstract,

the text is approved as submitted by the applicant.

the text has been established, according to Rule 38.2(b), by this Authority as it appears in Box III. The applicant may, within one month from the date of mailing of this international search report, submit comments to this Authority.

6. The figure of the drawings to be published with the abstract is Figure No. 1

as suggested by the applicant.

because the applicant failed to suggest a figure.

because this figure better characterizes the invention.

None of the figures

Form PCT/ISA/210 (first sheet) (July 1998)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US03/39493

Box III TEXT OF THE ABSTRACT (Continuation of Item 5 of the first sheet)

The technical features mentioned in the abstract do not include a reference sign between parentheses (PCT Rule 8.1(d)).

NEW ABSTRACT

An audio device integration system is provided. One or more after market audio devices, such as a CD player(15), CD changer, MP3 player(30), satellite receiver(25), DAB receiver(25), or the like, is integrated for use with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system, wherein control commands can be issued at the car stereo (10) and responsive data from the audio device (15,25,30) can be displayed on the stereo. Control commands generated at the car stereo (10) are received, processed, converted into a format recognizable by the audio device (15,25,30), and dispatched to the audio device (15,25,30) for execution. Information from the audio device (15,25,30), including track, disc, song, station, time and other information is received, processed, converted into a format recognizable by the car stereo, and dispatched to the car stereo (10) for display thereon.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US03/39493

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER												
IPC(7) : G06F 17/00; H04B 1/00, 3/00; US CL : 700/94; 381/86, 77												
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC												
B. FIELDS SEARCHED												
Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) U.S. : 700/94; 381/86, 77; 455/346,347; D14/434												
Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched												
Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used) Databases available through EAST (USPAT, US-PGPUB, EPO, JPO, DERWENT)												
C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT												
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.										
X	US 6,396,164 B1 (BARNEA ET AL) 28 May 2002 (28.05.2002), see entire document.	1,2,5,11-21,24-25,27-30,35-36,39-41										
Y		3,4,6-10,22-23,26,31-34,37-38,42-80										
Y, P	US 2003/0007649 A1 (RIGGS) 09 January 2003 (09.01.2003), paragraphs 0037-0040 and 0092-0099.	4,26,38,48-50,57,64,67,73-76, 79										
Y	US 6,157,725 A (BECKER) 05 December 2000 (05.12.2000), col. 4, lines 41-58; col. 6, lines 6-46; col 8, line 20-col. 10, line 58.	3,4,6,9-10,26,34-38,44,47-54,61-62,64,66-67,72,75-79										
Y	US 5,339,362 A (HARRIS) 16 August 1994 (16.08.1994), col. 3, line 25-col. 4, line 61 and Figures 2,3.	42-46,55-80										
Y	US 2001/0044664 A1 (MUELLER et al) 22 November 2001 (22.11.2001), paragraphs 0020-0028,0034-0035.	4,7-12,26,31-38,51-54,61-67,75-76										
Y	US 6,330,337 B1 (NICHOLSON) 11 December 2001 (11.12.2001), Figure 2 and col. 3, line 32-col. 4,1 line 28.	22-23,68,80										
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. <input type="checkbox"/> See patent family annex.												
* Special categories of cited documents: <table border="0"> <tr> <td>"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</td> <td>"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"E" earlier application or patent published on or after the international filing date</td> <td>"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</td> <td>"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</td> <td>"&" document member of the same patent family</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>			"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention	"E" earlier application or patent published on or after the international filing date	"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone	"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art	"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	"&" document member of the same patent family	"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	
"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention											
"E" earlier application or patent published on or after the international filing date	"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone											
"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art											
"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	"&" document member of the same patent family											
"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed												
Date of the actual completion of the international search 07 April 2004 (07.04.2004)		Date of mailing of the international search report 12 MAY 2004										
Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Mail Stop PCT, Attn: ISA/US Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450 Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230		Authorized officer Bill Isen <i>Rugenia Zogor</i> Telephone No. 703-305-3900										

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1998)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

PCT/US03/39493

C. (Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US 4,772,079 A (DOUGLAS et al) 20 September 1988 (20.09.1988), col. 3, lines 25-64.	42-46,55-80

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1998)

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

(PCT Article 18 and Rules 43 and 44)

Applicant's or agent's file reference 99879-00011	FOR FURTHER ACTION	see Form PCT/ISA/220 as well as, where applicable, item 5 below.
International application No. PCT/US06/08043	International filing date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 03 March 2006	(Earliest) Priority Date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 03 March 2005
Applicant IRA MARLOWE		

This international search report has been prepared by this International Searching Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 18. A copy is being transmitted to the International Bureau.

This international search report consists of a total of 4 sheets.

It is also accompanied by a copy of each prior art document cited in this report.

1. Basis of the report

- a. With regard to the **language**, the international search was carried out on the basis of:
- the international application in the language in which it was filed
 - a translation of the international application into _____, which is the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (Rules 12.3(a) and 23.1(b))
- b. With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, see Box No. I.
2. Certain claims were found unsearchable (see Box No. II)
3. Unity of invention is lacking (see Box No. III)
4. With regard to the **title**,
- the text is approved as submitted by the applicant
 - the text has been established by this Authority to read as follows:

5. With regard to the **abstract**,
- the text is approved as submitted by the applicant
 - the text has been established, according to Rule 38.2(b), by this Authority as it appears in Box No. IV. The applicant may, within one month from the date of mailing of this international search report, submit comments to this Authority

6. With regard to the **drawings**,
- a. the figure of the **drawings** to be published with the abstract is Figure No. 10
- as suggested by the applicant
 - as selected by this Authority, because the applicant failed to suggest a figure
 - as selected by this Authority, because this figure better characterizes the invention
- b. none of the figures is to be published with the abstract

Form PCT/ISA/210 (first sheet) (April 2005)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US06/08043

Box No. IV Text of the abstract (Continuation of item 5 of the first sheet)

An multimedia device integration system is provided. One or more aftermarket audio or video devices, such as a CD player, CD changer, digital media device (e.g., MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, portable music 5 center, or other device) satellite receiver (e.g., XM or Sirius receiver), DAB receiver, video device (e.g., DVD player), cellular telephone, or any other device or combinations thereof, is integrated for use with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo or video system, wherein control commands can be issued at the car stereo or video system and data from the after-market device can be displayed on the car stereo or video system. Control commands generated at the car stereo or video system are received, processed, converted into a format recognizable by the after-market device, and dispatched to the after-market device for execution.

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of first sheet (3)) (April 2005)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US06/08043

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER IPC(8) - H04B 1/06 (2007.01) USPC - 455/345 According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC		
B. FIELDS SEARCHED Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) IPC(8) - H04B 1/06 (2007.01) USPC - 455/345 Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used) MicroPatent		
C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X ---	US 2003/0215102 A1 (MARLOWE) 20 November 2003 (20.11.2003) entire document	1-4, 36 ----- 5-13
Y	US 2004/0145457 A1 (SCHOFIELD et al) 29 July 2004 (29.07.2004) entire document	5, 8, 11-13
Y	US 2004/0266336 A1 (PATSIOKAS et al) 30 December 2004 (30.12.2004) entire document	6, 7, 9, 10
A	US 6,529,804 B1 (DRAGGON et al) 04 March 2003 (04.03.2003) entire document	1-13, 36
<input type="checkbox"/> Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. <input type="checkbox"/>		
* Special categories of cited documents: "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance "E" earlier application or patent but published on or after the international filing date "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art "&" document member of the same patent family		
Date of the actual completion of the international search 25 July 2007		Date of mailing of the international search report <p align="center" style="font-size: 1.2em;">24 SEP 2007</p>
Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Mail Stop PCT, Attn: ISA/US, Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450 Facsimile No. 571-273-3201		Authorized officer: Blaine R. Copenheaver PCT Helpdesk: 571-272-4300 PCT OSP: 571-272-7774

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (April 2005)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US06/08043

This application contains the following inventions or groups of inventions which are not so linked as to form a single general inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1. In order for all inventions to be examined, the appropriate additional examination fees must be paid.

Group I, claims 1-13 and 36, drawn to controlling after-market-devices in a multimedia device integration system.

Group II, claims 14-31, drawn to protocol conversion in a multimedia device integration system.

Group III, claims 32-35, drawn to a method for retrieving a song from an after-market device from a car stereo system.

The inventions listed as Groups I, II, and III do not relate to a single general inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1 because, under PCT Rule 13.2, they lack the same or corresponding special technical features for the following reasons: the special technical feature of the Group I invention is means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the after-market device from the car multimedia system and displaying data from the aftermarket device and the display of the car multimedia system as claimed therein is not present in the invention of Groups II and III; the special technical feature of the Group II invention is selecting by an interface using settings of the plurality of configuration jumpers an at least one of a plurality protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from an after-market device into a format compatible with a car multimedia device system (and from the car multimedia system into a format compatible with the after-market device) as claimed therein is not present in the invention of Groups I and III; and the special technical feature of the Group III invention is allowing a user to select a desired song from the list of potentially matching songs for playing the desired song on the car stereo system as claimed therein is not present in the invention of Groups I and II.

Since none of the special technical features of the Group I, II and III inventions is found in more than one of the inventions, unity of invention is lacking.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

From the
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

PCT

WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

(PCT Rule 43bis.1)

To: MICHAEL R. FRISCIA MCCARTER & ENGLISH, LLP FOUR GATEWAY CENTER 100 MULBERRY STREET NEWARK, NEW JERSEY 07102		Date of mailing (day/month/year) 24 SEP 2007
Applicant's or agent's file reference 99879-00011		FOR FURTHER ACTION See paragraph 2 below
International application No. PCT/US06/08043	International filing date (day/month/year) 03 March 2006	Priority date (day/month/year) 03 March 2005
International Patent Classification (IPC) or both national classification and IPC IPC(8) - H04B 1/06 (2007.01) USPC - 455/345		
Applicant IRA MARLOWE		

1. This opinion contains indications relating to the following items:

- Box No. I Basis of the opinion
- Box No. II Priority
- Box No. III Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability
- Box No. IV Lack of unity of invention
- Box No. V Reasoned statement under Rule 43bis.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
- Box No. VI Certain documents cited
- Box No. VII Certain defects in the international application
- Box No. VIII Certain observations on the international application

2. **FURTHER ACTION**

If a demand for international preliminary examination is made, this opinion will be considered to be a written opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority ("IPEA") except that this does not apply where the applicant chooses an Authority other than this one to be the IPEA and the chosen IPEA has notified the International Bureau under Rule 66.1bis(b) that written opinions of this International Searching Authority will not be so considered.

If this opinion is, as provided above, considered to be a written opinion of the IPEA, the applicant is invited to submit to the IPEA a written reply together, where appropriate, with amendments, before the expiration of 3 months from the date of mailing of Form PCT/ISA/220 or before the expiration of 22 months from the priority date, whichever expires later.

For further options, see Form PCT/ISA/220.

3. For further details, see notes to Form PCT/ISA/220.

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Mail Stop PCT, Attn: ISA/US Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450 Facsimile No. 571-273-3201	Date of completion of this opinion 25 July 2007	Authorized officer: Blaine Copenheaver PCT Helpdesk: 571-272-4306 PCT OSP: 571-272-7774
---	--	--

Form PCT/ISA/237 (cover sheet) (April 2005)

WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

International application No.

PCT/US06/08043

Box No. I Basis of this opinion

1. With regard to the language, this opinion has been established on the basis of:
 - the international application in the language in which it was filed
 - a translation of the international application into _____, which is the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (Rules 12.3(a) and 23.1(b)).

2. With regard to any nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosed in the international application and necessary to the claimed invention, this opinion has been established on the basis of:
 - a. type of material
 - a sequence listing
 - table(s) related to the sequence listing

 - b. format of material
 - on paper
 - in electronic form

 - c. time of filing/furnishing
 - contained in the international application as filed
 - filed together with the international application in electronic form
 - furnished subsequently to this Authority for the purposes of search

3. In addition, in the case that more than one version or copy of a sequence listing and/or table(s) relating thereto has been filed or furnished, the required statements that the information in the subsequent or additional copies is identical to that in the application as filed or does not go beyond the application as filed, as appropriate, were furnished.

4. Additional comments:

WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

International application No.

PCT/US06/08043

Box No. IV Lack of unity of invention

1. In response to the invitation (Form PCT/ISA/206) to pay additional fees the applicant has, within the applicable time limit:
- paid additional fees
 - paid additional fees under protest and, where applicable, the protest fee
 - paid additional fees under protest but the applicable protest fee was not paid
 - not paid additional fees

2. This Authority found that the requirement of unity of invention is not complied with and chose not to invite the applicant to pay additional fees.

3. This Authority considers that the requirement of unity of invention in accordance with Rule 13.1, 13.2 and 13.3 is

- complied with
- not complied with for the following reasons:

This application contains the following inventions or groups of inventions which are not so linked as to form a single general inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1. In order for all inventions to be examined, the appropriate additional examination fees must be paid.

Group I, claims 1-13 and 36, drawn to controlling after-market-devices in a multimedia device integration system.

Group II, claims 14-31, drawn to protocol conversion in a multimedia device integration system.

Group III, claims 32-35, drawn to a method for retrieving a song from an after-market device from a car stereo system.

The inventions listed as Groups I, II, and III do not relate to a single general inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1 because, under PCT Rule 13.2, they lack the same or corresponding special technical features for the following reasons: the special technical feature of the Group I invention is means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the after-market device from the car multimedia system and displaying data from the aftermarket device and the display of the car multimedia system as claimed therein is not present in the invention of Groups II and III; the special technical feature of the Group II invention is selecting by an interface using settings of the plurality of configuration jumpers an at least one of a plurality protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from an after-market device into a format compatible with a car multimedia device system (and from the car multimedia system into a format compatible with the after-market device) as claimed therein is not present in the invention of Groups I and III; and the special technical feature of the Group III invention is allowing a user to select a desired song from the list of potentially matching songs for playing the desired song on the car stereo system as claimed therein is not present in the invention of Groups I and II.

Since none of the special technical features of the Group I, II and III inventions is found in more than one of the inventions, unity of invention is lacking.

4. Consequently, this opinion has been established in respect of the following parts of the international application:

- all parts
- the parts relating to claims Nos. 1-13, 36

**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY**

International application No.

PCT/US06/08043

Box No. V Reasoned statement under Rule 43bis.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement

1. Statement

Novelty (N)	Claims	5-13	YES
	Claims	1-4, 36	NO
Inventive step (IS)	Claims	NONE	YES
	Claims	1-13, 36	NO
Industrial applicability (IA)	Claims	1-13, 36	YES
	Claims	NONE	NO

2. Citations and explanations:

Claims 1-4 and 36 lack novelty under PCT Article 33(2) as being anticipated by Marlowe (US 2003/0215102 A1).

Regarding claim 1, Marlowe discloses a multimedia device integration system comprising: a car stereo (par. 0039, existing car radio or stereo) system; an after-market device (par. 0038, after-market CD player) external to the car stereo system; an interface (Fig. 1, interface 20) positioned within the car stereo system and connected between the car stereo system and the after-market device for exchanging data and audio signals between the car stereo system and the after-market device; means for processing and dispatching commands (par. 0055, dispatches the formatted command to the CD player) for controlling the after-market device from the car stereo system in a format compatible with the after-market device; and means for processing and displaying data (par. 0055, display the formatted data on the display of the car stereo) from the after-market device (par. 0038, after-market CD player) on a display of the car stereo system in a format compatible with the car stereo system.

Regarding claim 2, Marlowe (as discussed in lack of novelty of claim 1 above) discloses the after-market device comprises a CD player (par. 0038, after-market CD player).

Regarding claim 3, Marlowe (as discussed in lack of novelty of claim 2 above) discloses the digital media player comprises an MP3 player (par. 0038, after-market MP3 player).

Regarding claim 4, Marlowe (as discussed in lack of novelty of claim 1 above) further discloses one or more auxiliary input sources (Fig. 1, auxiliary inputs 35) connected to the interface.

Regarding claim 36, Marlowe discloses a multimedia device integration system comprising: a car audiovisual system (par. 0039, existing car radio or stereo); a plurality of after-market devices (Fig. 1, par. 0038, MP3 player, satellite receiver, DAB receiver, or the like) external to the car audiovisual system; an interface (Fig. 1, interface 20) connected between the car audiovisual system and the plurality of after-market devices for exchanging data, audio, and video signals between the car audiovisual system and the plurality of after-market devices; means for processing and dispatching commands (par. 0038 and par. 0055, dispatches the formatted command to the CD player or other after-market devices) for controlling the plurality of after-market devices from the car audiovisual system in at least one format compatible with at least one of the plurality of after-market devices; and means for processing and displaying data (par. 0038 and par. 0055, display the formatted command to the CD player or other after-market devices on the car stereo) from the plurality of after-market devices on a display of the car audiovisual system in a format compatible with the car audiovisual system.

Claims 5, 8 and 11-13 lack an inventive step under PCT Article 33(3) as being obvious over Marlowe (US 2003/0215102 A1) in view of Schofield et al (US 2004/0145457 A1; hereinafter Schofield).

Regarding claim 5, Marlowe discloses a multimedia device integration system comprising: a car stereo system (par. 0039, existing car radio or stereo); a CD player (par. 0038, after-market CD player) external to the car stereo system; an interface (Fig. 1, interface 20) connected between the car stereo system and the CD player for exchanging data and audio signals between the car stereo system and the cellular telephone; means for processing and dispatching commands (par. 0055, dispatches the formatted command to the CD player) for controlling the CD player from the car stereo system in a format compatible with CD player; and means for processing and displaying data (par. 0055, display the formatted data on the display of the car stereo) from the CD player (par. 0038, after-market CD player) on a display of the car stereo system in a format compatible with the car stereo system. Marlowe lacks a cellular telephone as an after-market device. However, Schofield discloses, in the art of multimedia system, a cellular telephone as an after-market device (Par. 272, cellular phone). Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of invention to include a cellular telephone as an after-market device in the device of Marlowe as taught by Schofield in order to enhance the utility of the multimedia device.

(Continued in Supplemental Box)

Form PCT/ISA/237 (Box No. V) (April 2005)

WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

International application No.

PCT/US06/08043

Supplemental Box

In case the space in any of the preceding boxes is not sufficient.

Continuation of:

Box No. V

2. Citations and explanations:

Regarding claim 8, Marlowe discloses a multimedia device integration system comprising: a car stereo system (par. 0039, existing car radio or stereo); a CD player (par. 0038, after-market CD player) external to the car stereo system; an interface (Fig. 1, interface 20) connected between the car stereo system and the CD player for exchanging data and audio signals between the car stereo system and the cellular telephone; means for processing and dispatching commands (par. 0055, dispatches the formatted command to the CD player) for controlling the CD player from the car stereo system in a format compatible with CD player; and means for processing and displaying data (par. 0055, display the formatted data on the display of the car stereo) from the CD player (par. 0038, after-market CD player) on a display of the car stereo system in a format compatible with the car stereo system. Marlowe lacks a car video system and a cellular telephone as an after-market device. However, Schofield discloses, in the art of multimedia system, a car video system (par. 0398, car video display system) and a cellular telephone as an after-market device ((Par. 272, cellular phone) in order to enhance utility of multimedia device. Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of invention to include a car video system and a cellular telephone as an after-market device in the device of Marlowe as taught by Schofield in order to enhance the utility of the multimedia device.

Regarding claim 11, Marlowe discloses a multimedia device integration system comprising: a car stereo system (par. 0039, existing car radio or stereo); a CD player (par. 0038, after-market CD player) external to the car stereo system; an interface (Fig. 1, interface 20) connected between the car stereo system and the CD player for exchanging data and audio signals between the car stereo system and the cellular telephone; means for processing and dispatching commands (par. 0055, dispatches the formatted command to the CD player) for controlling the CD player from the car stereo system in a format compatible with CD player; and means for processing and displaying data (par. 0055, display the formatted data on the display of the car stereo) from the CD player (par. 0038, after-market CD player) on a display of the car stereo system in a format compatible with the car stereo system. Marlowe lacks a car video system and video device as an after-market device. However, Schofield discloses, in the art of multimedia system, a car video system (par. 0380, vehicular video display system) and video device as an after-market device (Par. 380, camera device). Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of invention to include a car video system and video device as an after-market device in the device of Marlowe as taught by Schofield in order to enhance the utility of the multimedia device.

Regarding claim 12, Marlowe (as discussed in lack of inventive step of claim 11 above) disclose the CD player (par. 0038, after-market CD player) on a display of the car stereo system in a format compatible with the car stereo system. Marlowe lacks the after-market video device comprises a DVD player. However, Schofield discloses, in the art of multimedia system, the after-market video device comprises a DVD player (par. 309, after-market of display element associated with DVD player (par. 0311, DVD video system)). Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of invention to include the after-market video device comprises a DVD player in the device of Marlowe as taught by Schofield in order to enhance the utility of the multimedia device.

Regarding claim 13, Marlowe (as discussed in lack of inventive step of claim 11 above) disclose the CD player (par. 0038, after-market CD player) on a display of the car stereo system in a format compatible with the car stereo system. Marlowe lacks the interface is positioned within the car video system. However, Schofield discloses, in the art of multimedia system, the interface is positioned within the car video system (par. 0302, interface associated with control 3580 of car video system). Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of invention to include the interface is positioned within the car video system in the device of Marlowe as taught by Schofield in order to enhance utility of multimedia device.

Claims 6, 7, 9 and 10 lack an inventive step under PCT Article 33(3) as being obvious over Marlowe (US 2003/0215102 A1) in view of Patsiokas et al (US 2004/0266336 A1; hereinafter Patsiokas).

Regarding claims 6 and 9, Marlowe in view of Schofield (as discussed in lack of inventive step of claims 5 and 8 above) further discloses songs or music downloadable through the CD player (par. 0042, play song from CD player). Marlowe lacks songs or music downloadable through the cellular telephone. However, Patsiokas discloses, in the art of multimedia system, songs or music downloadable through the cellular telephone (par. 0064, download song file over the cellular phone). Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time of invention to include songs or music downloadable through the cellular telephone in the device of Marlowe in view of Schofield as taught by Patsiokas in order to enhance utility of multimedia device.

Regarding claims 7 and 10, Marlowe (as discussed in lack of inventive step of claims 6 and 9 above) discloses the songs or music are playable through the car stereo system (par. 0039, existing car radio or stereo) using the interface (Fig. 1, interface 20).

Claims 1-13 and 36 meet the criteria set out in PCT Article 33(4), and thus have industrial applicability because the subject matter claimed can be made or used in industry.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY REPORT ON PATENTABILITY
(Chapter I of the Patent Cooperation Treaty)

(PCT Rule 44bis)

Applicant's or agent's file reference 99879-00011	FOR FURTHER ACTION		See item 4 below
International application No. PCT/US2006/008043	International filing date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 03 March 2006 (03.03.2006)	Priority date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 03 March 2005 (03.03.2005)	
International Patent Classification (8th edition unless older edition indicated) See relevant information in Form PCT/ISA/237			
Applicant MARLOWE, Ira			

1. This international preliminary report on patentability (Chapter I) is issued by the International Bureau on behalf of the International Searching Authority under Rule 44 bis.1(a).

2. This REPORT consists of a total of 6 sheets, including this cover sheet.

In the attached sheets, any reference to the written opinion of the International Searching Authority should be read as a reference to the international preliminary report on patentability (Chapter I) instead.

3. This report contains indications relating to the following items:

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Box No. I	Basis of the report
<input type="checkbox"/>	Box No. II	Priority
<input type="checkbox"/>	Box No. III	Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Box No. IV	Lack of unity of invention
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Box No. V	Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
<input type="checkbox"/>	Box No. VI	Certain documents cited
<input type="checkbox"/>	Box No. VII	Certain defects in the international application
<input type="checkbox"/>	Box No. VIII	Certain observations on the international application

4. The International Bureau will communicate this report to designated Offices in accordance with Rules 44bis.3(c) and 93bis.1 but not, except where the applicant makes an express request under Article 23(2), before the expiration of 30 months from the priority date (Rule 44bis .2).

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland Facsimile No. +41 22 338 82 70	Date of issuance of this report 16 October 2007 (16.10.2007)
	Authorized officer Nora Lindner e-mail: pt02.pct@wipo.int

Form PCT/IB/373 (January 2004)

AUSTRALIAN PATENT OFFICE

WRITTEN OPINION

Applicant's or agent's file reference LPN/LWC/NJ/M.2006001623		Date of mailing <i>day/month/year</i> 28 AUG 2007
		REPLY DUE within FIVE MONTHS of the date of the Registrar's letter enclosing the written opinion
Application No. SG 200601303-1	Application Filing Date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 28 February 2006	Priority Date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 3 March 2005
International Patent Classification (IPC) (as indicated in the search report) Int. Cl. H04B 1/00 (2006.01) G06F 17/00 (2006.01) H04B 3/00 (2006.01)		
Applicant IRA M. MARLOWE		

1. This First written opinion consists of a total of 6 sheets.

2. This opinion contains indications relating to the following items:

- I Basis of the opinion
- II Priority
- III Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability
- IV Lack of unity of invention
- V Reasoned statement with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
- VI Certain documents cited
- VII Certain defects in the application
- VIII Certain observations on the application

3. The search report used was issued by the **Australian Patent Office**, and the date of completion is: **28 August 2006**

4. If no reply is filed, the examination report will be established on the basis of this opinion.

5. The date by which the examination report will be established is: **3 June 2008**

Name and mailing address AUSTRALIAN PATENT OFFICE PO BOX 200, WODEN ACT 2606, AUSTRALIA E-mail address: pct@ipaustralia.gov.au Facsimile no. 61 2 62853929	Authorized Officer JUZER KHANBHAI
--	---

I. Basis of the opinion

1. This opinion has been drawn on the basis of:

- the application as originally filed.
- the description, pages , as originally filed,
pages , filed with the request,
pages , received on with the letter of
- the claims, pages , as originally filed,
pages , filed with the request,
pages , received on with the letter of
- the drawings, sheets/fig. , as originally filed,
sheets/fig. , filed with the request,
sheets/fig. , received on with the letter of
- the sequence listing part of the description:
pages , as originally filed
pages , filed with the demand
pages , received on with the letter of

2. The amendments have resulted in the cancellation of: pages:
sheets of drawings/figures No :

3. This opinion has been established as if (some of) the amendments had not been made, since they have been considered to go beyond the disclosure as filed, as indicated in the Supplemental Box.

4. Additional observations, if necessary:

IV. Lack of unity of invention**1. This Office found multiple invention in this application, as follows:**

The application does not comply with the requirements of unity of invention because it does not relate to one invention or to a group of inventions so linked as to form a single general inventive concept. In coming to this conclusion this Office has found that there are two inventions:

1. Claims 1-31 & 36 are directed to a multimedia device integration system including an interface which allows devices to be integrated to an OEM or after-market car stereo and video systems. It is considered that allowing the integration of devices to an OEM or after-market car stereo and video systems comprises a first "special technical feature".
2. Claims 32-35 are directed to a method for retrieving a song from an after-market device from a car stereo system and which allows the user to select a desired song from the list of potentially matching songs for playing the desired song on the car stereo system. It is considered that allowing the selection of a desired song from the list of potentially matching songs for playing the desired song on the car stereo system comprises a second "special technical feature".

Since the abovementioned groups of claims do not share either of the technical features identified, a "technical relationship" between the inventions, as defined in PCT Rule 13.2 does not exist. Accordingly, the application does not relate to one invention or to a single inventive concept.

2. Consequently, the following parts of the application were the subject of examination in establishing this report:

- all parts.
- the parts relating to claims Nos. **1-31 & 36**

V. Reasoned statement with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement

1. Statement

Novelty (N)	Claims 5-7	YES
	Claims 1-4, 8-31, 36	NO
Inventive step (IS)	Claims -	YES
	Claims 1-31, 36	NO
Industrial applicability (IA)	Claims 1-31, 36	YES
	Claims -	NO

2. Citations and explanations

NOVELTY (N) claims 1-4, 8-31, 36

D1 - WO 2004/053722 A1 (BLITZSAFE OF AMERICA, INC.) 24 June 2004

D1 discloses an Audio device integration system wherein one or more after-market devices, such as a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, DAB receiver, or the like is integrated for use with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system. In this system, control commands can be issued at the car stereo and responsive data from the audio device can be displayed on the stereo.

The above citation D1 discloses all of the features of all the above claims. For example, the features of claim 1, see:

- A multimedia device integration system fig. 1 and Page 10 line 11
 - a car stereo system Page 10 lines 1 to 2 and lines 13 & 14
 - an after-market device external to car stereo system Page 10 line 25
 - an interface positioned within the car stereo system Page 10 line 30 to Page 11 line 1
- and connected between the car stereo system and the after-market device for exchanging data and audio signals between the car stereo system and the after-market device

INVENTIVE STEP (IS) claims 1-31, 36

Claims 1-4, 8-31, 36: as above.

Claims 5-7:

D1- WO 2004/053722 A1 (BLITZSAFE OF AMERICA, INC.) 24 June 2004

D2- US 2002/0197954 A1 (SCHMITT et al.) 26 December 2002

D3- US 6058319 A (SADLER) 2 May 2000

D4- US 6052603 A (KINZALOW et al.) 18 April 2000

These citations do not individually disclose all of the features of the claims, but when combined, as would be obvious to a person skilled in the art, disclose all of the features of the claims.

Supplemental Box

(To be used when the space in any of Boxes I to VIII is not sufficient)

Continuation of Box [No.]: V (2)

Claims 1-13, 24, 27, 28, 31, 36:

D5- US 2003/0007649 A1 (RIGGS) 9 January 2003

D6- US 6396164 B1 (BARNEA et al.) 28 May 2002

D7- US 6330337 B1 (NICHOLSON et al.) 11 December 2001

D8- US 2001/0044664 A1 (MUELLER et al.) 22 November 2001

D9- US 6157725 A (BECKER) 5 December 2000

These citations do not individually disclose all of the features of the claims, but when combined, as would be obvious to a person skilled in the art, disclose all of the features of the claims.

VIII. Certain observations on the application

The following observations on the clarity of the claims, description, and drawings or on the question whether the claims are fully supported by the description, are made:

The claimed invention is patentable according to Section 13(2); or

The claimed invention is unpatentable according to Section 13(2) because:

This application is a Divisional application filed under Section 26(6) of the Patents Act and discloses no additional matter extending beyond that disclosed in the Parent application.

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

(PCT Article 18 and Rules 43 and 44)

Applicant's or agent's file reference 99879-00028	FOR FURTHER ACTION see Form PCT/ISA/220 as well as, where applicable, item 5 below.	
International application No. PCT/US07/72182	International filing date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 27 June 2007 (27.06.2007)	(Earliest) Priority Date (<i>day/month/year</i>) 27 June 2006 (27.06.2006)
Applicant MARLOWE, IRA		

This international search report has been prepared by this International Searching Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 18. A copy is being transmitted to the International Bureau.

This international search report consists of a total of 3 sheets.

It is also accompanied by a copy of each prior art document cited in this report.

1. **Basis of the Report**

a. With regard to the **language**, the international search was carried out on the basis of:

the international application in the language in which it was filed.

a translation of the international application into _____, which is the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (Rules 12.3(a) and 23.1(b))

b. This international search report has been established taking into account the **rectification of an obvious mistake** authorized by or notified to this Authority under Rule 91 Rule 43.6 *bis(a)*

c. With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, see Box No. I.

2. **Certain claims were found unsearchable** (See Box No. II)

3. **Unity of invention is lacking** (See Box No. III)

4. With regard to the **title**,

the text is approved as submitted by the applicant.

the text has been established by this Authority to read as follows:

5. With regard to the **abstract**,

the text is approved as submitted by the applicant.

the text has been established, according to Rule 38.2(b), by this Authority as it appears in Box No. IV. The applicant may, within one month from the date of mailing of this international search report, submit comments to this Authority.

6. With regard to the **drawings**,

a. the figure of the **drawings** to be published with the abstract is Figure No. 1

as suggested by the applicant.

as selected by this Authority, because the applicant failed to suggest a figure.

as selected by this Authority, because this figure better characterizes the invention.

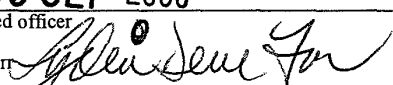
b. none of the figures is to be published with the abstract.

Form PCT/ISA/210 (first sheet) (April 2007)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US07/72182

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER		
IPC: H04B 1/00 (2006.01); G05B 19/02 (2006.01); G06F 17/00 (2006.01)		
USPC: 381/86;340/825.24;700/94		
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC		
B. FIELDS SEARCHED		
Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) U.S. : 381/86; 340/825.24,825.25; 700/94; 307/9.1,10.1; 455/345,346; 710/303,304; 348/207.1,207.11		
Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched		
Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)		
C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	US 6,163,079 (Miyazaki et al) 19 Dec. 2000 (19.12.2000), figure 7	91
Y	US 2002/0084910 A1 (Owens et al) 4 July 2002 (04.07.2002), fig.1	1-70,111-154
Y	US 6,993,615 B2 (Falcon) 31 Jan 2006 (31.01.2006), fig.2-4	1-90, 117-154
Y	US 6,175,789 B1 (Beckert et al) 16 Jan 2001 (16.01.2001), fig.1-2	1-70,78-80,88-90,117-150
Y	US 6,389,560 B1 (Chew) 14 May 2002 (14.05.2002), col.4-5	1-90,92-110,117-154
Y	US 2003/0026440 A1 (Lazzeroni et al) 6 Feb 2003 (06.02.2003), fig.1	13,32,52,68,92-116
Y	US 2005/0172001 A1 (Zaner et al) 4 Aug 2005 (04.08.2005), fig.1	92-103
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. <input type="checkbox"/> See patent family annex.		
* Special categories of cited documents:		
"A"	document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
"E"	earlier application or patent published on or after the international filing date	"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
"L"	document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
"O"	document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	"&" document member of the same patent family
"P"	document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	
Date of the actual completion of the international search 12 September 2008 (12.09.2008)		Date of mailing of the international search report 25 SEP 2008
Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Mail Stop PCT, Attn: ISA/US Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450 Facsimile No. (571) 273-3201		Authorized officer Jason Kurr  Telephone No. (571) 272-0552

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (April 2007)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US07/72182

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US 2003/0156200 A1 (Romano et al) 21 Aug 2003 (21.08.2003), fig.7	104-110
Y	US 7,288,918 B2 (DiStefano) 30 Oct 2007 (30.10.2007), fig.1	151-154

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of second sheet) (April 2007)

PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

From the
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

To:
MICHAEL R. FRISCIA
MCCARTER & ENGLISH, LLP
FOUR GATEWAY CENTER
100 MULBERRY STREET
NEWARK, NJ 07102

PCT

WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

(PCT Rule 43bis.1)

Applicant's or agent's file reference 99879-00028		Date of mailing (day/month/year) 25 SEP 2008
International application No. PCT/US07/72182		FOR FURTHER ACTION See paragraph 2 below
International filing date (day/month/year) 27 June 2007 (27.06.2007)	Priority date (day/month/year) 27 June 2006 (27.06.2006)	
International Patent Classification (IPC) or both national classification and IPC IPC: H04B 1/00 (2006.01); G05B 19/02 (2006.01); G06F 17/00 (2006.01) USPC: 381/86;340/825.24;700/94		
Applicant MARLOWE, IRA		

1. This opinion contains indications relating to the following items:

- Box No. I Basis of the opinion
- Box No. II Priority
- Box No. III Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability
- Box No. IV Lack of unity of invention
- Box No. V Reasoned statement under Rule 43bis.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
- Box No. VI Certain documents cited
- Box No. VII Certain defects in the international application
- Box No. VIII Certain observations on the international application


2. FURTHER ACTION

If a demand for international preliminary examination is made, this opinion will be considered to be a written opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority ("IPEA") except that this does not apply where the applicant chooses an Authority other than this one to be the IPEA and the chosen IPEA has notified the International Bureau under Rule 66.1bis(b) that written opinions of this International Searching Authority will not be so considered.

If this opinion is, as provided above, considered to be a written opinion of the IPEA, the applicant is invited to submit to the IPEA a written reply together, where appropriate, with amendments, before the expiration of 3 months from the date of mailing of Form PCT/ISA/220 or before the expiration of 22 months from the priority date, whichever expires later.

For further options, see Form PCT/ISA/220.

3. For further details, see notes to Form PCT/ISA/220.

Name and mailing address of the ISA/ US Mail Stop PCT, Attn: ISA/US Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450 Facsimile No. (571) 273-3201	Date of completion of this opinion 12 September 2008 (12.09.2008)	Authorized officer Jason Kurt  Telephone No. (571) 272-0552
--	--	--

Form PCT/ISA/237 (cover sheet) (April 2007)

WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

International application No.

PCT/US07/72182

Box No. I Basis of this opinion

1. With regard to the **language**, this opinion has been established on the basis of:
- the international application in the language in which it was filed
 - a translation of the international application into _____, which is the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (Rules 12.3(a) and 23.1(b)).
2. This opinion has been established taking into account the **rectification of an obvious mistake** authorized by or notified to this Authority under Rule 91 (Rule 43bis.1(a))
3. With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, this opinion has been established on the basis of:
- a. type of material
 - a sequence listing
 - table(s) related to the sequence listing
 - b. format of material
 - on paper
 - in electronic form
 - c. time of filing/furnishing
 - contained in the international application as filed.
 - filed together with the international application in electronic form.
 - furnished subsequently to this Authority for the purposes of search.
4. In addition, in the case that more than one version or copy of a sequence listing and/or table(s) relating thereto has been filed or furnished, the required statements that the information in the subsequent or additional copies is identical to that in the application as filed or does not go beyond the application as filed, as appropriate, were furnished.
5. Additional comments:

Form PCT/ISA/237(Box No. I) (April 2007)

**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY**

International application No.

PCT/US07/72182

Box No. VIII Certain observations on the international application

The following observations on the clarity of the claims, description, and drawings or on the questions whether the claims are fully supported by the description, are made:

Claim 10 is objected to under PCT Rule 66.2(a)(v) as lacking clarity under PCT Article 6 because claim 10 is indefinite for the following reason(s): Claim 10 may not depend upon itself. For the purposes of examination the Examiner has view claim 10 as if it were dependent upon claim 1.

WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

International application No.
PCT/US07/72182

Supplemental Box

In case the space in any of the preceding boxes is not sufficient.

V. 2. Citations and Explanations:

Claim 91 lacks novelty under PCT Article 33(2) as being anticipated by Miyazaki et al (US 6,163,079).

With respect to claim 91, Miyazaki discloses a docking station for docking and integrating a portable device for use with a car stereo, comprising: a base portion (fig.7 #50); a bottom member (fig.1 #11) connected to the base portion; a top member (fig.7 #17) removably connected to the base portion, the base portion, bottom member, and top member defining a cavity (fig.7 #51) for receiving a portable device; and an integration device (fig.7 #38) connected to the base portion for integrating the portable device with a car stereo.

Claims 1-12, 14-31, 33-51, 53-67, 69-70 and 117-150 lack an inventive step under PCT Article 33(3) as being obvious over Owens et al (US 2002/0084910 A1) in view of Beckert (US 6,175,789 B1) and in view of Chew (US 6,389,560) and in view of Falcon (US 6,993,615 B2).

With respect to claims 1, 20, 117, 132, 147 Owens discloses a multimedia device integration system comprising: a car audio system (fig.1 #10) having a display; a portable device (fig.1 #42,44,46,48) external to the car audio system; an interface (fig.1 #30,40) in communication with the portable device and the car audio system for transmitting processed video information from the portable device to the car audio system.

Owens does not disclose expressly wherein an integration subsystem processes the video information into a format compatible with the car audio system. Beckert discloses a vehicle computer interface system in cooperation with a vehicles audio system that allows for the operation of incompatible devices (col.1 ln.63-67, col.2 ln.1-30). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to use the compatibility processing of Beckert in the interface of Owens. The motivation for doing so would have been allow for a consumer to use external devices from different companies with the car stereo.

Owens does not disclose expressly wherein an integration subsystem generates a device presence signal for maintaining the car audio system in a state responsive to the portable device. Chew discloses a integration subsystem (fig.1 #17,18) for connecting a plurality of external devices to a computing system wherein the subsystem transmits a presence signal ("port number") to the computing system as an indication of a connected external device (col.4 ln.58-67, col.5 ln.1-14). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to include the integration subsystem of Chew in the interface of Owens. The motivation for doing so would have been to notify the car audio system of a newly attached or detached external device.

Owens does not disclose expressly wherein the interface communicates wirelessly. Falcon discloses an interfacing system (fig.2 #142,146) for communication a portable device (fig.4 #102) with a car audio system (fig.4 #200) wherein the communication is of a

Form PCT/ISA/237 (Supplemental Box) (April 2007)

**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY**

International application No.
PCT/US07/72182

Supplemental Box

In case the space in any of the preceding boxes is not sufficient.

wireless nature (col.3 ln.65-67, col.4 ln.1-15). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to allow the portable device of Owens to communicate with the car audio system wirelessly. The motivation for doing so would have been to allow a user to move the portable device about the cabin of the vehicle. Falcon also discloses that the portable device may be charged when docked to the audio system (col.3 ln.56-64).

With respect to claims 39, 55 Owens discloses a multimedia device integration system comprising: a car audio/video system (fig.1 #10); a portable device (fig.1 #42,44,46,48) external to the car audio system; an integration system (fig.1 #30,40) in communication with the portable device and the car audio system for transmitting processed information from the portable device to the car audio system. Owens does not disclose expressly wherein an integration subsystem processes the information into a format compatible with the car audio system. Beckert discloses a vehicle computer interface system in cooperation with a vehicles audio system that allows for the operation of incompatible devices (col.1 ln.63-67, col.2 ln.1-30). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to use the compatibility processing of Beckert in the interface of Owens. The motivation for doing so would have been allow for a consumer to use external devices from different companies with the car stereo.

Owens does not disclose expressly wherein an integration subsystem generates a device presence signal for maintaining the car audio system in a state responsive to the portable device. Chew discloses a integration subsystem (fig.1 #17,18) for connecting a plurality of external devices to a computing system wherein the subsystem transmits a presence signal ("port number") to the computing system as an indication of a connected external device (col.4 ln.58-67, col.5 ln.1-14). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to include the integration subsystem of Chew in the interface of Owens. The motivation for doing so would have been to notify the car audio system of a newly attached or detached external device.

Owens does not disclose expressly wherein the system comprises a docking slot formed in the car stereo for receiving the portable device. Falcon discloses an interfacing system (fig.2 #142,146) for communication a portable device (fig.4 #102) with a car audio system (fig.4 #200) wherein system comprises a docking slot formed in the car stereo for receiving the portable device (col.3 ln.65-67, col.4 ln.1-15). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to use the docking slot of Falcon in the car audio system of Owens. The motivation for doing so would have been to provide a stable mount for the portable device.

With respect to claims 2-3, 21-22, 40-42, 56-58, 118-120, 133-135, 149-150, Owens discloses wherein the integration system processes data into a format compatible with the car audio system (Beckert: col.1 ln.63-67, col.2 ln.1-30) and dispatches commands to the external devices (Owens: pg.2 [0034]) for execution thereby.

With respect to claims 4-6, 23-25, 43-45, 59-61, Owens discloses wherein the integration system is responsive to voice commands (Beckert: col.4 ln.17-32).

With respect to claims 7-8, 26-27, 46-47, 62-63, Owens discloses wherein the car audio system comprises an OEM and after-market car audio system (Owens: fig.1 #10).

With respect to claims 9-10, 28-29, 48-49, 64-65, Owens discloses wherein the portable device comprises a portable receiver (Owens: fig.1 #46).

With respect to claims 11-12, 30-31, 50-51, 66-67, Owens discloses wherein the portable device comprises a portable digital media player (Falcon: fig.3 #102).

With respect to claims 14-16, 33-35, Owens discloses wherein the system comprises a non-wireless connection (Owens: fig.1) and wherein the interface is within the portable device and the car audio system (Falcon: fig.2 #142,146).

With respect to claims 17-19, 36-38, Owens discloses wherein the video information is stored, a picture and comprises a TV signal (Owens: fig.1 #42,44).

With respect to claims 53, 54, 69-70, Owens discloses wherein the interface is within the portable device and the car audio system (Falcon: fig.2 #142,146).

With respect to claim 121-122, 136-137, Owens discloses where the system further comprises a communications port allowing communication between the interface and the portable audio device (Owens: fig.8 #40), and wherein the communication port is USB (Beckert: fig.2 #70).

With respect to claims 123-124, 138-139, see the rejection of claim 117 above (Falcon: fig.2).

With respect to claim 125-128, 140-143, Owens discloses wherein the transmitted signals are recorded by the portable device and the car audio system (Falcon: col.6 ln.54-60).

With respect to claims 129-131, 144-146, Owens discloses wherein the interface comprises a microchip (Owens: fig.9 :Master Processor).

With respect to claim 148, Owens discloses wherein the charging circuit comprises first and second inductive charging circuits associated with the interface and the portable device (Falcon: col.3 ln.56-64).

Claims 13, 32, 52 and 68 lack an inventive step under PCT Article 33(3) as being obvious over Owens et al (US 2002/0084910 A1) in view of Beckert (US 6,175,789 B1) and in view of Chew (US 6,389,560) and in view of Falcon (US 6,993,615 B2) in view of Lazzeroni (US 2003/0026440 A1).

With respect to claims 13, 32, 52, 68, Owens discloses the system of claim 1 however does not disclose expressly wherein the portable device is a cell phone. Lazzeroni discloses an integration system comprising a cell phone (fig.1 #110). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art integrate a cell phone into the audio system of Owens. The motivation for doing so would have been to allow a user receive phone calls through the car audio system.

Form PCT/ISA/237 (Supplemental Box) (April 2007)

International application No.
PCT/US07/72182**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY****Supplemental Box**

In case the space in any of the preceding boxes is not sufficient.

Claims 71-77 and 81-87 lack an inventive step under PCT Article 33(3) as being obvious over Falcon (US 6,993,615 B2) in view of Chew (US 6,389,560).

With respect to claims 71, 81 Falcon discloses a method for wirelessly integrating a portable device (fig.4 #102) for use with a car audio/video system (fig.4 #200) comprising: establishing a wireless communications link between the car audio system and the portable device (col.3 ln.65-67, col.4 ln.1-15); processing video information into a format compatible with the car audio/video system (col.4 ln.25-42) and transmitting the processed video information generated by the portable device to the car audio/video system (col.9 ln.13-24 "map"), displaying the processed video information and playing the audio signals over the car stereo system.

Owens does not disclose expressly wherein an integration subsystem generates a device presence signal for maintaining the car audio system in a state responsive to the portable device. Chew discloses an integration subsystem (fig.1 #17,18) for connecting a plurality of external devices to a computing system wherein the subsystem transmits a presence signal ("port number") to the computing system as an indication of a connected external device (col.4 ln.58-67, col.5 ln.1-14). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to include the integration subsystem of Chew in the interface of Owens. The motivation for doing so would have been to notify the car audio system of a newly attached or detached external device.

With respect to claims 72-77, 82-87, Falcon discloses wherein the integration system processes data into a format compatible with the car audio system and dispatches commands to the external devices for execution thereby (Falcon: col.3 ln.65-67, col.4 ln.1-42).

Claims 78-80 and 88-90 lack an inventive step under PCT Article 33(3) as being obvious over Falcon (US 6,993,615 B2) in view of Chew (US 6,389,560) in view of Beckert (US 6,175,789 B1).

With respect to claims 78-80, 88-90, Falcon does not disclose expressly receiving spoken control commands. Beckert discloses a method of integrating a portable device with a car audio system wherein spoken commands are received to control the portable device and car audio system (Beckert: col.4 ln.17-32). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to use the voice input system of Beckert in the integration system of Falcon. The motivation for doing so would be to supply a user with a hands free control of the system.

Claims 92-103 lack an inventive step under PCT Article 33(3) as being obvious over Zaner et al (US 2005/0172001 A1) in view of Lazzeroni et al (US 2003/0026440 A1) in view of Chew (US 6,389,560).

With respect to claim 92, Zaner discloses a multimedia device integration system comprising: a audiovisual system (fig.1 #106,108) having a display associated therewith; a cellular telephone (fig.1 #102,104) external to the car audiovisual system, the cellular telephone including a receiver for receiving a broadcast radio transmission transmitted to the cell phone; and an interface in communication with the car audiovisual system that processes the broadcast radio transmission into a format compatible with the audiovisual system, and transmits the processed radio transmission to the audio visual system for playing (pg.2 [0022]).

Zaner does not disclose expressly wherein the audio visual system is a car audiovisual system. Lazzeroni discloses an integration system for integrating a cell phone with a car audio visual system (pg.3 [0043]). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to allow the cell phone of Zaner to communicate with a car audio system as taught by Lazzeroni. The motivation for doing so would have been to communicate information received by a cell phone to the audio system of a vehicle. Zaner does not disclose expressly wherein an integration subsystem generates a device presence signal for maintaining the car audio system in a state responsive to the portable device. Chew discloses an integration subsystem (fig.1 #17,18) for connecting a plurality of external devices to a computing system wherein the subsystem transmits a presence signal ("port number") to the computing system as an indication of a connected external device (col.4 ln.58-67, col.5 ln.1-14). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to include the integration subsystem of Chew in the interface of Zaner. The motivation for doing so would have been to notify the car audio system of a newly attached or detached external device.

With respect claims 93-98, Zaner discloses wherein the broadcast radio transmission comprises a satellite radio transmission, live radio transmission, streamed audio, video transmission, live video transmission, streamed video transmission (Zaner: pg.2 [0031]).

With respect to claims 99-100, Zaner discloses wherein the received information is processed into a format compatible with the audiovisual system (pg.2 [0032]).

With respect to claims 101-103, Zaner discloses wherein the cell phone receives navigational information (pg.5 [0069]).

Claims 104-110 lack an inventive step under PCT Article 33(3) as being obvious over Romano et al (US 2003/0156200 A1) in view of Lazzeroni et al (US 2003/0026440 A1) in view of Chew (US 6,389,560).

With respect to claim 104, Romano discloses a multimedia device integration system comprising: a visual system (fig.7), a digital camera (fig.7 #332) external to the visual system, and an interface (fig.7 #342) for processing and transmitting signals in a format compatible with the visual system for display upon the visual system.

Romano does not disclose expressly wherein the visual system is a car audiovisual system. Lazzeroni discloses an integration system for integrating an external device with a car audio visual system (pg.3 [0043]). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to allow the digital camera of Romano to communicate with a car audio system as taught

Form PCT/ISA/237 (Supplemental Box) (April 2007)

**WRITTEN OPINION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY**

International application No.
PCT/US07/72182

Supplemental Box

In case the space in any of the preceding boxes is not sufficient.

by Lazzeroni. The motivation for doing so would have been to communicate information stored on the camera to the audio system of a vehicle.

Romano does not disclose expressly wherein an integration subsystem generates a device presence signal for maintaining the car audio system in a state responsive to the portable device. Chew discloses a integration subsystem (fig.1 #17,18) for connecting a plurality of external devices to a computing system wherein the subsystem transmits a presence signal ("port number") to the computing system as an indication of a connected external device (col.4 ln.58-67, col.5 ln.1-14). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to include the integration subsystem of Chew in the interface of Romano. The motivation for doing so would have been to notify the car audio system of a newly attached or detached external device.

With respect to claims 105-106, Romano discloses wherein the transmitted data is controlled by the visual system, wherein the data is processed into a format compatible with the visual system (Romano: pg.2 [0024]).

With respect to claims 107-110, Romano discloses wherein the data is a video image (pg.3 [0030]).

Claims 111-116 lack an inventive step under PCT Article 33(3) as being obvious over Lazzeroni et al (US 2003/0026440 A1) in view of Owens et al (US 2002/0084910 A1).

With respect to claim 111, Lazzeroni discloses a multimedia device integration system comprising: a car audio visual system (fig.1 #100); a portable navigation device (fig.1 #112) external to the car audio visual system and an interface (fig.1 #120) in electrical communication with the car audiovisual system and the portable device, wherein interface processes data from the navigational unit and transmits them to the car audiovisual system.

Lazzeroni does not disclose expressly wherein the interface transmits video signals to the audio visual system for display. Owens discloses an integration device that transmits video data through car audiovisual system (pg.3 [0037]). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to display available auxiliary selections such as "GPS" on the head unit of a car audio system. The motivation for doing so would have been to allow a user a visual display of available auxiliary units.

With respect to claim 112, Lazzeroni discloses wherein the data is processed into a format compatible with the car audio visual system (Lazzeroni: pg.5 [0058]).

With respect to claim 113-116, Lazzeroni discloses wherein the data comprises a map and audio signal for reproduction (Lazzeroni: fig.1 #112).

Claims 151-154 lack an inventive step under PCT Article 33(3) as being obvious over Owens et al (US 2002/0084910 A1) in view of Chew (US 6,389,560) and in view of Falcon (US 6,993,615 B2) in view of DiStefano (US 7,288,918 B2).

With respect to claims 151 Owens discloses a multimedia device integration system comprising: a car audio system (fig.1 #10) having a display; a portable device (fig.1 #42,44,46,48) external to the car audio system; an interface (fig.1 #30,40) in communication with the portable device and the car audio system for transmitting processed video information from the portable device to the car audio system. Owens does not disclose expressly wherein an integration subsystem generates a device presence signal for maintaining the car audio system in a state responsive to the portable device. Chew discloses a integration subsystem (fig.1 #17,18) for connecting a plurality of external devices to a computing system wherein the subsystem transmits a presence signal ("port number") to the computing system as an indication of a connected external device (col.4 ln.58-67, col.5 ln.1-14). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to include the integration subsystem of Chew in the interface of Owens. The motivation for doing so would have been to notify the car audio system of a newly attached or detached external device.

Owens does not disclose expressly wherein the interface communicates wirelessly. Falcon discloses an interfacing system (fig.2 #142,146) for communication a portable device (fig.4 #102) with a car audio system (fig.4 #200) wherein the communication is of a wireless nature (col.3 ln.65-67, col.4 ln.1-15). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to allow the portable device of Owens to communicate with the car audio system wirelessly. The motivation for doing so would have been to allow a user to move the portable device about the cabin of the vehicle. Falcon also discloses that the portable device may be charged when docked to the audio system (col.3 ln.56-64).

Falcon does not disclose expressly wherein the charging circuit charges the portable device wirelessly. DiStefano discloses a wireless battery charging circuit (fig.1). At the time of the invention it would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in the art to use the wireless battery charging circuit of DiStefano in the invention of Falcon in combination with Owens. The motivation for doing so would have been to charge the portable device when not docked to the car audio system.

With respect to claim 152, Owens discloses wherein the charging circuit comprises first and second inductive charging circuits associated with the interface and the portable device (Falcon: col.3 ln.56-64).

With respect to claims 153-154, Owens discloses wherein the integration system processes data into a format compatible with the car audio system (Beckert: col.1 ln.63-67, col.2 ln.1-30) and dispatches commands to the external devices (Owens: pg.2 [0034]) for execution thereby.

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	4931022
Application Number:	11475847
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	9001
Title of Invention:	Multimedia device integration system
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Ira Marlowe
Customer Number:	27614
Filer:	Mark E. Nikolsky/Diane Bodzioch
Filer Authorized By:	Mark E. Nikolsky
Attorney Docket Number:	99879-00026
Receipt Date:	09-MAR-2009
Filing Date:	27-JUN-2006
Time Stamp:	17:03:03
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Deposit Account
Payment was successfully received in RAM	\$1175
RAM confirmation Number	2784
Deposit Account	503571
Authorized User	

The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows:

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.19 (Document supply fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Miscellaneous Incoming Letter	Transmittal_001.pdf	46453	no	1
			036d22f20f356946405ff1cb1188d5e7ffcea596		
Warnings:					
Information:					
2	Response to Election / Restriction Filed	Response_001.pdf	718773	no	22
			6320c282f86170cc3c4d9ff2c5fc4b1716f3a438		
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Extension of Time	ExtensionPetition_001.pdf	59109	no	1
			3c6edc7466d8ae83eaf50cd025a8a95a07b537ef		
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed (SB/08)	IDS_001.pdf	694831	no	9
			17891d3a2257a77043b77a0e114a614042d704c6		
Warnings:					
Information:					
This is not an USPTO supplied IDS fillable form					
5	Foreign Reference	Ref20.pdf	5136983	no	129
			45bd9200a80aae56b540cf17bdd938a3c2a09abf		
Warnings:					
Information:					
6	Foreign Reference	Ref21.pdf	3750900	no	108
			66cd68b966c600c7161f58b13ca2e0029bc3383e		
Warnings:					
Information:					
7	Foreign Reference	Ref22.pdf	2859364	no	71
			863a37dbaacf7f5c702e98a7749009b2a3d8bff1		
Warnings:					
Information:					

8	Foreign Reference	Ref23.pdf	48125	no	2
			665c24bafcc351a58daa042fe47c6f0fe1d5810e		
Warnings:					
Information:					
9	Foreign Reference	Ref24.pdf	50181	no	1
			9f42f8cc2a0d2d7b93effd8e39435c95b05f93e6		
Warnings:					
Information:					
10	Foreign Reference	Ref25.pdf	3250394	no	30
			4f88f73a2103c21a8e1dbb88d4e0f85cb53752f5		
Warnings:					
Information:					
11	Foreign Reference	Ref29.pdf	7658095	no	55
			7e1b5f89a43a10bcfe01358d60ebd3489c1f4979		
Warnings:					
Information:					
12	NPL Documents	Ref30.pdf	28021	no	1
			8bea338dc002262d452e85a291371907bc853b72		
Warnings:					
Information:					
13	NPL Documents	Ref31.pdf	49553	no	2
			4204f9d8d68dfda013a7ff9410bd7b14f43e41b2		
Warnings:					
Information:					
14	NPL Documents	Ref32.pdf	40317	no	1
			9e97d26651ce1f3c421a35a3b9fe34e2c3915667		
Warnings:					
Information:					
15	NPL Documents	Ref33.pdf	101356	no	3
			c86f443d17900dd5458c2b97831957db4fc682e8		
Warnings:					
Information:					
16	NPL Documents	Ref34.pdf	181688	no	4
			06133f898b990f5d80386a1533c154aabab96cf4		
Warnings:					
Information:					

17	NPL Documents	Ref35.pdf	24733	no	1
			d120233cbac7f996ffffe89d708b2f6d3c3d31f7		
Warnings:					
Information:					
18	NPL Documents	Ref36.pdf	20537	no	1
			94a7c1fb8ec9b8dcd2147109b51d318b80a7c12		
Warnings:					
Information:					
19	NPL Documents	Ref37.pdf	19633	no	1
			949a16a22b6ea902141224d0501cb219620d993		
Warnings:					
Information:					
20	NPL Documents	Ref38.pdf	377705	no	7
			76ff010dab62d539a8c56ee61115a7d1000adb2		
Warnings:					
Information:					
21	NPL Documents	Ref39.pdf	22481	no	1
			3db7f878a8b5b3df8efef7f4463603a3b9d3e939		
Warnings:					
Information:					
22	NPL Documents	Ref40.pdf	80445	no	1
			46dff0155f6e5fe27a350d1cec999eaa9d84702d		
Warnings:					
Information:					
23	NPL Documents	Ref41.pdf	51789	no	1
			4b65be876bd7f7a35afa250486aab08446fe09a		
Warnings:					
Information:					
24	NPL Documents	Ref42.pdf	36157	no	1
			81dc638948f6607ca578a1e56a3e82e050aa8d07		
Warnings:					
Information:					
25	NPL Documents	Ref43.pdf	206143	no	2
			16630e71165f92134cfd0c77e2396741c44593d		
Warnings:					
Information:					

26	NPL Documents	Ref44.pdf	124745	no	3
			8156878cdbeabc944470fc7a93579b27896aa4ff		
Warnings:					
Information:					
27	NPL Documents	Ref45.pdf	16709	no	1
			1eac5b0661fac62643d57e53682ce30f2db207dc		
Warnings:					
Information:					
28	NPL Documents	Ref46.pdf	166548	no	4
			131b306adfa04e286323aa9f9551cbf407d86e14		
Warnings:					
Information:					
29	NPL Documents	Ref47.pdf	60465	no	1
			617cc035249b6d877ca129d683a6827852c8ad89		
Warnings:					
Information:					
30	NPL Documents	Ref48.pdf	27941	no	1
			f1527fde973dfe173f3e25585bf48a27d1922cc4		
Warnings:					
Information:					
31	NPL Documents	Ref49.pdf	27597	no	1
			7c1312dd01ffecdb33d974242c41491d94bab080		
Warnings:					
Information:					
32	NPL Documents	Ref50.pdf	25393	no	1
			c067c664ba894cb02189f0c0c4fd667f84bfd6		
Warnings:					
Information:					
33	NPL Documents	Ref51.pdf	2561906	no	40
			89136bbbd02c18d3b59b30acb6c955dd6c101187		
Warnings:					
Information:					
34	NPL Documents	Ref52.pdf	3251937	no	51
			1bafd59c7bbad86db4b592213c540a839a7e6be6		
Warnings:					
Information:					

35	NPL Documents	Ref53.pdf	4520801	no	69
			a313d44af296b837780e1d837be39aa7ca59e470		
Warnings:					
Information:					
36	NPL Documents	Ref54.pdf	4403445	no	71
			aae733a7044d930fe7da8b723662a7f7f309cc0		
Warnings:					
Information:					
37	NPL Documents	Ref55.pdf	3447032	no	52
			4c691fd4fc7f9dabfe8b8fc3079dce1d5c7bec38		
Warnings:					
Information:					
38	NPL Documents	Ref56.pdf	60789	no	4
			0849a047e62f12c98c03d95be0d5a473c81e83c2		
Warnings:					
Information:					
39	NPL Documents	Ref57.pdf	59359	no	4
			ed71c02015f1ff2874219d59073437c7e4a7c620		
Warnings:					
Information:					
40	NPL Documents	Ref58.pdf	710704	no	29
			3ea802b077227469c42ed637f52a5f0d37e7cb56		
Warnings:					
Information:					
41	NPL Documents	Ref59.pdf	49272	no	3
			0f60d7f1e304838693bd10ebc6711365e53afc6d		
Warnings:					
Information:					
42	NPL Documents	Ref60.pdf	50776	no	3
			88e0b62d0b30e3e29814825307ebe68346cdaabe		
Warnings:					
Information:					
43	NPL Documents	Ref61.pdf	487654	no	20
			24df30a28d7bb84d72771cc17c77b94f412a488		
Warnings:					
Information:					

44	NPL Documents	Ref62.pdf	727194	no	28
			ab1c73b225920d4f8cceb1978d938d6519276d2		
Warnings:					
Information:					
45	NPL Documents	Ref63.pdf	52588	no	3
			6923913218154b3aec35a7b0920aa19bbf93eb4f		
Warnings:					
Information:					
46	NPL Documents	Ref64.pdf	126093	no	4
			8f28c1398ac7a82f4c5d5dae69279885b698ae97		
Warnings:					
Information:					
47	NPL Documents	Ref65.pdf	121422	no	4
			645500ddbce4075b99ad13a129338bf4000d8f		
Warnings:					
Information:					
48	NPL Documents	Ref66.pdf	228980	no	5
			848a90fae009da4c8be8ce6e60f983440be6f25		
Warnings:					
Information:					
49	NPL Documents	Ref67.pdf	36903	no	1
			9aa1de439ab82ce849b99d790090d8c50d899203		
Warnings:					
Information:					
50	NPL Documents	Ref68.pdf	859301	no	21
			42003494980987451fab02b3bcae2e258a6921ce		
Warnings:					
Information:					
51	NPL Documents	Ref69.pdf	155178	no	6
			ada22cc0a41f932ae992e9305c5a82088a40b4a1		
Warnings:					
Information:					
52	NPL Documents	Ref70.pdf	141718	no	3
			e69fc98ab4d4de8adff5230a2db5323d8ad97c3b0		
Warnings:					
Information:					

53	NPL Documents	Ref71.pdf	459849	no	7
			f781759cccc32ca0d7a80a54778d6c0f1e0e e980		
Warnings:					
Information:					
54	NPL Documents	Ref72.pdf	2137943	no	33
			cfb99442a94a3b40824eaa5c8e8b8865968 0a4ba		
Warnings:					
Information:					
55	NPL Documents	Ref73.pdf	1025069	no	12
			519a0723b74994d568fb0dcf14608fa15bfe 190c		
Warnings:					
Information:					
56	NPL Documents	Ref74.pdf	720967	no	8
			2b6ce21a5955bd15490d755f2adeeb94d1d 20436		
Warnings:					
Information:					
57	NPL Documents	Ref75.pdf	1395102	no	20
			17b6b8c48996b3876effea909ef9ab1b0e51 5b5e		
Warnings:					
Information:					
58	Fee Worksheet (PTO-06)	fee-info.pdf	29905	no	2
			b817470685a6bc980a2438c32ff0b7dc9e10 4544		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			53785051		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:	11475847			
Filing Date:	27-Jun-2006			
Title of Invention:	Multimedia device integration system			
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Ira Marlowe			
Filer:	Mark E. Nikolsky			
Attorney Docket Number:	99879-00026			
Filed as Small Entity				
Utility under 35 USC 111(a) Filing Fees				
Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Basic Filing:				
Pages:				
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
Extension-of-Time:				
Extension - 5 months with \$0 paid	2255	1	1175	1175

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Miscellaneous:				
Total in USD (\$)				1175



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P. O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
11/475,847	06/27/2006	Ira Marlowe	99879-00026	9001
27614 7590 09/09/2008 MCCARTER & ENGLISH, LLP FOUR GATEWAY CENTER 100 MULBERRY STREET NEWARK, NJ 07102			EXAMINER KURR, JASON RICHARD	
			ART UNIT 2615	PAPER NUMBER
			MAIL DATE 09/09/2008	DELIVERY MODE PAPER

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Office Action Summary	Application No. 11/475,847	Applicant(s) MARLOWE, IRA	
	Examiner JASON R. KURR	Art Unit 2615	

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address --
Period for Reply

A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY IS SET TO EXPIRE 1 MONTH(S) OR THIRTY (30) DAYS, WHICHEVER IS LONGER, FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION.

- Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a). In no event, however, may a reply be timely filed after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, cause the application to become ABANDONED (35 U.S.C. § 133). Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing date of this communication, even if timely filed, may reduce any earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).

Status

- 1) Responsive to communication(s) filed on 27 June 2006.
- 2a) This action is **FINAL**. 2b) This action is non-final.
- 3) Since this application is in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11, 453 O.G. 213.

Disposition of Claims

- 4) Claim(s) 1-91 is/are pending in the application.
4a) Of the above claim(s) _____ is/are withdrawn from consideration.
- 5) Claim(s) _____ is/are allowed.
- 6) Claim(s) _____ is/are rejected.
- 7) Claim(s) _____ is/are objected to.
- 8) Claim(s) 1-91 are subject to restriction and/or election requirement.

Application Papers

- 9) The specification is objected to by the Examiner.
- 10) The drawing(s) filed on _____ is/are: a) accepted or b) objected to by the Examiner.
Applicant may not request that any objection to the drawing(s) be held in abeyance. See 37 CFR 1.85(a).
Replacement drawing sheet(s) including the correction is required if the drawing(s) is objected to. See 37 CFR 1.121(d).
- 11) The oath or declaration is objected to by the Examiner. Note the attached Office Action or form PTO-152.

Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119

- 12) Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).
a) All b) Some * c) None of:
1. Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
2. Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____.
3. Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this National Stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).
* See the attached detailed Office action for a list of the certified copies not received.

Attachment(s)

- 1) Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)
- 2) Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948)
- 3) Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO/SB/08)
Paper No(s)/Mail Date _____.
- 4) Interview Summary (PTO-413)
Paper No(s)/Mail Date. _____.
- 5) Notice of Informal Patent Application
- 6) Other: _____.

DETAILED ACTION

Election/Restrictions

Restriction to one of the following inventions is required under 35 U.S.C. 121:

- I. Claims 1-90, drawn to a system and method of integrating a portable device with a car audio/video system, classified in class 381, subclass 86.
- II. Claim 91, drawn to a docking station comprising a base portion, a bottom member and a top member, classified in class 710, subclass 303.

The inventions are distinct, each from the other because of the following reasons:

Inventions I and II are related as combination and subcombination. Inventions in this relationship are distinct if it can be shown that (1) the combination as claimed does not require the particulars of the subcombination as claimed for patentability, and (2) that the subcombination has utility by itself or in other combinations (MPEP § 806.05(c)). In the instant case, the combination (I) as claimed does not require the particulars of the subcombination (II) as claimed because the communication between the portable device and the car audio/video system is not solely based on a docking station having the structure described in the subcombination. The combination describes other means of communication such as wireless communication or a docking slot within the car audio/video system. The subcombination has separate utility such as providing power to a portable device.

The examiner has required restriction between combination and subcombination inventions. Where applicant elects a subcombination, and claims thereto are

subsequently found allowable, any claim(s) depending from or otherwise requiring all the limitations of the allowable subcombination will be examined for patentability in accordance with 37 CFR 1.104. See MPEP § 821.04(a). Applicant is advised that if any claim presented in a continuation or divisional application is anticipated by, or includes all the limitations of, a claim that is allowable in the present application, such claim may be subject to provisional statutory and/or nonstatutory double patenting rejections over the claims of the instant application.

Restriction for examination purposes as indicated is proper because all these inventions listed in this action are independent or distinct for the reasons given above and there would be a serious search and examination burden if restriction were not required because one or more of the following reasons apply:

- (a) the inventions have acquired a separate status in the art in view of their different classification;
- (b) the inventions have acquired a separate status in the art due to their recognized divergent subject matter;
- (c) the inventions require a different field of search (for example, searching different classes/subclasses or electronic resources, or employing different search queries);
- (d) the prior art applicable to one invention would not likely be applicable to another invention;
- (e) the inventions are likely to raise different non-prior art issues under 35 U.S.C. 101 and/or 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph.

This application contains claims directed to the following patentably distinct species of the claimed invention. If an election of group I is made, a further election of a related species must also be made.

Group I: Species 1 is drawn to the use of a first and second wireless interface as the communication means between the car audio/video system and the portable device, as in figures 18-19 and 22-23, claims 1-38 and 71-90.

Group I: Species 2 is drawn to the use of a docking slot as the communication means between the car audio/video system and the portable device, as in figures 20-21, claims 39-70.

Applicant is advised that the reply to this requirement to be complete must include (i) an election of a invention to be examined even though the requirement may be traversed (37 CFR 1.143) and (ii) identification of the claims encompassing the elected invention.

The election of an invention may be made with or without traverse. To reserve a right to petition, the election must be made with traverse. If the reply does not distinctly and specifically point out supposed errors in the restriction requirement, the election shall be treated as an election without traverse. Traversal must be presented at the time of election in order to be considered timely. Failure to timely traverse the requirement will result in the loss of right to petition under 37 CFR 1.144. If claims are added after the election, applicant must indicate which of these claims are readable on the elected invention.

Art Unit: 2615

If claims are added after the election, applicant must indicate which of these claims are readable upon the elected invention.

Should applicant traverse on the ground that the inventions are not patentably distinct, applicant should submit evidence or identify such evidence now of record showing the inventions to be obvious variants or clearly admit on the record that this is the case. In either instance, if the examiner finds one of the inventions unpatentable over the prior art, the evidence or admission may be used in a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) of the other invention.

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to JASON R. KURR whose telephone number is (571)272-0552. The examiner can normally be reached on M-F 10:00am to 6:30pm.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Vivian Chin can be reached on (571) 273-7848. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Art Unit: 2615

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see <http://pair-direct.uspto.gov>. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

/Jason R Kurr/
Examiner, Art Unit 2615

/Vivian Chin/
Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 2615

Index of Claims



Application/Control No.

11/475,847

Examiner

JASON R. KURR

Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination

MARLOWE, IRA

Art Unit

2615

✓	Rejected
=	Allowed

-	(Through numeral) Cancelled
+	Restricted


N	Non-Elected
I	Interference

A	Appeal
O	Objected

Claim		Date				
Final	Original	8/4/08				
1	+					
2						
3						
4						
5						
6						
7						
8						
9						
10						
11						
12						
13						
14						
15						
16						
17						
18						
19						
20						
21						
22						
23						
24						
25						
26						
27						
28						
29						
30						
31						
32						
33						
34						
35						
36						
37						
38						
39						
40						
41						
42						
43						
44						
45						
46						
47						
48						
49						
50	+					

Claim		Date				
Final	Original	8/4/08				
51	+					
52						
53						
54						
55						
56						
57						
58						
59						
60						
61						
62						
63						
64						
65						
66						
67						
68						
69						
70						
71						
72						
73						
74						
75						
76						
77						
78						
79						
80						
81						
82						
83						
84						
85						
86						
87						
88						
89						
90						
91	+					
92						
93						
94						
95						
96						
97						
98						
99						
100						

Claim		Date				
Final	Original					
101						
102						
103						
104						
105						
106						
107						
108						
109						
110						
111						
112						
113						
114						
115						
116						
117						
118						
119						
120						
121						
122						
123						
124						
125						
126						
127						
128						
129						
130						
131						
132						
133						
134						
135						
136						
137						
138						
139						
140						
141						
142						
143						
144						
145						
146						
147						
148						
149						
150						

Application Number 	Application/Control No. 11/475,847	Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination MARLOWE, IRA	
	Examiner JASON R. KURR	Art Unit 2615	



LFW

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Customer No. 27614

Mail Stop Amendment
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Examiner: Not Yet Assigned
Art Unit: 2618

Re: Our file: 99879-00026
Applicant: Ira Marlowe
Serial No.: 11/475,847
Filed: 06/27/2006
For: Multimedia Device Integration System

Sir:

Enclosed for filing in the United States Patent and Trademark Office is the following:

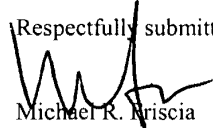
1. Transmittal of Information Disclosure Statement
2. Form PTO-1449 (12 pages)
3. Copies of References 10, 11, 21, 22, 32, 33, 40, 41, 47, 48 and 54-120 from Form PTO-1449
4. Transmittal Sheet
5. Postcard Receipt

CONDITIONAL PETITION

If any extension of time is required for the submission of the above-identified items, Applicant requests that this be considered a petition therefor. Please charge any additional charges or any other charges relating to this matter, or credit any overpayment, to the Deposit Account of the writer, **Account No. 503571**. A duplicate copy of this letter is enclosed.

2/16/07
Date

Respectfully submitted,


Michael R. Niscia
Registration No. 33,884
McCarter & English, LLP
Four Gateway Center
100 Mulberry Street
Newark, NJ 07102
Tel: (973) 639-8493
Fax: (973) 297-6627

Check One and Complete:

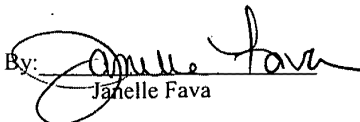
CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY EXPRESS MAIL

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service, postage prepaid, as "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee," Mailing Label No. _____ US to the Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 on _____.

By: _____

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY FIRST CLASS MAIL

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service, First Class Mail, postage prepaid, to Mail Stop Amendment, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 on 2/16/07.

By: 
Janelle Fava

**TRANSMITTAL OF INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
(Under 37 CFR 1.97(b) or 1.97(c))**

Docket No.
99879-00026

In Re Application Of: **Ira Marlowe**

Application No.	Filing Date	Examiner	Customer No.	Group Art Unit	Confirmation No.
11/475,847	06/27/2006	Not Yet Assigned	27614	2618	9001

Title: **Multimedia Device Integration System**



Address to:
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

37 CFR 1.97(b)

1. The Information Disclosure Statement submitted herewith is being filed within three months of the filing of a national application other than a continued prosecution application under 37 CFR 1.53(d); within three months of the date of entry of the national stage as set forth in 37 CFR 1.491 in an international application; before the mailing of a first Office Action on the merits, or before the mailing of a first Office Action after the filing of a request for continued examination under 37 CFR 1.114.

37 CFR 1.97(c)

2. The Information Disclosure Statement submitted herewith is being filed after the period specified in 37 CFR 1.97(b), provided that the Information Disclosure Statement is filed before the mailing date of a Final Action under 37 CFR 1.113, a Notice of Allowance under 37 CFR 1.311, or an Action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, and is accompanied by one of:

the statement specified in 37 CFR 1.97(e);

OR

the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(p).

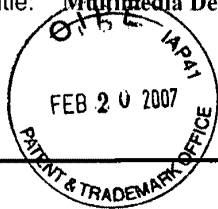
TRANSMITTAL OF INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
(Under 37 CFR 1.97(b) or 1.97(c))

Docket No.
99879-00026

In Re Application of: **Ira Marlowe**

Application No.	Filing Date	Examiner	Customer No.	Group Art Unit	Confirmation No.
11/475,847	06/27/2006	Not Yet Assigned	27614	2618	9001

Title: **Multimedia Device Integration System**



Payment of Fee

(Only complete if Applicant elects to pay the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(p))

- A check in the amount of _____ is attached.
- The Director is hereby authorized to charge and credit Deposit Account No. 503571 as described below.
 - Charge the amount of _____
 - Credit any overpayment.
 - Charge any additional fee required.
- Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.

WARNING: Information on this form may become public. Credit card information should not be included on this form. Provide credit card information and authorization on PTO-2038.

Certificate of Transmission by Facsimile*

I certify that this document and authorization to charge deposit account is being facsimile transmitted to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (Fa: _____)

(Date)

Signature

Typed or Printed Name of Person Signing Certificate

Certificate of Mailing by First Class Mail

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to "Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450" [37 CFR 1.8(a)] on

2/16/07
(Date)

Janelle Fava
Signature of Person Mailing Correspondence

Janelle Fava
Typed or Printed Name of Person Mailing Certificate

*This certificate may only be used if paying by deposit account.

[Signature]
Signature

Dated: 2/16/07

Michael R. Friscia
Registration No. 33,884
McCarter & English, LLP
Four Gateway Center
100 Mulberry Street
Newark, NJ 07102
Tel: (973) 639-8493
Fax: (973) 297-6627

cc:

Docket Number (Optional) 99879-00026	Application Number 11/475,847
Applicant(s) Ira Marlowe	
Filing Date 06/27/2006	Group Art Unit 2618

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION
(Use several sheets if necessary)



U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE
1	6,993,615	01/31/2006	Falcon	710	303	11/15/2002
2	6,629,164	09/30/2003	Bhogal, et al.	711	111	11/03/2000
3	6,653,948	11/25/2003	Kunimatsu, et al.	340	995.19	06/05/2000
4	6,648,661	11/18/2003	Byrne, et al.	439	188	11/08/2002
5	6,591,085	07/08/2003	Grady	455	42	07/17/2002

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS

*EXAMINER INITIAL	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE
	6	US 2005/0239434 A1	10/27/2002	Marlowe	455	345	03/03/2005
	7	US 2004/0151327 A1	08/05/2004	Marlowe	381	86	12/10/2003
	8	US 2004/0091123 A1	05/13/2004	Stark, et al.	381	86	11/08/2002
	9	US 2003/0215102 A1	11/20/2003	Marlowe	381	77	12/11/2002

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	Translation	
							YES	NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc.)

10	VoiceBox Technologies, printout from website http://www.voiceboxtechnologies.com/auto.php (2 pages).
11	"Video: A Dashboard That is Really a PC," printout from website http://news.com.com/1606-2_3-6052333.html (3 pages).

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
----------	-----------------

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP Section 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION <i>(Use several sheets if necessary)</i>	Docket Number (Optional) 99879-00026	Application Number 11/475,847
	Applicant(s) Ira Marlowe	
	Filing Date 06/27/2006	Group Art Unit 2618

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*EXAMINER INITIAL	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE
	12	6,396,164	05/28/2002	Barnea, et al.	307	10.1	10/20/1999
	13	6,389,332	05/14/2002	Hess, et al.	701	1	05/01/2000
	14	6,374,177	04/16/2002	Lee, et al.	701	200	09/20/2000
	15	6,346,917	02/12/2002	Fuchs, et al.	343	713	11/09/2000
	16	6,330,337	12/11/2001	Nicholson, et al.	381	86	01/19/2000

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS

*EXAMINER INITIAL	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE
	17	US 2003/0086699 A1	05/08/2003	Benyamin, et al.	386	96	02/15/2002
	18	US 2003/0053638 A1	03/20/2003	Yasuhara	381	86	09/13/2002
	19	US 2003/0007649 A1	01/09/2003	Riggs	381	86	06/14/2002
	20	US 2002/0197954 A1	12/26/2002	Schmitt, et al.	455	41	12/31/2001

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	Translation	
							YES	NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS *(Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc.)*

	21	"Blitz Safe Offers XM Cables for Radios," printout from website http://www.twice.com/article/CA190041.html?text=blitz+safe (2 pages)
	22	"Integration Products May Impact Satellite Radio," printout from website http://www.twice.com/article/CA200541.html?text=blitz+safe (3 pages)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
----------	-----------------

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP Section 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION <i>(Use several sheets if necessary)</i>	Docket Number (Optional)	99879-00026	Application Number	11/475,847
	Applicant(s)			
	Ira Marlowe			
Filing Date		06/27/2006	Group Art Unit	
			2618	

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*EXAMINER INITIAL	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE
	23	6,295,033	09/25/2001	Chatzipetros, et al.	343	713	05/25/1999
	24	6,278,697	08/21/2001	Brody, et al.	370	310	07/29/1997
	25	6,163,079	12/19/2000	Miyazaki, et al.	307	10.1	07/23/1998
	26	6,157,725	12/05/2000	Becker	381	86	12/10/1997
	27	6,058,319	05/02/2000	Sadler	455	569	03/05/1997

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS

*EXAMINER INITIAL	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE
	28	US 2002/0180767 A1	12/05/2002	Northway, et al.	345	698	06/04/2001
	29	US 2002/0133610 A1	09/19/2002	Hadland	709	230	05/03/2002
	30	US 2002/0091863 A1	07/11/2002	Schug	709	250	10/19/2001
	31	US 2002/0085730 A1	07/04/2002	Holland	381	334	11/19/2001

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	Translation	
						YES	NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS *(Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc.)*

	32	"OEM Integration Poised for Strong Growth," printout from website http://www.twice.com/article/CA200523.html?text=blitz+safe (3 pages)
	33	"Blitzsafe Overview," from Blitzsafe.com website-"The Worldwide Leader in Aftermarket Interfaces and OEM Engineering" (1 page).

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
----------	-----------------

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP Section 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION <i>(Use several sheets if necessary)</i>	Docket Number (Optional) 99879-00026	Application Number 11/475,847
	Applicant(s) Ira Marlowe	
	Filing Date 06/27/2006	Group Art Unit 2618

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*EXAMINER INITIAL	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE
	34	6,052,603	04/18/2000	Kinzalow, et al.	455	557	09/18/1997
	35	6,005,488	12/21/1999	Symanov, et al.	340	825.56	12/03/1997
	36	5,794,164	08/11/1998	Beckert, et al.	701	1	11/29/1995
	37	5,410,675	04/25/1995	Shreve, et al.	395	500	09/17/1993
	38	5,339,362	08/16/1994	Harris	381	86	01/07/1992

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS

*EXAMINER INITIAL	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE
	39	US 2001/0044664 A1	11/22/2001	Mueller, et al.	700	94	03/23/2001

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	Translation	
						YES	NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS *(Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc.)*

	40	"Delphi XM SKYFI(TM) RADIO," product description from XM Satellite Radio website (2 pages).
	41	The New Delphi XM SKYFi Radio Add it to Any Car or Home Audio System, product description from www.xmradio.com (1 page).

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
-----------------	------------------------

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP Section 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION <i>(Use several sheets if necessary)</i>	Docket Number (Optional) 99879-00026	Application Number 11/475,847
	Applicant(s) Ira Marlowe	
	Filing Date 06/27/2006	Group Art Unit 2618

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*EXAMINER INITIAL	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE
	42	4,943,978	07/24/1990	Rice	375	1	01/17/1989
	43	4,817,130	03/28/1989	Frimmel, Jr.	379	88	12/05/1986
	44	Re. 34,536	02/08/1994	Frimmel, Jr.	379	88	06/28/1990
	45	4,772,079	09/20/1988	Douglas, et al.	312	257	09/26/1986
	46	4,562,533	12/31/1985	Hodel, et al.	364	200	08/20/1984

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS

*EXAMINER INITIAL	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	Translation	
							YES	NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS *(Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc.)*

	47	Mobile Electronics: News, "Soundgate to Release New GM and BMW Interfaces," December 2, 2002, ME-Mag.com (1 page).
	48	"Welcome to Ventura Technology," from Venturatechnology.com (2 pages).

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
----------	-----------------

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP Section 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION <i>(Use several sheets if necessary)</i>	Docket Number (Optional) 99879-00026	Application Number 11/475,847
	Applicant(s) Ira Marlowe	
	Filing Date 06/27/2006	Group Art Unit 2618

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*EXAMINER INITIAL	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE
	49	4,234,919	11/18/1980	Bruce, et al.	364	200	10/31/1978
	50	4,091,455	05/23/1978	Woods, et al.	364	200	12/20/1976
	51	4,068,104	01/10/1978	Werth, et al.	179	175.3	05/14/1976
	52	4,047,162	09/06/1977	Dorey, et al.	364	200	04/28/1975
	53	3,940,743	02/24/1976	Fitzgerald	340	172.5	11/05/1973

U.S. PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS

*EXAMINER INITIAL	REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE IF APPROPRIATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

REF	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	Translation	
						YES	NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS *(Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc.)*

	54	Ventura Technology product descriptions from www.venturatechnology.net (1 page).
	55	"Phatnoise Digital Media Players," product description from http://www.phatnoise.com (2 pages).

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
----------	-----------------

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP Section 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION <i>(Use several sheets if necessary)</i>	Docket Number (Optional) 99879-00026	Application Number 11/475,847
	Applicant(s) Ira Marlowe	
	Filing Date 06/27/2006	Group Art Unit 2618

*EXAMINER INITIAL	OTHER DOCUMENTS <i>(Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc.)</i>
56	"Automedia," magazine pages from June/July 1996 issue (2 pages).
57	"Automedia," magazine pages from January 1998 issue (2 pages).
58	"Automedia," magazine pages from February 1998 issue (2 pages).
59	"Automedia," magazine pages from July 1998 issue (2 pages).
60	"Automedia," magazine pages from September 1998 issue (2 pages).
61	"Automedia," magazine pages from November 1998 issue (12 pages).
62	"Automedia," magazine pages from February 1999 issue (2 pages).
63	"Automedia," magazine pages from February 1999 issue (2 pages).
64	"Car Stereo Review," magazine pages from June 1998 issue (5 pages).
65	"Car Stereo Review," magazine pages from January 1999 issue (2 pages).
66	"Car Stereo Review," magazine pages from April 1999 issue (3 pages).
67	"Car Audio and Electronics," magazine pages from December 1998 issue (2 pages).

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
----------	-----------------

*EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP Section 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION <i>(Use several sheets if necessary)</i>		Docket Number (Optional) 99879-00026	Application Number 11/475,847
		Applicant(s) Ira Marlwe	
		Filing Date 06/27/2006	Group Art Unit 2618
*EXAMINER INITIAL	OTHER DOCUMENTS <i>(Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc.)</i>		
68	"Car Audio and Electronics," magazine pages from April 1999 issue (2 pages).		
69	"Car Audio and Electronics," magazine pages from June 1999 issue (2 pages).		
70	"Carsound," magazine pages from May/June 1999 issue (3 pages).		
71	"Mobile Electronics Retailer," magazine pages from August 1997 issue (4 pages).		
72	"Mobile Electronics," magazine pages from July 1999 issue (7 pages).		
73	"Mobile Electronics," magazine pages from August 2000 issue (2 pages).		
74	"Cesmobile," magazine pages from January 1999 issue (3 pages).		
75	"The 12 Volt News," magazine pages from March 2002 issue (2 pages).		
76	"P.I.E. Millennium Price Guide Make the Precision Decision," Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. (6 pages).		
77	"PIE 1999 Price Guide," Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. (4 pages).		
78	"Design & Engineering Showcase Award," award presented to Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. for DPX Technology Digital Protocol Converter FRDN/PC-KNW, 2000 International CES (1 page).		
79	"Design & Engineering Showcase Award," award presented to Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. for DPX Technology Digital Protocol Converter GM9/PC-KNW, 2000 International CES (1 page).		
EXAMINER		DATE CONSIDERED	
<small>*EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP Section 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.</small>			

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION <i>(Use several sheets if necessary)</i>	Docket Number (Optional) 99879-00026	Application Number 11/475,847
	Applicant(s) Ira Marlowe	
	Filing Date 06/27/2006	Group Art Unit 2618

*EXAMINER INITIAL	OTHER DOCUMENTS <i>(Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc.)</i>
80	Invoice dated January 28, 1998 from Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. for "Ford FCU-Sanyo Protocol," and "Ford RCU Sanyo Protocol" (1 page).
81	Invoice dated January 29, 1999 from Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. for "Ford NCU-Sanyo Protocol" (1 page).
82	Invoice dated April 26, 1999 from Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. for "9 Pin GM-Kenwood Protocol," and "10 Pin GM-Kenwood Protocol" (1 page).
83	Invoice dated April 27, 1999 from Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. for "9 Pin GM-Kenwood Protocol" (1 page).
84	Invoice dated May 27, 1999 from Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. for "10 Pin GM-Kenwood Protocol," and "9 Pin GM-Kenwood Protocol" (1 page).
85	Invoice dated March 20, 2000 from Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. for "98-2000 Pre-Wired VW 6 DIS" (1 page).
86	Invoice dated March 20, 2000 from Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. for "98-2000 Pre-Wired VW 8 DIS," and "1998-2000 Audi to Pan 8 PC" (1 page).
87	Invoice dated December 17, 2001 from Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. for "98-02 Ford/Lincoln/Mercury" (1 page).
88	Invoice dated December 17, 2001 from Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. for "98-02 Ford/Lincoln/Mercury" (1 page).
89	Invoice dated May 29, 2002 from Precision Interface Electronics, Inc. for "95-01 GMC/Chev/Pontiac AUX," and "98-02 Ford/Lincoln/Merc AU" (1 page).
90	Toyota/Avox Interface Rev. Eng., Peripheral Model TIAS, created February 15, 1998 (1 page).
91	GM/Kenwood Translator diagram, created February 4, 1999 (2 pages).

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
----------	-----------------

*EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP Section 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION <i>(Use several sheets if necessary)</i>	Docket Number (Optional) 99879-00026	Application Number 11/475,847
	Applicant(s) Ira Marlowe	
	Filing Date 06/27/2006	Group Art Unit 2618

*EXAMINER INITIAL	OTHER DOCUMENTS <i>(Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc.)</i>
92	Ford/Audiovox Translator diagram, created December 29, 1997 (2 pages).
93	Component Side Silkscreen, created December 31, 1997 (2 pages).
94	Component Xray, created February 4, 1992 (2 pages).
95	"SoundGate, Ventura Announce Sophisticated OEM-Integration Interfaces," article from The 12 Volt News, December 2002 (1 page).
96	"XMDirect Smart Digital Adapter," product description (3 pages).
97	"Breaking Protocol A Look at BlitzSafe's New DMX Protocol Converter Technology," November 1998 printout from http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/news101998/body_news101998.html (2 pages).
98	"PIE Virtual Catalog," printout from http://web.archive.org/web/19981205005802/http://www.pie.net/sec12sbl.htm (2 pages).
99	"The UniLink Project," printout from website (2 pages).
100	"CD Changer Interfaces," printout from http://web.archive.org/web/19991012021952/soundgate.com/cd-inter.html (1 page).
101	"Digital Obsessions A Spotlight on Audio Gadgetry, ZDNet Music: The PhatNoise Car Audio System," printout from http://web.archive.org/web/20000815203327/music.zdnet.com/features/phatnoise (3 pages).
102	"Bypassing and Switching With the CD4053 CMOS Analog MUX," printout from website (4 pages).
103	"Device Profile: PhatNoise PhatBox Car MP3 Player," November 1, 2000, printout from http://techupdate.zdnet.com/techupdate/stories/main/0,14179,2649276,00.htm (4 pages).

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
----------	-----------------

*EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP Section 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION <i>(Use several sheets if necessary)</i>		Docket Number (Optional) 99879-00026	Application Number 11/475,847
		Applicant(s) Ira Marlowe	
		Filing Date 06/27/2006	Group Art Unit 2618
*EXAMINER INITIAL	OTHER DOCUMENTS <i>(Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc.)</i>		
	104	"The EZ Protoboard," printout from http://web.archive.org/web/20010613095105/http://www.ajusd.org/~edward/ezproto (2 pages).	
	105	"TDIClub Forums: Reverse Engineering CD Changer Progress,," April 3, 2001, printout from website (3 pages).	
	106	"TDIClub Forums: Reverse Engineering CD Changer Progress Reports,," April 5, 2001, printout from website (8 pages).	
	107	"Multi Technology Equipment - Home of the Neo MP3 Player," printout from http://web.archive.org/web/20010413222617/ssiamerica.com/products/neo35/ (1 page).	
	108	"TDIClub Forums: Reverse Engineering CD Changer Protocol Update," April 18, 2001, printout from website (3 pages).	
	109	"The Car CD Changer Interface Page," printout from website (10 pages).	
	110	"SourceForge.net: Project Info - GNUlink," printout from http://sourceforge.net/projects/gnunilink/ (3 pages).	
	111	"EZ Protoboard News," printout from website (3 pages).	
	112	"GNUlink - For All Your AUX-IN Needs..., "printout from http://gnunilink.sourceforge.net/ (4 pages).	
	113	"VWCDPIC News, "printout from http://web.archive.org/web/20020701101541/http://www.ajusd.org/~edward/vwcdpic/ (8 pages).	
	114	"VWCDPIC News, "printout from http://web.archive.org/web/20021009014959/http://www.ajusd.org/~edward/vwcdpic/ (10 pages).	
	115	"Neo Car Jukebox MP3 Player," printout from website (3 pages).	
EXAMINER		DATE CONSIDERED	
*EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP Section 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.			



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(c) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
11/475,847	06/27/2006	Ira Marlowe	99879-00026

CONFIRMATION NO. 9001

27614
MCCARTER & ENGLISH, LLP
FOUR GATEWAY CENTER
100 MULBERRY STREET
NEWARK, NJ07102

Title: Multimedia device integration system

Publication No. US-2007-0015486-A1

Publication Date: 01/18/2007

NOTICE OF PUBLICATION OF APPLICATION

The above-identified application will be electronically published as a patent application publication pursuant to 37 CFR 1.211, et seq. The patent application publication number and publication date are set forth above.

The publication may be accessed through the USPTO's publically available Searchable Databases via the Internet at www.uspto.gov. The direct link to access the publication is currently <http://www.uspto.gov/patft/>.

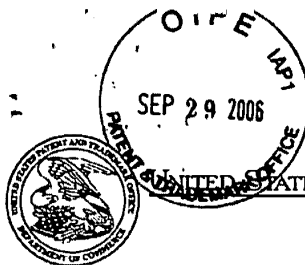
The publication process established by the Office does not provide for mailing a copy of the publication to applicant. A copy of the publication may be obtained from the Office upon payment of the appropriate fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.19(a)(1). Orders for copies of patent application publications are handled by the USPTO's Office of Public Records. The Office of Public Records can be reached by telephone at (703) 308-9726 or (800) 972-6382, by facsimile at (703) 305-8759, by mail addressed to the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Office of Public Records, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 or via the Internet.

In addition, information on the status of the application, including the mailing date of Office actions and the dates of receipt of correspondence filed in the Office, may also be accessed via the Internet through the Patent Electronic Business Center at www.uspto.gov using the public side of the Patent Application Information and Retrieval (PAIR) system. The direct link to access this status information is currently <http://pair.uspto.gov/>. Prior to publication, such status information is confidential and may only be obtained by applicant using the private side of PAIR.

Further assistance in electronically accessing the publication, or about PAIR, is available by calling the Patent Electronic Business Center at 703-305-3028.

Pre-Grant Publication Division, 703-605-4283

1PW



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
 United States Patent and Trademark Office
 Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
 P.O. Box 1450
 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
 www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371 (c) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER
11/475,847	06/27/2006	Ira Marlowe	99879-00026

27614
 MCCARTER & ENGLISH, LLP
 FOUR GATEWAY CENTER
 100 MULBERRY STREET
 NEWARK, NJ 07102

10/02/2006 WASFA01 00000027 11475847

01 FC:2011	150.00 OP
02 FC:2111	250.00 OP
03 FC:2311	100.00 OP
04 FC:2201	400.00 OP
05 FC:2202	1775.00 OP
06 FC:2051	65.00 OP
07 FC:2081	125.00 OP

CONFIRMATION NO. 9001
 FORMALITIES
 LETTER

Date Mailed: 07/25/2006

NOTICE TO FILE MISSING PARTS OF NONPROVISIONAL APPLICATION

FILED UNDER 37 CFR 1.53(b)

Filing Date Granted

Items Required To Avoid Abandonment:

An application number and filing date have been accorded to this application. The item(s) indicated below, however, are missing. Applicant is given **TWO MONTHS** from the date of this Notice within which to file all required items and pay any fees required below to avoid abandonment. Extensions of time may be obtained by filing a petition accompanied by the extension fee under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a).

- The statutory basic filing fee is missing.
Applicant must submit \$ 150 to complete the basic filing fee for a small entity.
- The oath or declaration is unsigned.

The applicant needs to satisfy supplemental fees problems indicated below.

The required item(s) identified below must be timely submitted to avoid abandonment:

- Additional claim fees of \$2175 as a small entity, including any required multiple dependent claim fee, are required. Applicant must submit the additional claim fees or cancel the additional claims for which fees are due.
- To avoid abandonment, a surcharge (for late submission of filing fee, search fee, examination fee or oath or declaration) as set forth in 37 CFR 1.16(f) of \$65 for a small entity in compliance with 37 CFR 1.27, must be submitted with the missing items identified in this letter.

SUMMARY OF FEES DUE:

Total additional fee(s) required for this application is \$2865 for a Small Entity

- \$150 Statutory basic filing fee.
- \$65 Surcharge.
- The application search fee has not been paid. Applicant must submit \$250 to complete the search fee.

- The application examination fee has not been paid. Applicant must submit **\$100** to complete the examination fee for a small entity in compliance with 37 CFR 1.27
- The specification and drawings contain more than 100 pages. Applicant owes **\$125** for **38** pages in excess of **100** pages for a small entity in compliance with 37 CFR 1.27.

- Total additional claim fee(s) for this application is **\$2175**
 - **\$400** for **4** independent claims over 3.
 - **\$1775** for **71** total claims over 20.

Replies should be mailed to: Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

*A copy of this notice **MUST** be returned with the reply.*

Ch. p. etis

Office of Initial Patent Examination (571) 272-4000, or 1-800-PTO-9199, or 1-800-972-6382
PART 2 - COPY TO BE RETURNED WITH RESPONSE



IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Customer No. 27614

Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Examiner: Not Yet Assigned
Art Unit: 2618

Re: Our file: 99879-00026
Applicant: Ira Marlowe
Serial No.: 11/475,847
Filed: 06/27/2006
For: Multimedia Device Integration System

Sir:

Enclosed for filing in the United States Patent and Trademark Office is the following:

1. Response to Notice to File Missing Parts of Application Filing Date Granted
2. Copy of Notice to File Missing Parts
3. Executed Declaration and Power of Attorney
4. Check in the amount of \$2,925.00
5. Transmittal Sheet
6. Postcard Receipt

CONDITIONAL PETITION

If any extension of time is required for the submission of the above-identified items, Applicant requests that this be considered a petition therefor. Please charge any additional charges or any other charges relating to this matter, or credit any overpayment, to the Deposit Account of the writer, **Account No. 503571**. A duplicate copy of this letter is enclosed.

9/27/06
Date

Respectfully submitted,

Michael R. Friscia
Registration No. 33,884
McCarter & English, LLP
Four Gateway Center
100 Mulberry Street
Newark, NJ 07102
Tel: (973) 639-8493
Fax: (973) 297-6627

Check One and Complete:

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY EXPRESS MAIL

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service, postage prepaid, as "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee," Mailing Label No. _____ US to the Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 on _____.

By: _____

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY FIRST CLASS MAIL

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service, First Class Mail, postage prepaid, to Mail Stop Missing Parts, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 on 9/27/06.

By:
Janelle Fava

.ME1\5864513.1

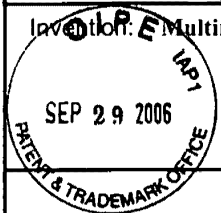
**Response To Notice To File Missing Parts Of Application -
Filing Date Granted (PTO-1533)(Small Entity)**

Docket No.
99879-00026

In Re Application Of: Ira Marlowe

Application No.	Filing Date	Examiner	Customer No.	Group Art Unit	Confirmation No.
11/475,847	06/27/2006	Not Yet Assigned	27614	2618	9001

Inventor: **IRI E** Multimedia Device Integration System



Mail Stop Missing Parts

COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS:

This is a response to the Notice to File Missing Parts of Application - Filing Date Granted (PTO-1533) mailed on
07/25/2006
Date

Enclosed herewith for filing are the following:

- A copy of the Notice to File Missing Parts of Application - Filing Date Granted (PTO-1533). **(REQUIRED)**
- An oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, including residence information and identifying the application by the above Application Number and Filing Date.
- A properly signed oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63.
- An oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63 listing the names of all inventors and signed by the omitted inventor(s), identifying this application by the above Application Number and Filing Date.
- A verified English translation of the non-English language application papers as originally filed. It is requested that this translation be used as the copy for examination purposes in the United States Patent and Trademark Office.
- _____ verified small entity declaration(s)
 - is/are attached.
 - was/were filed on _____
- A separate request for refund.
- Other (list):

Transmittal Sheet Postcard Receipt
10/02/2006 WASFAW1 00000027 11475847
08 F0:2251 60.00 DP

**Response To Notice To File Missing Parts Of Application
Filing Date Granted (PTO-1533) (Small Entity)**

Docket No.
99879-00026

In Re Application Of: Ira Marlowe

Application No.	Filing Date	Examiner	Customer No.	Group Art Unit	Confirmation No.
11/475,847	06/27/2006	Not Yet Assigned	27614	2618	9001

Invention: **Multimedia Device Integration System**


TO THE COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS:

Mail Stop Missing Parts

The fee of \$2,925.00 is to be paid as follows:

- A check in the amount of the fee is enclosed.
- The Director is hereby authorized to charge any fees which may be required, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 503571
- If an additional extension of time is required, please consider this a petition therefor and charge any additional fees which may be required to Deposit Account No. 503571
- Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.

WARNING: Information on this form may become public. Credit card information should not be included on this form. Provide credit card information and authorization on PTO-2038.


Signature

Michael R. Friscia
Registration No. 33,884
McCarter & English, LLP
Four Gateway Center
100 Mulberry Street
Newark, NJ 07102
Tel: (973) 639-8493
Fax: (973) 297-6627

Dated:

9/27/06

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to "Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450" [37 CFR 1.8(a)] on

9/27/06

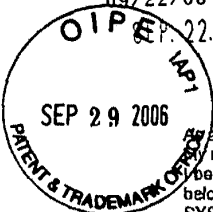
(Date)


Signature of Person Mailing Correspondence

Janelle Fava

Typed or Printed Name of Person Mailing Correspondence

cc:



SEP 22 2006 4:41PM

MCCARTER & ENGLISH

NO. 2087 P. 4 Attorney Docket No. 99879-00026

DECLARATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY (Patent, Design or C-I-P Application)

I, a below-named inventor, I hereby declare that: My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name. I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are stated below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled: MULTIMEDIA DEVICE INTEGRATION SYSTEM the specification of which

is attached hereto X was filed on June 27, 2006 as Application Serial No. 11/475,847 and was amended on (if applicable)

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above-entitled specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above. I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in 37 C.F.R. §1.56. I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under 35 U.S.C. §119(a)-(d) or §365(b) of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate, or §365(a) of any PCT International application which designated at least one country other than the United States, listed below and have also identified below, by checking the box, any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate, or PCT International application having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

PRIOR FOREIGN APPLICATION(S)

Table with 4 columns: COUNTRY, APPLICATION NO., DATE OF FILING (day, month, year), PRIORITY CLAIMED UNDER 35 U.S.C. 119 (YES/NO)

LISTING OF FOREIGN APPLICATIONS CONTINUED ON PAGE 2 HEREOF: YES NO

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. §119(e) of any United States provisional application(s) listed below.

(Application Serial No.)

(Filing Date)

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. §120 of any United States application(s), or §365(c) of any PCT International application designating the United States, listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application or PCT International application in the manner provided by the first page of 35 U.S.C. §112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in 37 C.F.R. §1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT International filing date of this application:

Table listing prior applications with columns for Application Serial No., Filing Date, and Status (patented, pending, abandoned)

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following attorney(s) and/or agent(s) to prosecute this application and transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith: RALPH W. SELITTO, JR., Reg. No. 26,908; MICHAEL R. FRISCIA, Reg. No. 33,884; JOHN K. KIM, Reg. No. 37,002; and all other practitioners associated with Customer Number 27614.

SEND CORRESPONDENCE TO: Michael R. Friscia, McCarter & English, LLP, Four Gateway Center, 100 Mulberry Street, Newark, NJ 07102. DIRECT TELEPHONE CALLS TO: (973) 639-8493

Table with 4 columns: Full Name of Inventor #1, Last Name, First Name, Middle Name, Residence & Citizenship, City, State or Foreign Country, Country of Citizenship, Post Office Address, Post Office Address, City, State or Country and Zip Code

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon.

Table for signatures and dates of inventors: Signature of Inventor #1, Signature of Inventor #2, Date: 9/22/2006

LISTING OF INVENTORS CONTINUED ON PAGE 2 HEREOF: YES NO X

BEST AVAILABLE COPY



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
 United States Patent and Trademark Office
 Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
 P.O. Box 1450
 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
 www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371 (c) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER
11/475,847	06/27/2006	Ira Marlowe	99879-00026

CONFIRMATION NO. 9001
FORMALITIES
LETTER

27614
 MCCARTER & ENGLISH, LLP
 FOUR GATEWAY CENTER
 100 MULBERRY STREET
 NEWARK, NJ 07102

Date Mailed: 07/25/2006

NOTICE TO FILE MISSING PARTS OF NONPROVISIONAL APPLICATION

FILED UNDER 37 CFR 1.53(b)

*Filing Date Granted***Items Required To Avoid Abandonment:**

An application number and filing date have been accorded to this application. The item(s) indicated below, however, are missing. Applicant is given **TWO MONTHS** from the date of this Notice within which to file all required items and pay any fees required below to avoid abandonment. Extensions of time may be obtained by filing a petition accompanied by the extension fee under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a).

- The statutory basic filing fee is missing.
Applicant must submit \$ 150 to complete the basic filing fee for a small entity.
- The oath or declaration is unsigned.

The applicant needs to satisfy supplemental fees problems indicated below.

The required item(s) identified below must be timely submitted to avoid abandonment:

- Additional claim fees of **\$2175** as a small entity, including any required multiple dependent claim fee, are required. Applicant must submit the additional claim fees or cancel the additional claims for which fees are due.
- To avoid abandonment, a surcharge (for late submission of filing fee, search fee, examination fee or oath or declaration) as set forth in 37 CFR 1.16(f) of \$65 for a small entity in compliance with 37 CFR 1.27, must be submitted with the missing items identified in this letter.

SUMMARY OF FEES DUE:

Total additional fee(s) required for this application is **\$2865** for a Small Entity

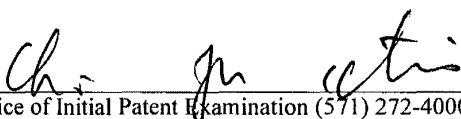
- **\$150** Statutory basic filing fee.
- **\$65** Surcharge.
- The application search fee has not been paid. Applicant must submit **\$250** to complete the search fee.

- The application examination fee has not been paid. Applicant must submit **\$100** to complete the examination fee for a small entity in compliance with 37 CFR 1.27
- The specification and drawings contain more than 100 pages. Applicant owes **\$125** for **38** pages in excess of **100** pages for a small entity in compliance with 37 CFR 1.27.

- Total additional claim fee(s) for this application is **\$2175**
 - **\$400** for **4** independent claims over 3.
 - **\$1775** for **71** total claims over 20.

Replies should be mailed to: Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

*A copy of this notice **MUST** be returned with the reply.*


Office of Initial Patent Examination (571) 272-4000, or 1-800-PTO-9199, or 1-800-972-6382
PART 3 - OFFICE COPY

17119 U.S. PTO
062706

UTILITY PATENT APPLICATION TRANSMITTAL <small>(Only for new nonprovisional applications under 37 CFR 1.53(b))</small>	Attorney Docket No.	99879-00026
	First Inventor	Ira Marlowe
	Title	Multimedia Device Integration System
	Express Mail Label	EV623706889US

113013 U.S. PTO
11/475847

062706

APPLICATION ELEMENTS <small>See MPEP chapter 600 concerning utility patent application contents.</small>	ADDRESS TO: Commissioner for Patents P. O. Box 1450 Alexandria VA 22313-1450
--	--

1. **Fee Transmittal Form** (e.g., PTO/SB/17)
(Submit an original and a duplicate for fee processing)
2. **Applicant claims small entity status.**
See 37 CFR 1.27.
3. **Specification** [Total 102]
Both the claims and abstract must start on a new page
(For information on the preferred arrangement, see MPEP 608.01(a))
4. **Drawing(s)** (35 U.S.C. 113) [Total Sheets 36]
5. Oath or Declaration [Total Sheets]
 - a. **Newly Unexecuted Declaration**
 - b. **Copy from a prior application** (37 CFR 1.63(d))
(for continuation/divisional with Box 18 completed)
 - i. **DELETION OF INVENTOR(S)**
Signed statement attached deleting inventor(s)
name in the prior application, see 37 CFR 1.63(d)(2) and 1.33(b).
6. **Application Data Sheet.** See 37 CFR 1.76
7. **CD-ROM or CD-R** in duplicate, large table or Computer Program *(Appendix)*
 Landscape Table on CD
8. **Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Submission**
(if applicable, items a. - c. are required)
 - a. **Computer Readable Form (CRF)**
 - i. Computer Readable Form (CRF)
 - ii. Transfer Request (37 CFR 1.821(e))
 - b. **Specification Sequence Listing on:**
 - i. CD-ROM or CD-R (2 copies); or
 - ii. Paper
 - c. Statements verifying identity of above copies

ACCOMPANYING APPLICATION PARTS

9. **Assignment Papers** (cover sheet & document(s))
Name of Assignee _____
10. **37 CFR 3.73(b) Statement** **Power of Attorney**
(when there is an assignee)
11. **English Translation Document** *(if applicable)*
12. **Information Disclosure Statement** (PTO/SB/08 or
 Copies of foreign patent documents, publications, & other information
13. **Preliminary Amendment**
14. **Return Receipt Postcard** (MPEP 503)
(Should be specifically itemized)
15. **Certified Copy of Priority Document(s)**
(if foreign priority is claimed)
16. **Nonpublication Request** under 35 U.S.C. 122
(b)(2)(B)(i). Applicant must attach form PTO/SB/35 or equivalent.
17. **Other: Transmittal Letter**

18. If a CONTINUING APPLICATION, check appropriate box, and supply the requisite information below and in the first sentence of the specification following the title, or in an Application Data Sheet under 37 CFR 1.76:

Continuation Divisional Continuation-in-part (CIP) of prior application No.: 11/071,667

Prior application information: Examiner Edward F. Urban Art Unit: 2618

19. CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS

The address associated with Customer Number: 27614 OR Correspondence address below

Name	Michael R. Friscia		
	McCarter & English, LLP		
Address	100 Mulberry Street		
	Four Gateway Center		
City	Newark	State	NJ
Zip Code	07102		
Country	USA	Telephone	(973) 639-8493
		Email Address	mfriscia@mccarter.com

Signature		Date	6/27/06
Name (Print/Type)	Michael R. Friscia	Registration No. (Attorney/Agent)	33,884

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.53(b). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.
If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

McCarter & English, LLP
Four Gateway Center
100 Mulberry Street
Newark, NJ 07102-4056
tel 973.622.4444
fax 973.624.7070
www.mccarter.com

Michael R. Friscia
Partner

Direct Dial: (973) 639-8493
Direct Fax: (973) 297-6627
E-mail: mfriscia@mccarter.com

Date: June 27, 2006



Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Customer No.: 27614

File: 99879-00026
Inventor(s): Ira Marlowe
Title: Multimedia Device Integration System
Express Mail Label No.: EV 623706889 US

Sir:

Enclosed herewith please find the following documents in the above-identified application for Letters Patent of the United States:

102 Pages of Specification including claims 1-91 and 1 page of Abstract
36 Sheets of Drawings (Figs. 1-24)
X Utility Patent Application Transmittal Form PTO/SB/05
X Unexecuted Declaration and Power of Attorney (1 sheet)
X Return-addressed Postcard
X Transmittal Letter (2 sheets)

X Applicant claims small entity status

Basic Filing Fee	\$ 150.00
Additional Fees:	
Utility Search Fee	\$ 250.00
Utility Examination Fee	\$ 100.00
Total number of claims (including multiple dependent claims) <u>91</u>	
Total number of claims in excess of 20, times \$25 <u>71</u>	\$ 1,775.00
Number of independent claims <u>7</u>	
Number of independent claims minus 3, times \$100 <u>4</u>	\$ 400.00
Fee for multiple dependent claims (\$360/\$180)	\$ 0.00
Fee for each additional 50 sheets exceeding 100 (\$125)	\$ 125.00
TOTAL FILING FEES:	\$ 2,800.00

PRIORITY CLAIM:

This is a Continuation X Continuation-in-Part Divisional, of U.S. Application Serial No. 11/071,667 filed March 3, 2005, which is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Application Serial No. 10/732,909 filed December 10, 2003, which is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Application Serial No. 10/316,961 filed December 11, 2002.

HARTFORD	STAMFORD	NEW YORK CITY	NEWARK	PHILADELPHIA	WILMINGTON	BALTIMORE
860.275.6700	203.324.1800	212.609.6800	973.622.4444	215.979.3800	302.984.6300	410.659.8500

Commissioner for Patents
Date June 27, 2006
Page Two
Customer Number 27614
Express Mail Label No.EV623706889US



Please note that this application is being filed with an unexecuted Declaration and Power of Attorney. Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. 1.53, the United States Patent and Trademark Office is respectfully requested to accept this application and accord a serial number and filing date as of the date that this application is deposited with the U.S. Postal Service for Express Mail. Further, it is respectfully requested that the NOTICE OF MISSING PARTS-FILING DATE GRANTED pursuant to 37 C.F.R. 1.53 be sent to the undersigned attorney.

Respectfully submitted,

McCARTER & ENGLISH, LLP

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'M. Friscia'.

Michael R. Friscia
Reg. No. 33,884

MRF/jf
Enclosures

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY EXPRESS MAIL

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service, postage prepaid, as "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee", Mailing Label No. EV623706889 to the Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 on 6/27/06.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Janelle Fava'.
Janelle Fava (date)

ME1\5719693.1

Express Mail Label No.: EV623706889US

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

INVENTOR: IRA MARLOWE

5 TITLE: MULTIMEDIA DEVICE INTEGRATION SYSTEM

SPECIFICATION

10 BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

RELATED APPLICATIONS

15 This application is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 11/071,667, filed March 3, 2005, now U.S. Patent No. _____, which is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 10/732,909 filed December 10, 2003, now U.S. Patent No. _____, which is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 10/316,961 filed December 11, 2002, now U.S. Patent No. _____, the entire disclosures of which
20 applications are each expressly incorporated herein by reference.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to a multimedia device integration system. More
25 specifically, the present invention relates to a multimedia device integration system for integrating after-market components such as satellite receivers, CD players, CD changers, digital media devices (*e.g.*, MP3 players, MP4 players, WMV players, Apple iPod devices, portable media centers, and other devices), Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receivers, auxiliary audio sources, video devices (*e.g.*, DVD players), cellular telephones, and other devices for use with
30 factory-installed (OEM) or after-market car stereo and video systems.

RELATED ART

Automobile audio systems have continued to advance in complexity and the number of options available to automobile purchasers. Early audio systems offered a simple AM and/or FM tuner, and perhaps an analog tape deck for allowing cassettes, 8-tracks, and other types of tapes to be played while driving. Such early systems were closed, in that external devices could not be easily integrated therewith.

With advances in digital technology, CD players have been included with automobile audio systems. Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEMs) often produce car stereos having CD players and/or changers for allowing CDs to be played while driving. However, such systems often include proprietary buses and protocols that do not allow after-market audio systems, such as satellite receivers (e.g., XM satellite tuners), digital audio broadcast (DAB) receivers, digital media players (e.g., Apple iPod, MP3, MP4, WMV, etc.), CD changers, auxiliary input sources, video devices (e.g., DVD players), cellular telephones, and the like, to be easily integrated therewith. Thus, automobile purchasers are frequently forced to either entirely replace the OEM audio system, or use same throughout the life of the vehicle or the duration of ownership. Even if the OEM radio is replaced with an after-market radio, the after-market radio also frequently is not operable with an external device.

A particular problem with integrating after-market audio and video systems with existing car stereo and video systems is that signals generated by both systems are in proprietary formats, and are not capable of being processed by the after-market system. Additionally, signals generated by the after-market system are also in a proprietary format that is not recognizable by

the car stereo or video system. Thus, in order to integrate after-market systems with existing car stereo and video systems, it is necessary to convert signals between such systems.

It known in the art to provide one or more expansion modules for OEM and after-market car stereos for allowing external audio products to be integrated with the car stereo. However, such expansion modules only operate with and allow integration of external audio products manufactured by the same manufacturer as the OEM / after-market car stereo. For example, a satellite receiver manufactured by PIONEER, Inc., cannot be integrated with an OEM car radio manufactured by TOYOTA or an after-market car radio manufactured by CLARION, Inc. Thus, existing expansion modules only serve the limited purpose of integrating equipment by the same manufacturer as the car stereo. Thus, it would be desirable to provide an integration system that allows any audio device of any manufacture to be integrated with any OEM or after-market radio system. Further, radio-frequency (RF) transmitters and cassette tape adapters have been developed for allowing music from a device external to a car radio, such as a portable CD player, to be played through the car radio using the FM receiver or the cassette deck of the radio. However, such systems are often prone to interference, and do not provide high fidelity.

Moreover, it would be desirable to provide an integration system that not only achieves integration of various audio and video devices that are alien to a given OEM or after-market car stereo or video system, but also allows for information to be exchanged between the after-market device and the car stereo or video system. For example, it would be desirable to provide a system wherein station, track, time, and song information can be retrieved from the after-market device, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo or video system for display thereby, such as

Express Mail Label No.: EV623706889US

at an LCD panel of the car stereo or on one or more display panels of a car video system. Such information could be transmitted and displayed on both hardwired car stereo and video systems (e.g., radios installed in dashboards or at other locations within the car), or integrated for display on one or more software or graphically-driven radio systems operable with graphical display panels. Additionally, it would be desirable to provide a multimedia device integration system that allows a user to control more than one device, such as a CD or satellite receiver and one or more auxiliary sources, and to quickly and conveniently switch between same using the existing controls of the car stereo or video system. Still further, it would be desirable to provide a multimedia device integration system that allows for wireless integration of portable devices for use with car audio and/or video systems, wherein full remote control of the portable device is provided at the controls of the car system.

Accordingly, the present invention addresses these needs by providing a multimedia device integration system that allows a plurality of after-market devices, such as CD players, CD changers, digital media devices (e.g., MP3 players, MP4 players, Apple iPod, WMV players, portable media centers, and other devices), satellite receivers, DAB receivers, auxiliary input sources, video devices (e.g., DVD players), cellular telephones, or any combination thereof, to be integrated into existing car stereo and video systems while allowing information to be displayed on, and control to be provided from, the car stereo or video system.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to a multimedia device integration system. One or more after-market audio devices, such as CD players, CD changers, digital media devices (e.g., MP3 players, MP4 players, WMV players, Apple iPod devices, portable media centers, and other devices), satellite receivers (e.g., XM or Sirius receivers), digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, or auxiliary input sources, can be connected to and operate with an existing stereo system in an automobile, such as an OEM car stereo system or an after-market car stereo system installed in the automobile. The integration system connects to and interacts with the car stereo at any available port of the car stereo, such as a CD input port, a satellite input, or other known type of connection. If the car stereo system is an after-market car stereo system, the present invention generates a signal that is sent to the car stereo to keep same in an operational state and responsive to external data and signals. Commands generated at the control panel are received by the present invention and converted into a format recognizable by the after-market device. The formatted commands are executed by the after-market device, and audio therefrom is channeled to the car stereo. Information from the after-market device is received by the present invention, converted into a format recognizable by the car stereo, and forwarded to the car stereo for display thereby. The formatted information could include information relating to a CD or MP3 track being played, channel, song, and artist information from a satellite receiver or DAB receiver, or video information from one or more external devices connected to the present invention. The information can be presented as one or more menus, textual, or graphical prompts for display on an LCD display of the radio, allowing interaction with the user at the radio. A docking port may be provided for allowing portable external audio devices to be connected to the interface of the present invention.

In an embodiment of the present invention, a dual-input device is provided for integrating both an external audio device and an auxiliary input with an OEM or after-market car stereo. The user can select between the external audio device and the auxiliary input using the controls of the car stereo. The invention can automatically detect the type of device connected to the
5 auxiliary input, and integrate same with the car stereo.

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with an existing car stereo system. A user can select between the auxiliary sources using the control panel of the car stereo. One or more after-market audio
10 devices can be integrated with the auxiliary input sources, and a user can switch between the audio device and the auxiliary input sources using the car stereo. Devices connected to the auxiliary input sources are inter-operable with the car stereo, and are capable of exchanging commands and data via the interface.

15 In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating an external device for use with a car stereo or video system, wherein the interface is positioned within the car stereo or video system. The system comprises a car stereo or video system; an after-market device external to the car stereo or video system; an interface positioned within the car stereo or video system and connected between the car stereo or video system and the after-
20 market device for exchanging data and audio or video signals between the car stereo or video system and the after-market device; means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the after-market device from the car stereo or video system in a format compatible with the after-market device; and means for processing and displaying data from the after-market

device on a display of the car stereo or video system in a format compatible with the car stereo or video system. The after-market device could comprise one or more of a CD changer, CD player, satellite receiver (*e.g.*, XM or Sirius), digital media device (*e.g.*, MP3, MP4, WMV, or Apple iPod device), video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), cellular telephone, or any combination thereof.

5

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating a cellular telephone for use with a car stereo or video system. The system comprises a car stereo or video system; a cellular telephone external to the car stereo or video system; an interface connected between the car stereo or video system and the cellular telephone for exchanging data and audio or video signals between the car stereo or video system and the cellular telephone; means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the cellular telephone from the car stereo or video system in a format compatible with the cellular telephone; and means for processing and displaying data from the cellular telephone on a display of the car stereo or video system in a format compatible with the car stereo or video system.

15

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating an external video system for use with a car video system. The system comprises a car video system; an after-market video device external to the car video system; an interface connected between the car video system and the after-market video device for exchanging data, audio, and video signals between the car video system and the after-market video device; means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the after-market video device from the car video system in a format compatible with the after-market video device; and means for

processing and displaying data from the after-market video device on a display of the car video system in a format compatible with the car video system.

The present invention also provides an interface for integrating a plurality of after-market
5 devices for use with a car stereo or video system using a single interface. In one embodiment,
the system comprises an interface in electrical communication with a car stereo or video system
and an after-market device; a plurality of configuration jumpers in the interface for specifying a
first device type corresponding to the car stereo or video system and a second device type
corresponding to the after-market device; and a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks
10 stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first
format compatible with the car stereo or video system and for converting signals from the car
stereo or video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at
least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface using settings
of the plurality of configuration jumpers. In another embodiment, the system comprises an
15 interface in electrical communication with a car stereo or video system and an after-market
device; first and second wiring harnesses attached to the interface, wherein the first wiring
harness includes a first electrical configuration corresponding to the car stereo or video system
and the second wiring harness includes a second electrical configuration corresponding to the
after-market device; and a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in
20 the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible
with the car stereo or video system and for converting signals from the car stereo or video system
into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the
protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface using the first and second

electrical configurations of the first and second wiring harnesses. A plurality of wiring harnesses can be provided for integrating a plurality of devices.

The present invention also provides a method for integrating an after-market device for use with a car stereo or video system, comprising the steps of interconnecting the car stereo or video system and the after-market device with an interface; determining a first device type corresponding to the car stereo or video system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device; loading a protocol conversion software block from memory in the interface using the first and second device types; converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo or video system using the protocol conversion software block; and converting signals from the car stereo or video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device using the protocol conversion software block.

The present invention further provides a multimedia device integration system that allows for the wireless integration of a portable audio and/or video device with a car audio and/or video system. The portable device could comprise a CD changer, CD player, satellite receiver (*e.g.*, XM or Sirius), digital media device (*e.g.*, MP3, MP4, WMV, or Apple iPod device), video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), or a cellular telephone. The portable device includes a wireless interface and an integration subsystem positioned within the portable device. The wireless interface establishes a wireless communications channel between the portable device and the car system, and allows for the wireless exchange of control commands, data, video, and audio signals between the portable device and the car system. The integration module receives control commands issued at the car system and transmitted over the wireless channel, processes same

into a format compatible with the portable device, and dispatches same to the portable device for execution thereby. The integration module also receives data from the portable device (including, but not limited to, track information, song information, artist information, time information, and other related information), processes the data into a format compatible with the car system, and transmits same over the wireless channel to the car system for display thereon. 5
Optionally, the integration module could be positioned within the car system.

The integration module could also include a voice recognition subsystem for acquiring spoken commands from a user, converting same into control commands compatible with the portable device, and dispatching the processed control commands to the portable device for 10
execution thereby. The voice commands could be received at the car audio and/or video system (i.e., using a microphone connected to the car audio and/or video system or some other vehicle component), or at the portable device (i.e., using a microphone connected to or forming a part of the portable device). Additionally, the integration module could include a speech synthesizer for 15
generating synthesized speech for conveying data generated by the portable device to a user. The synthesized speech could be channeled to the car audio and/or video system by the integration module to be played through the car audio and/or video system.

The present invention further provides a multimedia device integration system that allows 20
for the integration of a portable audio and/or video device with a car audio and/or video system using a docking slot provided in the car system. The portable device includes an integration module positioned within the portable device and an external interface for allowing electrical communication with the car system via the docking slot. Optionally, the integration module

Express Mail Label No.: EV623706889US

could be positioned within the car audio or video system. The integration module could also include a voice recognition subsystem for acquiring spoken commands from a user, converting same into control commands compatible with the portable device, and dispatching the processed control commands to the portable device for execution thereby. Additionally, the integration
5 module could include a speech synthesizer for generating synthesized speech for conveying data generated by the portable device to a user.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

These and other important objects and features of the invention will be apparent from the following Detailed Description of the Invention, taken in connection with the accompanying drawings, in which:

5

FIG. 1 is a block diagram showing the multimedia device integration system of the present invention.

FIG. 2a is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a CD player is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2c is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a satellite or DAB receiver is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2d is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2e is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a CD player and a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

5 **FIG. 2f** is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite or DAB receiver and a plurality of auxiliary input source are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2g is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention,
10 wherein a MP3 player and a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2h is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary interfaces and an audio device are integrated with a car stereo.

15 **FIG. 3a** is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a CD player or an auxiliary input source with a car radio.

FIG. 3b is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for
integrating both a CD player and an auxiliary input source with a car radio, wherein the CD
20 player and the auxiliary input are switchable by a user.

FIG. 3c is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for
integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 3d is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a satellite or DAB receiver with a car radio.

FIG. 4a is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for
5 integrating a CD player with a car radio.

FIG. 4b is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a MP3 player with a car radio.

FIG. 4c is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for
10 integrating a satellite receiver with a car radio.

FIG. 4d is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio.
15

FIG. 4e is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a CD player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4f is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for
20 integrating a satellite or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4g is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a MP3 player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car stereo.

FIG. 5 is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for allowing a user to switch between an after-market audio device and one or more auxiliary input sources.

5 **FIG. 6** is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for determining and handling various device types connected to the auxiliary input ports of the invention.

FIG. 7a is a perspective view of a docking station according to the present invention for
10 retaining an audio device within a car.

FIG. 7b is an end view of the docking station of **FIG. 7a**.

FIGS. 8a-8b are perspective views of another embodiment of the docking station of the
15 present invention, which includes the multimedia device integration system of the present invention incorporated therewith.

FIG. 9 is a block diagram showing the components of the docking station of **FIGS. 8a-8b**.

20

FIG. 10 is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein the interface is incorporated within a car stereo or car video system.

FIG. 11a is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating a cellular telephone for use with a car stereo or video system; **FIG. 11b** is a flowchart showing processing logic for integrating a cellular telephone for use with a car stereo or video system.

5

FIG. 12a is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating an after-market video device for use with a car video system; **FIG. 12b** is a flowchart showing processing logic for integrating an after-market video device for use with a car video system.

10

FIG. 13a is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein configuration jumpers and protocol conversion software blocks are provided for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface.

15

FIG. 13b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein wiring harnesses and protocol conversion software blocks are provided for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface.

20

FIG. 14 is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface.

FIG. 15 is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for allowing a user to specify one or more after-market device types for integration using a single interface.

5 **FIG. 16** is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for allowing a user to quickly navigate through a list of songs on one or more after-market devices using the controls of a car stereo or video system.

FIG. 17 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein a
10 plurality of external devices are integrated using a single interface.

FIG. 18 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein
wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system and a portable audio
and/or video device using a wireless transceiver and an integration module positioned within the
15 portable device.

FIG. 19 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein
wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system and a portable audio
and/or video device using a wireless transceiver and an integration module positioned within the
20 car audio and/or video system.

FIG. 20 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein a docking slot is provided in a car audio and/or video system for receiving a portable audio and/or video device, and an integration module is positioned within the portable device.

5 **FIG. 21** is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein a docking slot is provided in a car audio and/or video system for receiving a portable audio and/or video device, and an integration module is positioned within the car audio and/or video system.

10 **FIG. 22** is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system and a portable audio and/or video device, and the portable device includes an integration module having speech synthesis and recognition capabilities.

15 **FIG. 23** is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system and a portable audio and/or video device, and the car audio and/or video system includes an integration module having speech synthesis and recognition capabilities.

20 **FIG. 24** is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for wirelessly integrating a portable audio and/or video device for use with a car audio or video system.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to a multimedia device integration system. One or more after-market devices, such as a CD player, CD changer, digital media player (*e.g.*, MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, portable media center, or other device), satellite receiver, 5 digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), cellular telephone, or the like, can be integrated with an existing car radio or car video device, such as an OEM or after-market car stereo or video system. Control of the after-market device is enabled using the car stereo or car video system, and information from the after-market device, such as channel, artist, track, time, song, and other information, is retrieved from the after-market device, 10 processed, and forwarded to the car stereo or car video system for display thereon. The information channeled to the car stereo or video system can include video from the external device, as well as graphical and menu-based information. A user can review and interact with information via the car stereo. Commands from the car stereo or video system are received, processed by the present invention into a format recognizable by the after-market device device, 15 and transmitted thereto for execution. One or more auxiliary input channels can be integrated by the present invention with the car stereo or video system. The user can switch between one or more after-market devices and one or more auxiliary input channels using the control panel buttons of the car stereo or video system.

20 As used herein, the term “integration” or “integrated” is intended to mean connecting one or more external devices or inputs to an existing car stereo or video system via an interface, processing and handling signals, audio, and/or video information, allowing a user to control the devices via the car stereo or video system, and displaying data from the devices on the car stereo

Express Mail Label No.: EV623706889US

or video system. Thus, for example, integration of a CD player with a car stereo system allows for the CD player to be remotely controlled via the control panel of the stereo system, and data from the CD player to be sent to the display of the stereo. Of course, control of after-market devices can be provided at locations other than the control panel of the car stereo or video system without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention. Further, as used herein, the term “inter-operable” is intended to mean allowing the external audio or video device to receive and process commands that have been formatted by the interface of the present invention, as well as allowing a car stereo or video system to display information that is generated by the external audio or video device and processed by the present invention. Additionally, by the term “inter-operable,” it is meant allowing a device that is alien to the environment of an existing OEM or after-market car stereo or video system to be utilized thereby.

Also, as used herein, the terms “car stereo” and “car radio” are used interchangeably and are intended to include all presently existing car stereos, radios, video systems, such as physical devices that are present at any location within a vehicle, in addition to software and/or graphically- or display-driven receivers. An example of such a receiver is a software-driven receiver that operates on a universal LCD panel within a vehicle and is operable by a user via a graphical user interface displayed on the universal LCD panel. Further, any future receiver, whether a hardwired or a software/graphical receiver operable on one or more displays, is considered within the definition of the terms “car stereo” and “car radio,” as used herein, and is within the spirit and scope of the present invention. Moreover, the term “car” is not limited to any specific type of automobile, but rather, includes all automobiles. Additionally, by the term

“after-market,” it is meant any device not installed by a manufacturer at the time of sale of the car.

FIG. 1 is a block diagram showing the multimedia device integration (or interface) system of the present invention, generally indicated at **20**. A plurality of devices and auxiliary inputs can be connected to the interface **20**, and integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. A CD player or changer **15** can be integrated with the radio **10** via interface **20**. A satellite radio or DAB receiver **25**, such as an XM or Sirius radio satellite receiver or DAB receiver known in the art, could be integrated with the radio **10**, via the interface **20**. Further, an MP3 player **30** could also be integrated with the radio **10** via interface **20**. The MP3 player **30** could be any known digital media device, such as an Apple iPod or any other digital media device. Moreover, a plurality of auxiliary input sources, illustratively indicated as auxiliary input sources **35** (comprising input sources 1 through n , n being any number), could also be integrated with the car radio **10** via interface **20**. Optionally, a control head **12**, such as that commonly used with after-market CD changers and other similar devices, could be integrated with the car radio **10** via interface **20**, for controlling any of the car radio **10**, CD player/changer **15**, satellite/DAB receiver **25**, MP3 player **30**, and auxiliary input sources **35**. Thus, as can be readily appreciated, the interface **20** of the present invention allows for the integration of a multitude of devices and inputs with an OEM or after-market car radio or stereo.

20

FIG. 2a is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device interface system of the present invention, wherein a CD player/changer **15** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. The CD player **15** is electrically connected with the interface

20, and exchanges data and audio signals therewith. The interface 20 is electrically connected with the car radio 10, and exchanges data and audio signals therewith. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the car radio 10 includes a display 13 (such as an alphanumeric, electroluminescent display) for displaying information, and a plurality of control panel buttons 14 that normally operate to control the radio 10. The interface 20 allows the CD player 15 to be controlled by the control buttons 14 of the radio 10. Further, the interface 20 allows information from the CD player 15, such as track, disc, time, and song information, to be retrieved therefrom, processed and formatted by the interface 20, sent to the display 13 of the radio 10.

10

Importantly, the interface 20 allows for the remote control of the CD player 15 from the radio 10 (e.g., the CD player 15 could be located in the trunk of a car, while the radio 10 is mounted on the dashboard of the car). Thus, for example, one or more discs stored within the CD player 15 can be remotely selected by a user from the radio 10, and tracks on one or more of the discs can be selected therefrom. Moreover, standard CD operational commands, such as pause, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track forward, and track reverse (among other commands) can be remotely entered at the control panel buttons 14 of the radio 10 for remotely controlling the CD player 15.

20

FIG. 2b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein an MP3 player 30 is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio 10 via interface 20. As mentioned earlier, the interface 20 of the present invention allows for a plurality of disparate audio devices to be integrated with an existing car radio for use therewith. Thus, as

shown in **FIG. 2b**, remote control of the MP3 player **30** via radio **10** is provided for via interface **20**. The MP3 player **30** is electronically interconnected with the interface **20**, which itself is electrically interconnected with the car radio **10**. The interface **20** allows data and audio signals to be exchanged between the MP3 player **30** and the car radio **10**, and processes and formats signals accordingly so that instructions and data from the radio **10** are processable by the MP3 player **30**, and vice versa. Operational commands, such as track selection, pause, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, and other commands, are entered via the control panel buttons **14** of car radio **10**, processed by the interface **20**, and formatted for execution by the MP3 player **30**. Data from the MP3 player, such as track, time, and song information, is received by the interface **20**, processed thereby, and sent to the radio **10** for display on display **13**. Audio from the MP3 player **30** is selectively forwarded by the interface **20** to the radio **10** for playing.

FIG. 2c is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite receiver or DAB receiver **25** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10** via the interface **20**. Satellite/DAB receiver **25** can be any satellite radio receiver known in the art, such as XM or Sirius, or any DAB receiver known in the art. The satellite/DAB receiver **25** is electrically interconnected with the interface **20**, which itself is electrically interconnected with the car radio **10**. The satellite/DAB receiver **25** is remotely operable by the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10**. Commands from the radio **10** are received by the interface **20**, processed and formatted thereby, and dispatched to the satellite/DAB receiver **25** for execution thereby. Information from the satellite/DAB receiver **25**, including time, station, and song information, is received by the interface **20**, processed, and

transmitted to the radio 10 for display on display 13. Further, audio from the satellite/DAB receiver 25 is selectively forwarded by the interface 20 for playing by the radio 10.

FIG. 2d is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein one or more auxiliary input sources 35 are integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio 10. The auxiliary inputs 35 can be connected to analog sources, or can be digitally coupled with one or more audio devices, such as after-market CD players, CD changers, MP3 players, satellite receivers, DAB receivers, and the like, and integrated with an existing car stereo. Preferably, four auxiliary input sources are connectable with the interface 20, but any number of auxiliary input sources could be included. Audio from the auxiliary input sources 35 is selectively forwarded to the radio 10 under command of the user. As will be discussed herein in greater detail, a user can select a desired input source from the auxiliary input sources 35 by depressing one or more of the control panel buttons 14 of the radio 10. The interface 20 receives the command initiated from the control panel, processes same, and connects the corresponding input source from the auxiliary input sources 35 to allow audio therefrom to be forwarded to the radio 10 for playing. Further, the interface 20 determines the type of audio devices connected to the auxiliary input ports 35, and integrates same with the car stereo 10.

As mentioned previously, the present invention allows one or more external audio devices to be integrated with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo, along with one or more auxiliary input sources, and the user can select between these sources using the controls of the car stereo. Such “dual input” capability allows operation with devices connected to either of the inputs of the device, or both. Importantly, the device can operate in “plug and play” mode,

wherein any device connected to one of the inputs is automatically detected by the present invention, its device type determined, and the device automatically integrated with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo. Thus, the present invention is not dependent any specific device type to be connected therewith to operate. For example, a user can first purchase a CD changer, plug same into a dual interface, and use same with the car stereo. At a point later in time, the user could purchase an XM tuner, plug same into the device, and the tuner will automatically be detected and integrated with the car stereo, allowing the user to select from and operate both devices from the car stereo. It should be noted that such plug and play capability is not limited to a dual input device, but is provided for in every embodiment of the present invention. The dual-input configuration of the present invention is illustrated in **FIGS. 2e-2h** and described below.

FIG. 2e is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein an external CD player/changer **15** and one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car stereo **10**. Both the CD player **15** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** are electrically interconnected with the interface **20**, which, in turn, is electrically interconnected to the radio **10**. Using the controls **14** of the radio **10**, a user can select between the CD player **15** and one or more of the inputs **35** to selectively channel audio from these sources to the radio. The command to select from one of these sources is received by the interface **20**, processed thereby, and the corresponding source is channeled to the radio **10** by the interface **20**. As will be discussed later in greater detail, the interface **20** contains internal processing logic for selecting between these sources.

FIG. 2f is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite receiver or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources are integrated by the interface **20** with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. Similar to the embodiment of the present invention illustrated in **FIG. 2e** and described earlier, the interface **20** allows a user to select between the satellite/DAB receiver **25** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** using the controls **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** contains processing logic, described in greater detail below, for allowing switching between the satellite/DAB receiver **25** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35**.

FIG. 2g is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player **30** and one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated by the interface **20** with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. Similar to the embodiments of the present invention illustrated in **FIGS. 2e** and **2f** and described earlier, the interface **20** allows a user to select between the MP3 player **30** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** using the controls **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** contains processing logic, as will be discussed later in greater detail, for allowing switching between the MP3 player **30** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35**.

FIG. 2h is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary interfaces **40** and **44** and an audio device **17** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car stereo **10**. Importantly, the present invention can be expanded to allow a plurality of auxiliary inputs to be connected to the car stereo **10** in a tree-like fashion. Thus, as can be seen in **FIG. 2h**, a first auxiliary interface **40** is connected to the interface **20**,

and allows data and audio from the ports 42 to be exchanged with the car radio 10. Connected to one of the ports 42 is another auxiliary interface 44, which, in turn, provides a plurality of input ports 46. Any device connected to any of the ports 42 or 46 can be integrated with the car radio 10. Further, any device connected to the ports 42 or 46 can be inter-operable with the car radio 10, allowing commands to be entered from the car radio 10 (*e.g.*, such as via the control panel 14) for commanding the device, and information from the device to be displayed by the car radio 10. Conceivably, by configuring the interfaces 40, 44, and successive interfaces in a tree configuration, any number of devices can be integrated using the present invention.

10 The various embodiments of the present invention described above and shown in **FIGS. 1** through **2h** are illustrative in nature and are not intended to limit the spirit or scope of the present invention. Indeed, any conceivable audio device or input source, in any desired combination, can be integrated by the present invention into existing car stereo systems. Further, it is conceivable that not only can data and audio signals be exchanged between the car stereo and
15 any external device, but also video information that can be captured by the present invention, processed thereby, and transmitted to the car stereo for display thereby and interaction with a user thereat.

Various circuit configurations can be employed to carry out the present invention.
20 Examples of such configurations are described below and shown in **FIGS. 3a-3d**.

FIG. 3a is an illustrative circuit diagram according to the present invention for integrating a CD player or an auxiliary input source with an existing car stereo system. A

plurality of ports **J1C1**, **J2A1**, **X2**, **RCH**, and **LCH** are provided for allowing connection of the interface system of the present invention between an existing car radio, an after-market CD player or changer, or an auxiliary input source. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. Port **J1C1** connects to the input port of an OEM
5 car radio, such as that manufactured by TOYOTA, Inc. Conceivably, port **J1C1** could be modified to allow connection to the input port of an after-market car radio. Ports **J2A1**, **X2**, **RCH**, and **LCH** connect to an after-market CD changer, such as that manufactured by PANASONIC, Inc., or to an auxiliary input source.

10 Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1C1**, **J2A1**, and **X2**, and provides functionality for integrating the CD player or auxiliary input source connected to the ports **J2A1**, **X2**, **RCH**, and **LCH**. For example, microcontroller **U1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connector **J1C1**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the
15 formatted commands to the CD player or auxiliary input source via connector **J2A1**. Additionally, the microcontroller **U1** receives information provided by the CD player or auxiliary input source via connector **J2A1**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connector **J1C1** for display on the display of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the ports **J2A1**, **X2**, **RCH** and **LCH** is selectively channeled to the car
20 radio at port **J1C1** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F628 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F628 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having an internal, 4 MHz internal oscillator, 128 bytes of EEPROM data memory, a capture/compare/PWM, a USART, 2 comparators, and a programmable voltage reference. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **U1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R13**, diodes **D1** through **D4**, capacitors **C1** and **C2**, and oscillator **Y1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J1C1**, **J2A1**, **X2**, **RCH**, and **LCH**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3a** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3b is a diagram showing an illustrative circuit configuration according to the present invention, wherein one or more after-market CD changers / players and an auxiliary input source are integrated with an existing car stereo, and wherein the user can select between the CD changer/player and the auxiliary input using the controls of the car stereo. A plurality of connectors are provided, illustratively indicated as ports **J4A**, **J4B**, **J3**, **J5L1**, **J5R1**, **J1**, and **J2**. Ports **J4A**, **J4B**, and **J3** allow the audio device interface system of the present invention to be

connected to one or more existing car stereos, such as an OEM car stereo or an after-market car stereo. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. For example, ports **J4A** and **J4B** can be connected to an OEM car stereo manufactured by BMW, Inc. Port **J3** can be connected to a car stereo manufactured by LANDROVER, Inc. Of course, any number of car stereos, by any manufacturer, could be provided. Ports **J1** and **J2** allow connection to an after-market CD changer or player, such as that manufactured by ALPINE, Inc., and an auxiliary input source. Optionally, ports **J5L1** and **J5R1** allow integration of a standard analog (line-level) source. Of course, a single standalone CD player or auxiliary input source could be connected to either of ports **J1** or **J2**.

10

Microcontroller **DD1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J4A**, **J4B**, **J3**, **J5L1**, **J5R1**, **J1**, and **J2**, and provides functionality for integrating the CD player and auxiliary input source connected to the ports **J1** and **J2** with the car stereo connected to the ports **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3**. For example, microcontroller **DD1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connectors **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the CD player and auxiliary input source via connectors **J1** or **J2**. Additionally, the microcontroller **DD1** receives information provided by the CD player and auxiliary input source via connectors **J1** or **J2**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connectors **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3** for display on the display of the car stereo. Further, the microcontroller **DD1** controls multiplexer **DA3** to allow selection between the CD player/changer and the auxiliary input. Audio signals provided at the ports **J1**, **J2**, **J5L1** and **J5R1** is selectively channeled to the

15
20

car radio at ports **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **DD1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **DD1** comprises
5 the 16F872 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F872 chip is a CMOS,
flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having 64 bytes of EEPROM data memory, self-programming
capability, an ICD, 5 channels of 10 bit Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converters, 2 timers,
capture/compare/PWM functions, a USART, and a synchronous serial port configurable as either
10 a 3-wire serial peripheral interface or a 2-wire inter-integrated circuit bus. Of course, any
suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **DD1** without
departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention. Additionally, in a preferred
embodiment of the present invention, the multiplexer **DA3** comprises the CD4053 triple, two-
channel analog multiplexer/demultiplexer manufactured by FAIRCHILD SEMICONDUCTOR,
Inc. Any other suitable multiplexer can be substituted for **DA3** without departing from the spirit
15 or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R18**, diodes **D1** through
D3, capacitors **C1-C11**, and **G1-G3**, transistors **Q1-Q3**, transformers **T1** and **T2**, amplifiers
LCH:A and **LCH:B**, oscillator **XTAL1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing
20 the microcontroller **DD1** and the multiplexer **DA3** with the hardware connected to the connectors
J4A, **J4B**, **J3**, **J5L1**, **J5R1**, **J1**, and **J2**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one
of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of
microcontrollers and multiplexers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be

varied to accommodate other similar controllers and multiplexers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3b** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

5 **FIG. 3c** is a diagram showing an illustrative circuit configuration for integrating a plurality of auxiliary inputs using the controls of the car stereo. A plurality of connectors are provided, illustratively indicated as ports **J1**, **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4**. Port **J1** allows the multimedia device integration system of the present
10 invention to be connected to one or more existing car stereos. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. For example, port **J1** could be connected to an OEM car stereo manufactured by HONDA, Inc., or any other manufacturer. Ports **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4** allow connection with the left and right channels of four auxiliary input sources. Of course, any number of auxiliary
15 input sources and ports/connectors could be provided.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1**, **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4**, and provides functionality for integrating one or more auxiliary input sources connected to the ports **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**,
20 **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4** with the car stereo connected to the port **J1**. Further, the microcontroller **U1** controls multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** to allow selection amongst any of the auxiliary inputs using the controls of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the ports **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4** are selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J1** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will

be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F872 microcontroller discussed earlier. Additionally, in a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** comprises the CD4053 triple, two-channel analog multiplexer/demultiplexer, discussed
5 earlier. Any other suitable microcontroller and multiplexers can be substituted for **U1**, **DA3**, and **DA4** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R15**, diodes **D1** through **D3**, capacitors **C1-C5**, transistors **Q1-Q2**, amplifiers **DA1:A** and **DA1:B**, and oscillator **Y1**,
10 among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** and the multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** with the hardware connected to the ports **J1**, **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers and multiplexers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be
15 varied to accommodate other similar controllers and multiplexers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3c** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3d is an illustrative circuit diagram according to the present invention for
20 integrating a satellite receiver with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system. Ports **J1** and **J2** are provided for allowing connection of the integration system of the present invention between an existing car radio and a satellite receiver. These ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. Port **J2** connects to the input port of an existing

Express Mail Label No.: EV623706889US

car radio, such as that manufactured by KENWOOD, Inc. Port 1 connects to an after-market satellite receiver, such as that manufactured by PIONEER, Inc.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1** and **J2**, and provides functionality for integrating the satellite receiver connected to the port **J1** with the car stereo connected to the port **J2**. For example, microcontroller **U1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connector **J2**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the satellite receiver via connector **J2**. Additionally, the microcontroller **U1** receives information provided by the satellite receiver via connector **J1**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connector **J2** for display on the display of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the port **J1** is selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J2** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**.

15

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F873 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F873 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having 128 bytes of EEPROM data memory, self-programming capability, an ICD, 5 channels of 10 bit Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converters, 2 timers, 2 capture/compare/PWM functions, a synchronous serial port that can be configured as a either a 3-wire serial peripheral interface or a 2-wire inter-integrated circuit bus, and a USART. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **U1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R7**, capacitors **C1** and **C2**, and amplifier **A1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J1** and **J2**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3d** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

10

FIGS. 4a through **6** are flowcharts showing processing logic according to the present invention. Such logic can be embodied as software and/or instructions stored in a read-only memory circuit (*e.g.*, and EEPROM circuit), or other similar device. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the processing logic described herein is stored in one or more microcontrollers, such as the microcontrollers discussed earlier with reference to **FIGS. 3a-3d**. Of course, any other suitable means for storing the processing logic of the present invention can be employed.

15

FIG. 4a is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **100**, for integrating a CD player or changer with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system. Beginning in step **100**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **104** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **106** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car

20

stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step 106 is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step 106, a CD handling process, indicated as block 5 108, is invoked, allowing the CD player/changer to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step 110, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a CD player/changer is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. If the car 10 radio is an OEM car radio, the CD player presence signal need not be generated. Further, the signal need not be limited to a CD player device presence signal, but rather, could be any type of device presence signal (*e.g.*, MP3 player device presence signal, satellite receiver presence signal, video device presence signal, cellular telephone presence signal, or any other type of device presence signal). Concurrently with step 110, or within a short period of time before or 15 after the execution of step 110, steps 112 and 114 are invoked. In step 112, the audio channels of the CD player/changer are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the CD player/changer to be played through the car stereo. In step 114, data is retrieved by the present invention from the CD player/changer, including track and time information, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the 20 external CD player/changer can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps 110, 112, and 114 have been executed, control passes to step 116.

In steps 116, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for CD operational commands. Examples of such commands include track forward, track reverse, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track program, random track play, and other similar commands. In step 118, if a command is not detected, step 116 is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step 118 invokes step 120, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the CD player/changer connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a GM car radio is converted into a format recognizable by a CD player/changer manufactured by ALPINE, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by a CD player/changer of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step 122 is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the CD player/changer and executed. Step 110 is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4b is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at 130, for integrating an MP3 player with an existing car stereo system. Examples of MP3 players that can be integrated by the present invention include, but are not limited to, the Apple iPod and other types of digital media devices. Beginning in step 132, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step 134 is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step 136 is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step 136 is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step 136, an MP3 handling process, indicated as block 138, is invoked, allowing the MP3 player to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step 140, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an MP3 player is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step 142, the audio channels of the MP3 player are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the MP3 player to be played through the car stereo. In step 144, data is retrieved by the present invention from the MP3 player, including track, time, title, and song information, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the MP3 player can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps 140, 142, and 144 have been executed, control passes to step 146.

In steps 146, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for MP3 operational commands. Examples of such commands include track forward, track reverse, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track program, random track play, and other similar commands. In step 148, if a command is not detected, step 146 is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step 148 invokes step 150, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the MP3 player connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a HONDA car radio is converted into a format recognizable by an MP3 player manufactured by PANASONIC, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by an MP3 player of any type or manufacture. Once the

command has been formatted, step 152 is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the MP3 player and executed. Step 140 is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

5 **FIG. 4c** is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at 160, for integrating a satellite receiver or a DAB receiver with an existing car stereo system. Beginning in step 162, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step 164 is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made,
10 step 166 is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step 166 is re-invoked.

 If a positive determination is made in step 166, a satellite/DAB receiver handling process,
15 indicated as block 168, is invoked, allowing the satellite/DAB receiver to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step 170, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a satellite or DAB receiver is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from
20 an external source. In step 172, the audio channels of the satellite/DAB receiver are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the satellite receiver or DAB receiver to be played through the car stereo. In step 174, data is retrieved by the present invention from the satellite/DAB receiver, including channel number, channel name, artist name, song time, and

song title, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. The information could be presented in one or more menus, or via a graphical interface viewable and manipulable by the user at the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the receiver can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo.

5 After steps 170, 172, and 174 have been executed, control passes to step 176.

In steps 176, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for satellite/DAB receiver operational commands. Examples of such commands include station up, station down, station memory program, and other similar commands. In step 178, if a command
10 is not detected, step 176 is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step 178 invokes step 180, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the satellite/DAB receiver connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a FORD car radio is converted into a format recognizable by a satellite receiver manufactured by PIONEER, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be
15 formatted for use by a satellite/DAB receiver of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step 182 is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the satellite/DAB receiver and executed. Step 170 is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

20 **FIG. 4d** is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at 190, for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step 192, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step 194 is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode

and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step 196 is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step 196 is re-invoked.

5

If a positive determination is made in step 196, an auxiliary input handling process, indicated as block 198, is invoked, allowing one or more auxiliary inputs to be connected (channeled) to the car stereo. Further, if a plurality of auxiliary inputs exist, the logic of block 198 allows a user to select a desired input from the plurality of inputs. Beginning in step 200, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. Then, in step 202, the control panel buttons of the car stereo are monitored.

15

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, each of the one or more auxiliary input sources are selectable by selecting a CD disc number on the control panel of the car radio. Thus, in step 204, a determination is made as to whether the first disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step 206 is invoked, wherein the first auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step 208 is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the second disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step 210 is invoked, wherein the second auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step

212 is invoked, wherein a third determination is made as to whether the third disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step 214 is invoked, wherein the third auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step 216 is invoked, wherein a fourth determination is made as to whether the fourth disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step 218 is invoked, wherein the fourth auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step 200 is re-invoked, and the process disclosed for block 198 repeated. Further, if any of steps 206, 210, 214, or 218 are executed, then step 200 is re-invoked and block 198 repeated.

10

The process disclosed in block 198 allows a user to select from one of four auxiliary input sources using the control buttons of the car stereo. Of course, the number of auxiliary input sources connectable with and selectable by the present invention can be expanded to any desired number. Thus, for example, 6 auxiliary input sources could be provided and switched using corresponding selection key(s) or keystroke(s) on the control panel of the radio. Moreover, any desired keystroke, selection sequence, or button(s) on the control panel of the radio, or elsewhere, can be utilized to select from the auxiliary input sources without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

15

FIG. 4e is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at 220, for integrating a CD player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step 222, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step 224 is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a

20

standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step 226 is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the cars stereo. If a negative determination is made, step 226 is re-invoked.

5

If a positive determination is made in step 226, then step 228 is invoked, wherein a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. Then, in step 230, a determination is made as to whether a CD player is present (*i.e.*, whether an external CD player or changer is connected to the multimedia device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps 231 and 232 are invoked. In step 231, the logic of block 108 of FIG. 4a (the CD handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the CD player/changer can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step 232, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external CD player/changer to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step 234 is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step 234 re-invokes step 228, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external CD player/changer to one of the auxiliary input sources), step 236 is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the CD player/changer are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step 238 is invoked, wherein the logic of block 198 of

FIG. 4d (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step **230** (no external CD player/changer is connected to the present invention), then step **238** is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or
5 more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

FIG. 4f is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **240**, for integrating a satellite receiver or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step **242**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is
10 powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **244** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **246** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **246** is re-invoked.

15

If a positive determination is made in step **246**, then step **248** is invoked, wherein a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from
20 an external source. Then, in step **250**, a determination is made as to whether a satellite receiver or DAB receiver is present (*i.e.*, whether an external satellite receiver or DAB receiver is connected to the multimedia device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps **251** and **252** are invoked. In step **251**, the logic of block **168** of

FIG. 4c (the satellite/DAB receiver handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the satellite receiver can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step **252**, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for

5 switching from the external satellite receiver to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step **254** is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step **254** re-invokes step **258**, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external satellite/DAB receiver to one of the auxiliary input sources), step **256** is invoked,

10 wherein the audio channels of the satellite receiver are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step **258** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4d** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step **250** (no external satellite/DAB receiver is connected to the present invention), then step **258** is invoked, and the

15 system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

FIG. 4g is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating an MP3 player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car stereo. Beginning

20 in step **262**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **264** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **266** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a

state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step 266 is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step 266, then step 268 is invoked, wherein a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. Then, in step 270, a determination is made as to whether an MP3 player is present (*i.e.*, whether an external MP3 player is connected to the multimedia device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps 271 and 272 are invoked. In step 271, the logic of block 138 of FIG. 4b (the MP3 handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the CD player/changer can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step 272, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external CD player/changer to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step 274 is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step 274 re-invokes step 278, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external MP3 player to one of the auxiliary input sources), step 276 is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the MP3 player are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step 278 is invoked, wherein the logic of block 198 of FIG. 4d (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step 270

(no external MP3 player is connected to the present invention), then step 278 is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

5 As mentioned previously, to enable integration, the present invention contains logic for converting command signals issued from an after-market or OEM car stereo into a format compatible with one or more external audio devices connected to the present invention. Such logic can be applied to convert any car stereo signal for use with any external device. For purposes of illustration, a sample code portion is shown in **Table 1**, below, for converting control
10 signals from a BMW car stereo into a format understandable by a CD changer:

Table 1

```
15 ; =====  
; Radio requests changer to STOP (exit PLAY mode)  
; Decoding 6805183801004C message  
; =====  
  
Encode_RD_stop_msg:  
  
20 movlw 0x68  
xorwf BMW_Recv_buff,W  
skpz  
return  
  
25 movlw 0x05  
xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+1,W  
skpz  
return  
  
30 movlw 0x18  
xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+2,W  
skpz  
return  
  
35 movlw 0x38  
xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+3,W  
skpz  
return  
  
40 movlw 0x01  
xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+4,W  
skpz
```

```
return  
  
tstf  BMW_Recv_buff+5  
skpz  
5    return  
  
movlw 0x4C  
xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+6,W  
skpz  
10   return  
  
bsf   BMW_Recv_STOP_msg  
return
```

15

The code portion shown in **Table 1** receives a STOP command issued by a BMW stereo, in a format proprietary to BMW stereos. Preferably, the received command is stored in a first buffer, such as BMW_Recv_buff. The procedure “Encode_RD_stop_msg” repetitively applies an XOR function to the STOP command, resulting in a new command that is in a format compatible with the after-market CD player. The command is then stored in an output buffer for dispatching to the CD player.

Additionally, the present invention contains logic for retrieving information from an after-market audio device, and converting same into a format compatible with the car stereo for display thereby. Such logic can be applied to convert any data from the external device for display on the car stereo. For purposes of illustration, a sample code portion is shown in **Table 2**, below, for converting data from a CD changer into a format understandable by a BMW car stereo:

Table 2

```

;
; =====
; Changer replies with STOP confirmation
; Encoding 180A68390002003F0001027D message
; =====
5
;
; =====
; Changer replies with STOP confirmation
; Encoding 180A68390002003F0001027D message
; =====

Load_CD_stop_msg:
movlw 0x18
movwf BMW_Send_buff
10

movlw 0x0A
movwf BMW_Send_buff+1

movlw 0x68
movwf BMW_Send_buff+2
15

movlw 0x39
movwf BMW_Send_buff+3

movlw 0x00 ;current status_XX=00, power off
movwf BMW_Send_buff+4
20

movlw 0x02 ;current status_YY=02, power off
movwf BMW_Send_buff+5
25

clrf BMW_Send_buff+6 ;separate field, always =0

movfw BMW_MM_stat ;current status_MM , magazine config
movwf BMW_Send_buff+7
30

clrf BMW_Send_buff+8 ;separate field, always =0

movfw BMW_DD_stat ;current status_DD , current disc
movwf BMW_Send_buff+9
35

movfw BMW_TT_stat ;current status_TT , current track
movwf BMW_Send_buff+10

xorwf BMW_Send_buff+9,W ;calculate check sum
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+8,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+7,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+6,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+5,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+4,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+3,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+2,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+1,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff,W
40

movwf BMW_Send_buff+11 ;store check sum
movlw D'12' ;12 bytes total
movwf BMW_Send_cnt
bsf BMW_Send_on ;ready to send
return
55

```

The code portion shown in **Table 2** receives a STOP confirmation message from the CD player, in a format proprietary to the CD player. Preferably, the received command is stored in a first buffer, such as BMW_Send_buff. The procedure "Load_CD_stop_msg" retrieves status information, magazine information, current disc, and current track information from the CD
 5 changer, and constructs a response containing this information. Then, a checksum is calculated and stored in another buffer. The response and checksum are in a format compatible with the BMW stereo, and are ready for dispatching to the car stereo.

The present invention also includes logic for converting signals from an OEM car stereo
 10 system for use with a digital media device such as an MP3, MP4, or Apple iPod player. Shown below are code samples for allowing commands and data to be exchanged between a Ford car stereo and an Apple iPod device:

Table 3

```

15 //decoding Ford "play" command :41-C0-80-CA-01+
    if ( ACP_rx_ready == ON ) {
        ACP_rx_ready = OFF;
        ACP_rx_taddr = ACP_rx_buff[1];
        ACP_rx_saddr = ACP_rx_buff[2];
20 ACP_rx_data1 = ACP_rx_buff[3];
        ACP_rx_data2 = ACP_rx_buff[4];
        ACP_rx_data3 = ACP_rx_buff[5];
        if ( (ACP_rx_saddr == 0x80) ) {
            switch ( ACP_rx_taddr ) {
25 case 0xC0:
                if ( ACP_rx_data1 == 0xCA ) {
                    if ( ACP_rx_data2 == 0x01 ) {
                        flags.ACP_play_req = 1;
                    }
                    break;
30 }
                break;
            }
        }
35 }

```

In the code portion shown in **Table 3**, a “Play” command selected by a user at the controls of a Ford OEM car stereo is received, and portions of the command are stored in one or more buffer arrays. Then, as shown below in **Table 4**, the decoded portions of the command stored in the one or more buffer arrays are used to construct a “Play/Pause” command in a format compatible with the Apple iPod device, and the command is sent to the Apple iPod for execution thereby:

Table 4

```
// encoding iPod "play/pause" command 0xFF 0x55 0x03 0x02 0x00 0x01 0xFA
10     if ( iPod_play_req == ON ) {
        iPod_play_req = OFF;
        iPod_tx_data[0] = 0x55;
        iPod_tx_data[1] = 0x03;
        iPod_tx_data[2] = 0x02;
15     iPod_tx_data[3] = 0x00;
        iPod_tx_data[4] = 0x01;
        iPod_tx_counter = 5;
        iPod_tx_ready = ON;
20     }
```

While the code portions shown in **Tables 1-2** are implemented using assembler language, and the code portions shown in **Tables 3-4** are implemented using the C programming language, it is to be expressly understood that any low or high level language known in the art could be utilized without departing from the spirit or scope of the invention. It will be appreciated that various other code portions can be developed for converting signals from any after-market or OEM car stereo for use by an after-market external audio device, and vice versa.

FIG. 5 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **300** for allowing a user to switch between an after-market audio device, and one or more auxiliary input sources. As was discussed earlier, the present invention allows a user to switch from one or more

connected audio devices, such as an external CD player/changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, DAB receiver, or the like, and activate one or more auxiliary input sources. A selection sequence, initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo, allows such switching. Beginning in step 302, the buttons of the control panel are monitored. In step 304, a
5 determination is made as to whether a "Track Up" button or sequence has been initiated by the user. The "Track Up" button or sequence can be for a CD player, MP3 player, or any other device. If a negative determination is made, step 306 is invoked, wherein the sensed button or sequence is processed in accordance with the present invention and dispatched to the external audio device for execution. Then, step 302 is re-invoked, so that additional buttons or sequences can be
10 monitored.

In the event that a positive determination is made in step 304, step 308 is invoked, wherein the present invention waits for a predetermined period of time while monitoring the control panel buttons for additional buttons or sequences. In a preferred embodiment of the
15 present invention, the predetermined period of time is 750 milliseconds, but of course, other time durations are considered within the spirit and scope of the present invention. In step 310, a determination is made as to whether the user has initiated a "Track Down" button or sequence at the control panel of the car stereo within the predetermined time period. These sequences can be used for a CD player, MP3 player, or any other device. If a negative determination is made, step
20 312 is invoked. In step 312, a determination is made as to whether a timeout has occurred (*e.g.*, whether the predetermined period of time has expired). If a negative determination is made, step 308 is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made, step 312 invokes step 306, so that any buttons or key sequences initiated by the user that are not a "Track Down" command are

processed in accordance with the present invention and dispatched to the audio device for execution.

In the event that a positive determination is made in step 310 (a “Track Down” button or sequence has been initiated within the predetermined time period), then step 314 is invoked. In step 314, the audio channels of the audio device are disconnected, and then step 316 is invoked. In step 316, the logic of block 198 of FIG. 4d (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is invoked, so that the user can select from one of the auxiliary input sources in accordance with the present invention. Thus, at this point in time, the system has switched, under user control, from the audio device to a desired auxiliary input. Although the foregoing description of the process 300 has been described with reference to “Track Up” and “Track Down” buttons or commands initiated by the user, it is to be expressly understood that any desired key sequence, keystroke, button depress, or any other action, can be sensed in accordance with the present invention and utilized for switching modes.

15

When operating in auxiliary mode, the present invention provides an indication on the display of the car stereo corresponding to such mode. For example, the CD number could be displayed as “1”, and the track number displayed as “99,” thus indicating to the user that the system is operating in auxiliary mode and that audio and data is being supplied from an auxiliary input source. Of course, any other indication could be generated and displayed on the display of the car stereo, such as a graphical display (*e.g.*, an icon) or textual prompt.

20

FIG. 6 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **320**, for determining and handling various device types connected to the auxiliary input ports of the invention. The present invention can sense device types connected to the auxiliary input ports, and can integrate same with the car stereo using the procedures discussed earlier. Beginning in
5 step **322**, the control panel buttons of the car stereo are monitored for a button or sequence initiated by the user corresponding to an auxiliary input selection (such as the disc number method discussed earlier with reference to **FIG. 4d**). In response to an auxiliary input selection, step **324** is invoked, wherein the type of device connected to the selected auxiliary input is sensed by the present invention. Then, step **326** is invoked.

10

In step **326**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is a CD player/changer. If a positive determination is made, step **328** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **108** of **FIG. 4a** (the CD handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the CD player is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **326**,
15 then step **330** is invoked. In step **330**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is an MP3 player. If a positive determination is made, step **334** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **138** of **FIG. 4b** (the MP3 handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the MP3 player is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **330**, then step **336** is invoked. In step **336**, a determination is
20 made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is a satellite receiver or a DAB receiver. If a positive determination is made, step **338** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **168** of **FIG. 4c** (the satellite/DAB receiver handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the satellite receiver is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step

336, step 322 is re-invoked, so that additional auxiliary input selections can be monitored and processed accordingly. Of course, process 320 can be expanded to allow other types of devices connected to the auxiliary inputs of the present invention to be integrated with the car stereo.

5 The present invention can be expanded for allowing video information generated by an external device to be integrated with the display of an existing OEM or after-market car stereo. In such a mode, the invention accepts RGB (red/green/blue) input signals from the external device, and converts same to composite signals. The composite signals are then forwarded to the car stereo for display thereby, such as on an LCD panel of the stereo. Additionally, the present
10 invention can accept composite input signals from an external device, and convert same to RGB signals for display on the car stereo. Further, information from the external device can be formatted and presented to the user in one or more graphical user interfaces or menus capable of being viewed and manipulated on the car stereo.

15 **FIG. 7a** is a perspective view of a docking station 400 according to the present invention for retaining an audio device within a car. Importantly, the present invention can be adapted to allow portable audio devices to be integrated with an existing car stereo. The docking station 400 allows such portable devices to be conveniently docked and integrated with the car stereo. The docking station 400 includes a top portion 402 hingedly connected at a rear portion 408 to a
20 bottom portion 404, preferably in a clam-like configuration. A portable audio device 410, such as the SKYFI radio distributed by DELPHI, Inc., is physically and electrically connected with the docking portion 412, and contained within the station 100. A clasp 406 can be provided for holding the top and bottom portions in a closed position to retain the device 410. Optionally, a

video device could also be docked using the docking station 400, and tabs 413 can be provided for holding the docking station 400 in place against a portion of a car. Conceivably, the docking station 400 could take any form, such as a sleeve-like device for receiving and retaining a portable audio device and having a docking portion for electrically and mechanically mating
5 with the audio device. It should be noted that the docking station 400 could be formed without the top portion 402.

FIG. 7b is an end view showing the rear portion 408 of the docking station 400 of **FIG. 7a**. A hinge 414 connects the top portion and the bottom portions of the docking station 400. A
10 data port 416 is provided for interfacing with the audio device docked within the station 400, and is in electrical communication therewith. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the data port 416 is an RS-232 serial or USB data port that allows for the transmission of data with the audio device, and which connects with the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating the audio device with an OEM or after-market car stereo. Any
15 known bus technology can be utilized to interface with any portable audio or video device contained within the docking station 400, such as FIREWIRE, D2B, MOST, CAN, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, or any other bus technology known in the art. It should be noted that the present invention can be operated without a docking station, *i.e.*, a portable audio or video device can be plugged directly into the present invention for integration with a car stereo or video
20 system.

FIGS. 8a-8b are perspective views of another embodiment of the docking station of the present invention, indicated generally at 500, which includes the multimedia device integration

system of the present invention, indicated generally at **540**, incorporated therewith. As shown in **FIG. 8a**, the docking station **500** includes a base portion **530**, a bottom member **515** interconnected with the base portion **530** at an edge thereof, and a top member **510** hingedly interconnected at an edge to the base portion **530**. The top member **510** and the bottom member **515** define a cavity for docking and storing a portable audio device **520**, which could be a portable CD player, MP3 player, satellite (e.g., XM, SIRIUS, or other type) tuner, or any other portable audio device. The docking station **500** would be configured to accommodate a specific device, such as an IPOD from Apple Computer, Inc., or any other portable device.

10 The multimedia device integration system **540**, in the form of a circuit board, is housed within the base portion **530** and performs the integration functions discussed herein for integrating the portable device **520** with an existing car stereo or car video system. The integration system **540** is in communication with the portable device **520** via a connector **550**, which is connected to a port on the device **520**, and a cable **555** interconnected between the
15 connector **550** and the integration system **540**. The connector **550** could be any suitable connector and can vary according to the device type. For example, a MOLEX, USB, or any other connector could be used, depending on the portable device. The integration system **540** is electrically connected with a car stereo or car video system by cable **560**. Alternatively, the integration system could wirelessly communicate with the car stereo or car video system. A
20 transmitter could be used at the integration system to communicate with a receiver at the car stereo or car video system. Where automobiles include Bluetooth systems, such systems can be used to communicate with the integration system. As can be readily appreciated, the docking station **500** provides a convenient device for docking, storing, and integrating a portable device

for use with a car stereo. Further, the docking station **500** could be positioned at any desired location within a vehicle, including, but not limited to, the vehicle trunk.

As shown in **FIG. 8b**, the top member **510** can be opened in the general direction indicated by arrow **A** to allow for access to the portable audio device **520**. In this fashion, the device **520** can be quickly accessed for any desired purpose, such as for inserting and removing the device **520** from the docking station **500**, as well as for providing access to the controls of the device **520**.

FIG. 9 is a block diagram showing the components of the docking station of **FIGS. 8a-8b**. The docking station **500** houses both a portable audio or video device **520** and a multimedia device integration system (or interface) **540**. The shape and configuration of the docking station **500** can be varied as desired without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

The integration system of the present invention provides for control of a portable audio or video device, or other device, through the controls of the car stereo or video system system. As such, controls on the steering wheel, where present, may also be used to control the portable audio device or other device. Further, in all embodiments of the present invention, communication between the after-market device and a car stereo or video system can be accomplished using known wireless technologies, such as Bluetooth.

FIG. 10 is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at **600**, wherein the interface **630**

is incorporated within a car stereo or car video system **610**. The interface **630** is in electrical communication with the control panel buttons **620**, display **615**, and associated control circuitry **625** of the car stereo or video system **610**. The interface **630** could be manufactured on a separate printed circuit board positioned within the stereo or video system **610**, or on one or more existing circuit boards of the stereo or video system **610**. An after-market device **635** can be put into electrical communication with the interface **630** via a port or connection on the car stereo or video system **610**, and integrated for use with the car stereo or video system **610**.

The device **635** can be controlled using the control panel buttons **620** of the car stereo or video system **610**, and information from the device **635** is formatted by the interface **630** and displayed in the display **615** of the car stereo or video system **610**. Additionally, control commands generated at the car stereo or car video device **610** are converted by the interface **630** into a format (protocol) compatible with the multimedia device **635**, and are dispatched thereto for execution. A plurality of multimedia devices could be integrated using the interface **630**, as well as one or more auxiliary input sources **640**. The after-market device **635** could comprise any audio, video, or telecommunications device, including, but not limited to, a CD player, CD changer, digital media player (*e.g.*, MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, or any other player), satellite radio (*e.g.*, XM, Sirius, Delphi, etc.), video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), cellular telephone, or any other type of device or combinations thereof. Additionally, one or more interfaces could be connected to the interface **630** (“daisy-chained”) to allow multiple products to be integrated. The device **600** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed in **FIGS. 3a-3d** and modified depending upon the type of the after-market device **635**.

FIG. 11a is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **645**, wherein a cellular telephone **670** is integrated for use with a car stereo. The telephone **670** is in electrical communication with the interface **665**, which receives data from the cellular telephone and formats same for displaying on the display **650** of the car stereo or video system **660**. Commands for controlling the telephone **670** can be entered using the control panel buttons **655** of the car stereo or video system **660**. The commands are processed by the interface **665**, converted into a format (protocol) compatible with the telephone **670**, and transmitted to the telephone **670** for processing thereby. Additionally, audio from the telephone **670** can be channeled to the car stereo or video system **660** via the interface **665** and played through the speakers of the car stereo or video system **660**. For example, if the telephone **670** is provided with the ability to download songs or music, such songs or music can be selected using the car stereo or video system **660** and played therethrough using the interface **665**. It should be noted that control of the cellular telephone could be provided using one or more displays (*e.g.*, LCD) of a car video system. Moreover, control of the cellular telephone **670** is not limited to the use of buttons on the car stereo or video system **660**, and indeed, a software or graphically-driven menu or interface can be used to control the cellular telephone. The device **645** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed in **FIGS. 3a-3d** and modified for use with the cellular telephone **670**.

FIG. 11b is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **647**, for integrating a cellular telephone with a car radio. Beginning in step **649**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **651** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be

powered on. If a positive determination is made, step 653 is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step 649 is re-invoked.

5 If a positive determination is made in step 653, a cellular telephone handling process, indicated as block 661, is invoked. Beginning in step 654, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a cellular telephone is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external
10 source. In step 657, the audio channels of the cellular telephone are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the cellular telephone to be played through the car stereo. In step 659, data is retrieved by the present invention from the cellular telephone, such as song information corresponding to one or more songs downloaded onto the cellular telephone. After steps 654, 657, and 659 have been executed, control passes to step 663.

15 In steps 663, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for cellular telephone operational commands. In step 664, if a command is not detected, step 663 is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step 663 invokes step 667, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the cellular telephone connected to
20 the present invention. Once the command has been formatted, step 669 is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the cellular telephone and executed. Step 654 is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 12a is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **675**, wherein an after-market video device **695** is integrated for use with a car video system **685**. The after-market video device **695** could comprise a portable DVD player, digital video (DV) camera, digital camera, or any other video device. The interface **690** receives output video signals from the device **695**, and converts same for display on one or more displays **680** (e.g., LCD seat-back displays in a minivan, fold-down displays mounted on the roof of a vehicle, vehicle navigation displays, etc.) of the car video system **685**. The interface **690** could convert between composite and red/green/blue (RGB) video signals, and vice versa, using commercially-available video format conversion chips such as the TDA8315, TDA4570, TDA3567, TDA3566A, and TDA3569A video conversion chips manufactured by Philips Corp., and the AL251 and AL250 video conversion chips manufactured by Averlogic Technologies, Inc., or any other suitable video conversion chips. Commands issued by a user using the car video system **685** or display(s) **680** for controlling the device **695** are received by the interface **690**, converted into a format compatible with the device **695**, and transmitted thereto for processing. The device **675** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed in **FIGS. 3a-3d** and modified for use with the video device **695**.

FIG. 12b is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **671**, for integrating an after-market video device with a car video system. Beginning in step **673**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car video system is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **674** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car video system to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **677** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car video system is in

a state responsive to signals external to the car video system. If a negative determination is made, step 673 is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step 677, an after-market video device handling process, indicated as block 687, is invoked. Beginning in step 679, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car video system. Importantly, this signal prevents the car video system from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step 681, the audio and video channels of the after-market device are connected (channeled) to the car video system, allowing audio and video from the after-market device to be played through the car video system. In step 684, the display(s) of the car video system are updated with data from the after-market device. After steps 679, 681, and 684 have been executed, control passes to step 683.

In step 683, the present invention monitors the car video system for after-market video device operational commands. In step 689, if a command is not detected, step 683 is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step 689 invokes step 691, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the after-market video device connected to the present invention. Once the command has been formatted, step 693 is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the after-market video device and executed. Step 679 is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 13a is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system **710** of the present invention, wherein configuration jumpers **720** and protocol conversion software blocks **724** are provided for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface. The jumpers **720** can be set to a plurality of different settings, each of which corresponds to an after-market device of a specific type (*e.g.*, CD changer, CD player, digital media player, satellite radio, video device, cellular telephone, etc.) or from a specific manufacturer. Additionally, the jumpers **720** can be used to specify one or more device or manufacturer types for the car stereo or video system **705**. The settings of the configuration jumpers **720** correspond to one or more protocol conversion software blocks **724** stored in memory (*e.g.*, programmable flash memory, ROM, EEPROM, etc.) **725** of the interface **710**. Each of the software blocks **724** controls the interface circuitry **715** and contains instructions for converting data from the device **707** into a format compatible with the car stereo or video system **705**, and vice versa. For example, a first block could contain software for allowing communication between an Apple iPod and an in-dash car stereo manufactured by Sony, and a second block could contain software for allowing communication between a DVD player and a car video system. Any desired number of blocks could be stored in the memory **725** and can be selected as desired by the user via configuration jumpers **720**. As such, a single interface **710** can be used for integrating numerous devices of various types and manufactures for use with one or more car stereo or video systems. The device **710** could include one or more of the circuits shown in **FIGS. 3a-3d**, with modifications depending upon the device types of the devices **705** and **707**.

FIG. 13b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein wiring harnesses **727** and **728** and protocol conversion software blocks **729** are provided for integrating multimedia devices of various types using a single interface **726**. In this embodiment, the electrical configurations (pinouts) of each of the harnesses **727** and **728** correspond to car stereo / video systems and after-market devices of specific types and made by specific manufacturers (*e.g.*, harness **727** could correspond to a BMW car stereo, and harness **728** could correspond to an ALPINE satellite tuner). The electrical configurations (pinouts) of the harnesses are utilized by the interface **726** to retrieve a specific protocol conversion software block **729** that allows communication between the devices. The interface **726** could be provided with a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks pre-loaded into memory in the interface, and could be provided with any desired harnesses. The interface **726** could include one or more of the circuits shown in **FIGS. 3a-3d**, with modification depending upon the device types of the devices attached to the wiring harnesses **727** and **728**.

FIG. 14 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **730**, of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface. In step **735**, the interface determines types of devices that are connected thereto, including the car stereo or video system and one or more after-market devices to be integrated therewith. This could be achieved by the configuration jumper settings or the harness types connected to the interface and discussed with respect to **FIGS. 13a** and **13b**. Then, in step **740**, a protocol conversion software block is selected from blocks of conversion software (*e.g.*, from the blocks **725** and **729** shown in **FIGS. 13a** and **13b**).

In step 745, instructions are converted using the selected conversion block to allow the car stereo or video system to operate with the multimedia device.

FIG. 15 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at 750, of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for allowing a user to specify one or more after-market device types for integration using a single interface. In step 770, a user is provided with one or more lists of devices to be integrated, which are displayed on the display 760 of the car stereo or video device 755. Then, in step 775, using the buttons 765 of the car video device, the user can specify the type of multimedia device to be integrated (e.g., by scrolling through the lists). Additionally, the device type could be specified using a graphical or software menu displayed on the car stereo or car video system. In step 780, a determination is made as to whether a timeout has occurred (e.g., the user has not selected a device type within a predetermined period of time). If a positive determination is made, step 785 occurs, wherein a protocol conversion software block is selected from memory corresponding to the last device type displayed by the car stereo or video system. If a negative determination is made, step 790 is invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether the user has specified a device type. If a negative determination is made, step 775 is re-invoked so that the user can specify a device type. If a positive determination is made, step 795 is invoked, wherein a protocol conversion software block is selected from memory corresponding to the device specified by the user. In step 800, the protocol conversion software block is mapped to a logical address in memory. Then, in step 805, instructions to be exchanged between the car stereo or video system and the after-market device are converted using the software block to allow communication between the devices using compatible formats. Accordingly, the logic of FIG. 15 allows a single interface having

multiple protocol conversion software blocks to be used integrate a plurality of after-market devices with a car stereo or video system.

FIG. 16 is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at **810**, for allowing a user to quickly navigate through a list of songs on one or more after-market devices using the controls of a car stereo or video system (fast navigation technique). This method allows a user to quickly select a song from a list of songs available on an after-market device for playing on the car stereo or video system, and could be applied for use with any type of after-market device, including, but not limited to, a digital media player such as an MP3 player or Apple iPod player. Beginning in step **812**, a user is provided with a list of alphanumeric characters on a display of the car stereo or video system. This list could include the letters A through Z, as well as the numbers 0 through 9. In step **814**, the user can specify a desired alphanumeric character, which can be specified by scrolling through the list using one or more controls of the car stereo or video system and pressing a button once the desired character has been highlighted, or optionally, if an alphanumeric keypad (or touchscreen interface) is provided on the car stereo or video system, the user can directly enter the desired alphanumeric character.

When the desired alphanumeric character has been specified, in step **816** a remote database is queried using the alphanumeric character. The remote database could comprise a list of songs stored in one or more after-market devices integrated by the present invention for use with the car stereo or video system. In step **818**, a list of potentially matching songs is retrieved from the database and presented on the display of the car stereo or video system for perusal by

the user. For example, if the user specified the letter "A," the list could include all songs in the remote database having titles (or artists) beginning with the letter "A." In step 820, a determination is made as to whether a desired song appears in the list and is immediately viewable by the user, without requiring the user to scroll through the list. If a positive
5 determination is made, step 822 is invoked, wherein the desired song is selected by the user and retrieved from the after-market device for playing on the car stereo or video system.

In the event that a negative determination is made in step 820, step 824 is invoked, wherein the user can specify an additional alphanumeric character using the car stereo or video
10 system. For example, if the user initially specified the letter "A" and the desired song is not visible in the list of songs without scrolling, the user can refine the query by adding an additional alphanumeric character. Thus, for example, the user can specify the letters "AN" to search for songs having titles (or artists) beginning with the letters "AN." In step 826, the remote database of the after-market device is queried using the specified letters. In step 828, a list of potential
15 matches is presented to the user at the car stereo or video system. In step 830, a determination is made as to whether the desired song appears in the list and is immediately viewable without requiring the user to scroll through the list. If a positive determination is made, step 822 is invoked, wherein the user can select the desired song for retrieval from the after-market device and playing on the car stereo or video system. If a negative determination is made, step 832 is
20 invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether a threshold number of alphanumeric characters has been specified by the user. For example, a maximum threshold of 3 alphanumeric characters could be specified, or any other desired number. If a negative determination is made, steps 824-832 are re-invoked in the manner disclosed herein to allow the user to specify

additional alphanumeric characters for querying the remote database. If a positive determination is made (threshold met), then processing terminates and the user must scroll through the list of retrieved songs or repeat the processing disclosed in **FIG. 16** to begin a new query.

5 **FIG. 17** is a diagram showing an another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **850**, wherein a plurality of external devices are integrated using a single interface **852**. Any desired number or combination of devices can be integrated for use with a car stereo or video system using the interface **852**. The interface **852** houses a plurality of ports **858** for connecting any desired number of external devices, and a port **856** for connection with a car
10 stereo or video system. The ports **858** and **856** could be any suitable type of input port, and could vary depending upon the types of devices to be integrated. Additionally, the interface **852** includes integration electronics **854**, which could include any desired electronics disclosed herein for integrating a plurality of external devices.

15 As shown in **FIG. 17**, a CD player **860**, a digital media device **862**, a satellite tuner **864**, a video device **866**, a cellular phone **868**, and an auxiliary input **870** are connected to the interface **852** and integrated for use with a car stereo or video system. The CD player **860** could comprise any desired CD player or changer. The digital media device **862** could comprise any portable digital media device, such as an Apple iPod, MP3 player, MP4, player, WMV player, portable
20 music center, or any other desired device. The satellite tuner **864** could comprise any desired satellite tuner, such as an XM or Sirius tuner. The video device **866** could comprise any desired video device, such as a DVD player. The cellular phone **868** could comprise any cellular

telephone capable of downloading and storing music or video files. The auxiliary input **870** could comprise any desired external device. Any desired number of interfaces **852** could be interconnected (“daisy-chained”). Further, the interface **852** could form part of an existing car stereo or video system. Control of the external devices connected to the interface **852** is
5 provided through the car stereo or video system.

FIG. 18 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **900**, wherein wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system **910** and a portable audio and/or video device **924**. The car system **910** could be any
10 OEM or after-market car audio and/or video system. The portable device **924** could comprise a CD player, CD changer, digital media player (*e.g.*, MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, Apple video iPod), portable media center, portable media player, satellite receiver, digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver (also commonly referred to as a high-definition (HD) radio receiver), video device (*e.g.*, DVD player or digital media player, such as the SONY PSP
15 digital media player), cellular telephone, or any other portable device.

The car system **910** includes system electronics **912** (*e.g.*, circuitry and components provided by an OEM or after-market car audio and/or video system manufacturer), a display **918**, a control panel **920** (*e.g.*, buttons, touch screen display, etc.) for allowing user interaction and
20 control, and a wireless interface or transceiver **916**. The wireless interface **916** could comprise an AT76C551 Bluetooth transceiver manufactured by Atmel, Inc., which includes a Bluetooth baseband controller with an integrated digital signal processor (DSP), and an AT7024 2.4 - 2.5 GHz band RF front end transceiver manufactured by Atmel, Inc., which includes a low-noise

amplifier and transmit / receive switch driver. Any other suitable wireless transceiver (e.g., IEEE 802.11a, 802.11b, or 802.11g) could also be substituted. The display 918 could comprise any display associated with the car system 910, including, but not limited to, a display panel, a seat-back display, a dashboard display, an LCD or plasma display, or any other display in a car
5 or associated with a car audio and/or video system, positioned anywhere within a vehicle.

The portable device 924 includes device electronics 934 (e.g., circuitry and components provided by the portable device manufacturer), a wireless interface or transceiver 926, and an integration subsystem or module 932 positioned within the portable device 924. Optionally, the
10 wireless interface 926 could be positioned external to the portable device 924. The wireless interface 926 is identical to the wireless interface 916, and both interfaces 916 and 926 establish a wireless communications channel or link 922 between the car system 910 and the portable device 924.

The integration subsystem 932 receives control commands that are issued at the car
15 system 910 and wirelessly transmitted to the portable device 924 via the wireless communications link 922, processes the commands into a format compatible with the device electronics 934 of the portable device 924, and dispatches same to the device electronics 934 for execution thereby, so as to provide remote, wireless control of the portable device 924 using the
20 car system 910. For example, a "Play" command could be entered at the car system 910 (which could be a BMW car stereo), wirelessly transmitted to the portable device 924 (which could be an Apple iPod), converted by the integration subsystem 932 into a format recognizable by the device electronics 934, and executed thereby. The integration subsystem 932 also receives data

generated by the device electronics 934 (including, but not limited to, track information, artist information, song title, time information, etc.), processes same into a format compatible with the car system 910, and transmits the processed data to the car system 910 using the wireless link 922 for display thereon using the display 918. For example, playlists or other data generated by the portable device 924 could be processed by the integration subsystem 932 into a format compatible with the car system 910, and wirelessly transmitted thereto for display on the display 918.

Audio and video information generated by the portable device 924 can be transmitted digitally to the car system 910 using the wireless link 922. This information could also be transmitted via one or more analog RF carrier signals, using suitable digital-to-analog and analog-to-digital conversion circuitry known in the art. The integration subsystem 932 could also include conversion circuitry (e.g., using the video format conversion chips discussed above with respect to FIG. 12a) for converting video information generated by the portable device 924 for display on the display 918 of the car system 910 (e.g., by converting composite video signals to red, green, and blue (RGB) video signals, or vice versa). It should be noted that the integration subsystem 932 could also be utilized to process data, video, and audio information provided by the portable device 924 where the portable device 924 is connected to the Internet (e.g., via a wireless Internet connection established by a cellular telephone). In such circumstances, the display 918 of the car system 910 would function as an Internet browser, and the controls 920 of the car system 910 could be utilized to navigate the Internet.

The integration subsystem **932** contains circuitry similar to the circuitry disclosed in the various embodiments of the present invention discussed herein, and could include a PIC16F872 or PIC16F873 microcontroller manufactured by Microchip, Inc. and programmed in accordance with the flowchart discussed below with respect to **FIG. 24**. Additionally, the integration
5 subsystem **932** generates a device presence signal for maintaining the car system **910** in a state responsive to the portable device **924**. It should be noted that a non-wireless connection **930** could be provided between optional external interfaces ports **914** and **928** of the car system **910** and the portable device **924**, respectively, using any suitable wired connection type such as serial, FIREWIRE, CAN/CAN2, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, or any other connection, to
10 allow for wired integration between the car system **910** and the portable device **924**. Additionally, the non-wireless connection **930** could include a fiber-optic connection, such as a D2B or MOST fiber-optic connection. The device presence can be transmitted to the car system **910** using the wireless link **922** or, optionally, the non-wireless connection **930**.

FIG. 19 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated
15 generally at **1000**, wherein wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system **1010** and a portable audio and/or video device **1024**. The components shown in **FIG. 19** are identical to the components shown in **FIG. 18**, and reference numerals of corresponding components have been increased by 100. In this embodiment, the integration subsystem **1032** is
20 positioned internally within the car system **1010**, which also includes system electronics **1012**, wireless interface **1016**, display **1018**, control panel **1020**, and, optionally, external interface port **1014**. The portable device **1024** includes a wireless interface **1026** in communication with

device electronics **1034**, and optionally, an external interface port **1028** for communicating with the external interface port **1014** of the car system **1010** via non-wireless connection **1030**.

FIG. 20 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **1100**, wherein a docking slot **1140** is provided in a car audio and/or video system **1110** for receiving a portable audio and/or video device **1124**. The car system **1110** includes system electronics **1112** (e.g., circuitry and components provided by an OEM or after-market car audio or video system manufacturer), a display **1118**, and a control panel **1120**. The portable device **1124** includes an integration subsystem or module **1132**, device electronics **1134** (e.g., circuitry and components provided by the manufacturer of the portable device **1124**) and an external interface port **1142** that interfaces with the docking slot **1140** to allow electrical communication between the integration subsystem **1132** of the car system **1110** and the device electronics **1134** of the portable device **1124**. The electrical connection formed by the external interface port **1142** and the docking slot **1140** could include a FIREWIRE, CAN/CAN2, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, or I Bus connection, or any other suitable connection type. Additionally, a fiber-optic connection could be formed between the external interface port **1142** and the docking slot **1140**, using a D2B, MOST, or other suitable fiber-optic connection.

The portable device **1124** is inserted into the docking slot **1140** in the general direction indicated by arrow **A**. Once docked, the integration subsystem **1132** processes control commands issued at the car system **1110** into a format compatible with the portable device **1124**, and processes data generated by the portable device **1124** into a format compatible with the car system **1110** in the manner described herein. Audio and video signals generated by the portable

device **1124** are channeled by the integration subsystem **1132** to the system electronics **1112**, for playing through the car system **1110**. The portable device **1124** could comprise a digital media player (e.g., MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, Apple video iPod, or other device), a portable media center, a portable media player, a satellite receiver, a digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver or high-definition (HD) radio receiver, a portable video device, a cellular telephone, or any other portable device.

FIG. 21 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **1200**, wherein a docking slot **1240** is provided in a car audio and/or video system **1210** for receiving a portable audio and/or video device **1224**. The components shown in **FIG. 21** are identical to those disclosed in **FIG. 20**, and reference numerals of corresponding components have been increased by 100. In this embodiment, the integration subsystem **1232** is positioned within the car system **1210**, which also includes system electronics **1212**, display **1218**, and control panel **1220**. The portable device **1224** includes device electronics **1234** and an external interface port **1242** for interfacing with the docking slot **1240** and providing electrical (and/or optical) communication with the integration subsystem **1232**.

FIG. 22 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **1300**, wherein wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system **1310** and a portable audio and/or video device **1324**, and voice synthesis and speech recognition capabilities are provided. More particularly, the portable device **1324** includes an integration subsystem or module **1332** having a voice recognition subsystem **1336** and a speech synthesizer **1338**. As with the embodiments discussed earlier with respect to **FIGS. 18-19**, the

car system **1310** includes system electronics **1312** (e.g., circuitry and components provided by an OEM or after-market car audio or video system manufacturer), an optional external interface port **1314**, a wireless interface or transceiver **1316** (which could be a Bluetooth or other suitable wireless transceiver), a display **1318**, and a control panel **1320**.

5

The portable device **1324** could comprise a CD player, CD changer, digital media player (e.g., MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, Apple video iPod, or other device), portable media center, portable media player, satellite receiver, digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, high-definition (HD) radio receiver, video device (e.g., DVD player or digital media player, such as the SONY PSP digital media player), cellular telephone, or any other portable device. The portable device **1324** includes a wireless interface **1326** which communicates with the wireless interface **1316** to provide a wireless communications channel or link **1322**, an optional external interface port **1328** for providing a non-wireless connection **1330** with the external interface port **1314** (which could include any suitable wired connection, such as FIREWIRE, CAN/CAN2, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, etc., or any suitable optical connection, such as D2B or MOST), device electronics **1334**, and optional external audio output **1340** and optional external audio input **1342**.

The voice recognition subsystem **1336** of the integration subsystem **1332** could comprise the HM2007 speech recognition processor manufactured by Hualon Microelectric Corporation, the VRP6679 speech recognition processor manufactured by Oki, Inc., or any other suitable speech recognition processor. The voice recognition subsystem **1336** receives control commands that are spoken by a user and are transmitted to the portable device **1324** via the wireless link

1322 or the non-wireless connection 1330 (where the car system 1310 another vehicle component connected to the car system 1310 includes a microphone for receiving voice commands). Optionally, a microphone could be connected to the external audio input 1342 of the portable device 1324 for receiving voice commands. Any desired, spoken commands could
5 be received by the integration subsystem 1332 and processed by the voice recognition subsystem 1336 into a format compatible with the device electronics 1334 of the portable device 1324 for execution thereby. For example, a user could speak a desired artist name, whereupon the voice recognition subsystem 1336 processes the spoken artist name into a digital format, passes the processed artist name to the integration subsystem 1332, and the integration subsystem 1332
10 constructs a query command and passes the query command to the device electronics 1334 along with the processed artist name to the device electronics 1334. The device electronics 1334 then queries the portable device 1324 for all songs (e.g., by searching ID3 tags associated with each song and stored in the portable device 1324) having a matching artist name. The resulting list is then passed to the integration subsystem 1332, whereupon the information is processed into a
15 format compatible with the car system 1310. Then, the information is transmitted to the car system 1310 via the wireless link 1322 or the non-wireless connection 1330 for display on the display 1318 of the car system 1310.

Voice recognition could also be used to retrieve other media files, such as video clips that
20 are stored on the portable device 1324. Such files, one retrieved, could then be processed by the integration subsystem 1332 in the manner described herein, transmitted to the car system 1310 (via the wireless link 1322 or the non-wireless connection 1330), and displayed on the display

1318 of the car system 1310. An index of such files could also be generated by the integration subsystem 1332 for quick browsing and retrieval using car system 1310 or voice commands.

The speech synthesizer 1338 provides synthesized speech corresponding to data produced
5 by the portable device 1324. For example, track lists, artist names, song titles, and other information (e.g., video clip titles, movie titles, etc.) could be retrieved from the portable device 1324 by the integration subsystem 1332 (e.g., in response to a command issued by the user at the car system 1310 or a spoken command processed by the voice recognition subsystem 1336), and synthesized speech corresponding to the retrieved information could be generated by the speech
10 synthesizer 1338 using known text-to-speech software. The speech synthesizer 1338 could include the RC 8650 or RC 8660 speech synthesis chipsets manufactured by RC Systems, Inc., or any other suitable speech synthesizers. Synthesized speech could be transmitted to the car system 1310 via the wireless link 1322 or the non-wireless connection 1330 and played through the car system 1310, or optionally, the speech could be channeled to an external device via the
15 optional external audio output 1340. It should be noted that the voice recognition subsystem 1336 and the speech synthesizer 1338 could be formed on a single integrated circuit forming part of the integration subsystem 1332. Additionally, the integration subsystem 1332 provides full control of the portable device 1324 using the car system 1310 and exchange of data, audio, and video signals between the portable device 1324 and the car system 1310, in the manner described
20 herein.

FIG. 23 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at 1400, wherein wireless integration is provide between a car audio and/or video

system 1410 and a portable audio and/or video device 1424 and voice recognition and speech synthesis capabilities are provided. The components shown in FIG. 23 are functionally identical to the components shown in FIG. 22, and reference numerals of corresponding components have been increased by 100. In this embodiment, the integration subsystem 1432 is positioned in the
5 car system 1410, which includes system electronics 1412, an optional external interface port 1414, a wireless interface 1416, a display 1418, and a control panel 1420. The integration subsystem 1432 includes a voice recognition subsystem 1436 and a speech synthesizer 1438, which provide the voice recognition and speech synthesis capabilities described above with reference to FIG. 22. The portable device 1424 includes a wireless interface 1426, and optional
10 external interface port 1428, device electronics 1434, an optional external audio output port 1440, and an optional external audio input port 1442.

FIG. 24 is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention, indicated generally at 1450, for wirelessly integrating a portable audio and/or video device for
15 use with a car audio and/or video system. In step 1452, a wireless link is established between the portable device and the car audio and/or video system. As discussed above, the wireless link could be any suitable wireless communications link, such as a Bluetooth wireless link, an IEEE 802.11 link, or any other suitable link. In step 1454, the car audio and/or video system type is determined, such as the manufacturer name and/or model identifier. In step 1456, the portable
20 audio and/or video device type is identified, such as the manufacturer name and/or model identifier. In step 1458, a protocol conversion software block is loaded from memory, based upon the corresponding device types of the car audio and/or video system and the portable audio and/or video device. The protocol conversion software block includes code for converting

commands issued at the car audio and/or video system into a format compatible with the portable audio and/or video device, as well as code for converting data generated by the portable audio and/or video device into a format compatible with the car audio and/or video system.

5 In step 1460, data generated by the portable audio and/or video device is processed by the protocol conversion software block. Then, in step 1466, the processed data is transmitted to the car audio and/or video system for display thereon, using the wireless link. In step 1462, audio and/or video signal generated by the portable audio and/or video device are channeled to the car audio and/or video system using the wireless link. In step 1464, a determination is made as to
10 whether commands from the car audio and/or video system are to be processed. If a negative determination is made, step 1458 is re-invoked. Otherwise, step 1468 is invoked, wherein the commands are processed using the protocol conversion software block. Then, in step 1470, the processed commands are transmitted to the car audio and/or video system using the wireless link. Step 1458 is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

15

Importantly, the present invention allows video files in any format (including video clips, movies, pictures, etc.) that are stored on a portable device to be displayed on one or more displays of a car audio and/or video system, and playback of such files to be controlled using the car audio and/or video system. Examples of such files include, but are not limited to, MPEG,
20 WMV, AVI, JPEG, GIF, TIFF, MP4, or any other suitable video format. Such files could be stored on a cell phone, a portable media center, a portable media player, or any other portable device which is integrated by the present invention (through a wired or wireless connection) for use with a car audio and/or video system. Thus, for example, a video clip downloaded to a

Express Mail Label No.: EV623706889US

cellular telephone or a video clip stored on a portable device (e.g., an Apple video iPod) can be displayed on one or more displays of a car audio and/or video system. Further, the present invention allows for live video streams, such as live television video received by a cellular telephone or other portable device, to be displayed on one or more displays of the car audio
5 and/or video system.

Having thus described the invention in detail, it is to be understood that the foregoing description is not intended to limit the spirit and scope thereof.

CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

1. A multimedia device integration system comprising:
 - a car audio system having a display associated therewith;
 - 5 a portable device external to the car audio system;
 - a first wireless interface in communication with the car audio system;
 - a second wireless interface in communication with the portable device, the first and second wireless interfaces establishing a wireless communications link between the car audio system and the portable device; and
 - 10 an integration subsystem for generating a device presence signal for maintaining the car audio system in a state responsive to the portable device, wherein the integration subsystem transmits the device presence signal to the car audio system, channels audio from the portable device to the car audio system using the wireless communications link, processes video information generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car audio system,
 - 15 and transmits the processed video information to the car audio system using the wireless communications link for displaying the processed video information on the display of the car audio system.

2. The system of Claim 1, wherein the integration subsystem processes data generated by
20 the portable device into a format compatible with the car audio system and displays the processed data on the display of the car audio system.

3. The system of Claim 1, wherein the integration subsystem receives control commands issued at the car audio system and transmitted over the wireless communications link, processes the commands into a format compatible with the portable device, and dispatches the processed commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

5

4. The system of Claim 1, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a voice recognition subsystem for processing spoken control commands issued by a user.

5. The system of Claim 4, wherein the integration subsystem retrieves an audio file or a
10 video file from the portable device in response to a spoken command.

6. The system of Claim 4, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a speech synthesizer for generating synthesized speech corresponding to data generated by the portable device.

15

7. The system of Claim 1, wherein the car audio system comprises an OEM car audio system.

8. The system of Claim 1, wherein the car audio system comprises an after-market car audio
20 system.

9. The system of Claim 1, wherein the portable device comprises a portable receiver.

10. The system of Claim 10, wherein the portable receiver comprises a digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, a high-definition (HD) radio receiver, or a satellite receiver.

5

11. The system of Claim 1, wherein the portable device comprises a portable digital media player.

12. The system of Claim 11, wherein the portable digital media player comprises a video
10 device, a portable media center, a portable media player, an MP3 player, an MP4 player, a WMV
player, an Apple iPod, or an Apple video iPod.

13. The system of Claim 1, wherein the portable device comprises a cellular telephone.

15 14. The system of Claim 1, further comprising a non-wireless connection established
between the car audio system and the portable device for exchanging data, commands, audio and
video signals between the car audio system and the portable device.

Express Mail Label No.: EV623706889US

15. The system of Claim 1, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the portable device.

16. The system of Claim 1, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the car
5 audio system.

17. The system of Claim 1, wherein the video information comprises a video file stored on the portable device.

10 18. The system of Claim 1, wherein the video information comprises a picture stored on the portable device.

19. The system of Claim 1, wherein the video information comprises a television signal received by the portable device.

15

20. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car video system having a display associated therewith;

a portable device external to the car video system;

a first wireless interface in communication with the car video system;

5 a second wireless interface in communication with the portable device, the first and second wireless interfaces establishing a wireless communications link between the car video system and the portable device; and

an integration subsystem for generating a device presence signal for maintaining the car video system in a state responsive to the portable device, wherein the integration subsystem
10 transmits the device presence signal to the car video system, channels audio from the portable device to the car video system using the wireless communications link, processes video information generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car video system, and transmits the processed video information to the car video system using the wireless communications link for displaying the processed video information on the display of the car
15 video system.

21. The system of Claim 20, wherein the integration subsystem processes data generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car video system and displays the processed data on the display of the car video system.

20

22. The system of Claim 20, wherein the integration subsystem receives control commands issued at the car video system and transmitted over the wireless communications link, processes the commands into a format compatible with the portable device, and dispatches the processed commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

5

23. The system of Claim 20, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a voice recognition subsystem for processing spoken control commands issued by a user.

24. The system of Claim 23, wherein the integration subsystem retrieves an audio file or a
10 video file from the portable device in response to a spoken command.

25. The system of Claim 23, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a speech synthesizer for generating synthesized speech corresponding to data generated by the portable device.

15

26. The system of Claim 20, wherein the car video system comprises an OEM car video system.

27. The system of Claim 20, wherein the car video system comprises an after-market car
20 video system.

28. The system of Claim 20, wherein the portable device comprises a portable receiver.

29. The system of Claim 28, wherein the portable receiver comprises a digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, a high-definition (HD) radio receiver, or a satellite receiver.

5

30. The system of Claim 20, wherein the portable device comprises a portable digital media player.

31. The system of Claim 30, wherein the portable digital media player comprises a video
10 device, a portable media center, a portable media player, an MP3 player, an MP4 player, a WMV
player, an Apple iPod, or an Apple video iPod.

32. The system of Claim 20, wherein the portable device comprises a cellular telephone.

15 33. The system of Claim 20, further comprising a non-wireless connection established
between the car video system and the portable device for exchanging data, commands, audio and
video signals between the car video system and the portable device.

Express Mail Label No.: EV623706889US

34. The system of Claim 20, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the portable device.

35. The system of Claim 20, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the car
5 video system.

36. The system of Claim 20, wherein the video information comprises a video file stored on the portable device.

10 37. The system of Claim 20, wherein the video information comprises a picture stored on the portable device.

38. The system of Claim 20, wherein the video information comprises a television signal received by the portable device.

15

39. A multimedia device integration system comprising:
- a car audio system;
 - a portable device external to the car audio system;
 - a docking slot formed in the car audio system for receiving the portable device and
- 5 establishing electrical communication between the car audio system and the portable device; and
- an integration subsystem for generating a device presence signal for maintaining the car
- audio system in a state responsive to the portable device, wherein the integration subsystem receives data generated by the portable device, processes the data into a format compatible with the car audio system, and transmits the processed data, the device presence signal, and audio
- 10 signals to the car audio system.
40. The system of Claim 39, wherein the processed data is displayed on a display of the car audio system.
- 15 41. The system of Claim 39, wherein the integration subsystem processes a video file stored on the portable device into a format compatible with the car audio system and transmits the video file to the car audio system for displaying the video file on a display of the car audio system.

42. The system of Claim 39, wherein the integration subsystem receives control commands issued at the car audio system, processes the commands into a format compatible with the portable device, and dispatches the processed commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

5

43. The system of Claim 39, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a voice recognition subsystem for processing spoken control commands issued by a user.

44. The system of Claim 43, wherein the integration subsystem retrieves an audio file or a video file from the portable device in response to a spoken command.

10

45. The system of Claim 43, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a speech synthesizer for generating synthesized speech corresponding to data generated by the portable device.

15

46. The system of Claim 39, wherein the car audio system comprises an OEM car audio system.

20

47. The system of Claim 39, wherein the car audio system comprises an after-market car audio system.

48. The system of Claim 39, wherein the portable device comprises a portable receiver.

49. The system of Claim 48, wherein the portable receiver comprises a digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, a high-definition (HD) radio receiver, or a satellite receiver.

5

50. The system of Claim 39, wherein the portable device comprises a portable digital media player.

51. The system of Claim 50, wherein the portable digital media player comprises a video
10 device, a portable media center, a portable media player, an MP3 player, an MP4 player, a WMV
player, an Apple iPod, or an Apple video iPod.

52. The system of Claim 39, wherein the portable device comprises a cellular telephone.

15 53. The system of Claim 39, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the
portable device.

54. The system of Claim 39, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the car
audio system.

55. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car video system;

a portable device external to the car video system;

a docking slot formed in the car video system for receiving the portable device and
5 establishing electrical communication between the car video system and the portable device; and

an integration subsystem for generating a device presence signal for maintaining the car
video system in a state responsive to the portable device, wherein the integration subsystem
receives data generated by the portable device, processes the data into a format compatible with
the car video system, and transmits the processed data, the device presence signal, audio signals,
10 and video signals to the car video system.

56. The system of Claim 55, wherein the processed data is displayed on a display of the car
video system.

15 57. The system of Claim 55, wherein the integration subsystem processes a video file stored
on the portable device into a format compatible with the car video system and transmits the video
file to the car video system for displaying the video file on a display of the car video system.

58. The system of Claim 55, wherein the integration subsystem receives control commands issued at the car video system, processes the commands into a format compatible with the portable device, and dispatches the processed commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

5

59. The system of Claim 55, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a voice recognition subsystem for processing spoken control commands issued by a user.

60. The system of Claim 59, wherein the integration subsystem retrieves an audio file or a video file from the portable device in response to a spoken command.

10

61. The system of Claim 59, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a speech synthesizer for generating synthesized speech corresponding to data generated by the portable device.

15

62. The system of Claim 55, wherein the car video system comprises an OEM car video system.

20

63. The system of Claim 55, wherein the car video system comprises an after-market car video system.

64. The system of Claim 55, wherein the portable device comprises a portable receiver.

65. The system of Claim 64, wherein the portable receiver comprises a digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, a high-definition (HD) radio receiver, or a satellite receiver.

5

66. The system of Claim 55, wherein the portable device comprises a portable digital media player.

67. The system of Claim 66, wherein the portable digital media player comprises a video
10 device, a portable media center, a portable media player, an MP3 player, an MP4 player, a WMV
player, an Apple iPod, or an Apple video iPod.

68. The system of Claim 55, wherein the portable device comprises a cellular telephone.

15 69. The system of Claim 55, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the
portable device.

70. The system of Claim 55, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the car
video system.

71. A method for wirelessly integrating a portable device for use with a car audio system comprising:

establishing a wireless communications link between the car audio system and the portable device;

5 generating a device presence signal for maintaining the car audio system in a state responsive to the portable device;

transmitting the device presence signal to the car audio system over the wireless communications link;

10 processing video information generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car audio system;

transmitting the processed video information and audio signals generated by the portable device to the car audio system over the wireless communications link;

displaying the processed video information on a display of the car audio system; and

playing the audio signals over the car audio system.

15

72. The method of Claim 71, further comprising processing data generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car audio system.

Express Mail Label No.: EV623706889US

73. The method of Claim 72, further comprising transmitting the processed data over the wireless communications link to the car audio system.

74. The method of Claim 73, further comprising displaying the processed data on a display of
5 the car audio system.

75. The method of Claim 71, further comprising transmitting control commands issued by a user at the car audio system over the wireless communications link.

10 76. The method of Claim 75, further comprising receiving the control commands at the portable device and processing the control commands into a format compatible with the portable device.

77. The method of Claim 76, further comprising dispatching the processed control commands
15 to the portable device for execution thereby.

78. The method of Claim 71, further comprising receiving spoken control commands with a voice recognition subsystem and processing the spoken control commands into a format compatible with the portable device.

79. The method of Claim 78, further comprising dispatching the processed control commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

80. The method of Claim 71, further comprising generating synthesized speech
5 corresponding to data generated by the portable device.

81. A method for wirelessly integrating a portable device for use with a car video system comprising:

10 establishing a wireless communications link between the car video system and the portable device;

generating a device presence signal for maintaining the car video system in a state responsive to the portable device;

transmitting the device presence signal to the car video system over the wireless communications link;

15 processing video information generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car video system;

transmitting the processed video information and audio signals generated by the portable device to the car video system over the wireless communications link;

displaying the processed video information on a display of the car video system; and

playing the audio signals over the car video system.

82. The method of Claim 81, further comprising processing data generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car video system.

5

83. The method of Claim 82, further comprising transmitting the processed data over the wireless communications link to the car video system.

84. The method of Claim 83, further comprising displaying the processed data on a display of
10 the car video system.

85. The method of Claim 81, further comprising transmitting control commands issued by a user at the car video system over the wireless communications link.

15 86. The method of Claim 85, further comprising receiving the control commands at the portable device and processing the control commands into a format compatible with the portable device.

Express Mail Label No.: EV623706889US

87. The method of Claim 86, further comprising dispatching the processed control commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

88. The method of Claim 81, further comprising receiving spoken control commands with a voice recognition subsystem and processing the spoken control commands into a format compatible with the portable device.

89. The method of Claim 88, further comprising dispatching the processed control commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

10

90. The method of Claim 81, further comprising generating synthesized speech corresponding to data generated by the portable device.

Express Mail Label No.: EV623706889US

91. A docking station for docking and integrating a portable device for use with a car stereo, comprising:

a base portion;

a bottom member connected to the base portion;

5 a top member removably connected to the base portion, the base portion, bottom member, and top member defining a cavity for receiving a portable device; and

an integration device connected to the base portion for integrating the portable device with a car stereo.

10

ABSTRACT

An multimedia device integration system is provided. One or more after-market audio or video devices, such as a CD player, CD changer, digital media device (*e.g.*, MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, portable media center, or other device) satellite receiver (*e.g.*, XM or Sirius receiver), DAB receiver, video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), cellular telephone, or any other device or combinations thereof, is integrated for use with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo or video system, wherein control commands can be issued at the car stereo or video system and data from the after-market device can be displayed on the car stereo or video system. Control commands generated at the car stereo or video system are received, processed, converted into a format recognizable by the after-market device, and dispatched to the after-market device for execution. Information from the after-market device is converted into a format recognizable by the car stereo or video system, and dispatched to the car stereo or video system for display thereon. One or more auxiliary input sources can be integrated with the car stereo or video system, and selected using the controls of the car stereo or video system. A docking station is provided for docking a portable audio or video device for integration with the car stereo or video system. Wireless integration between the portable audio or video device and a car stereo or video system is provided, and voice recognition and speech synthesis capabilities are provided in the portable audio or video device or the car stereo or video system.

20

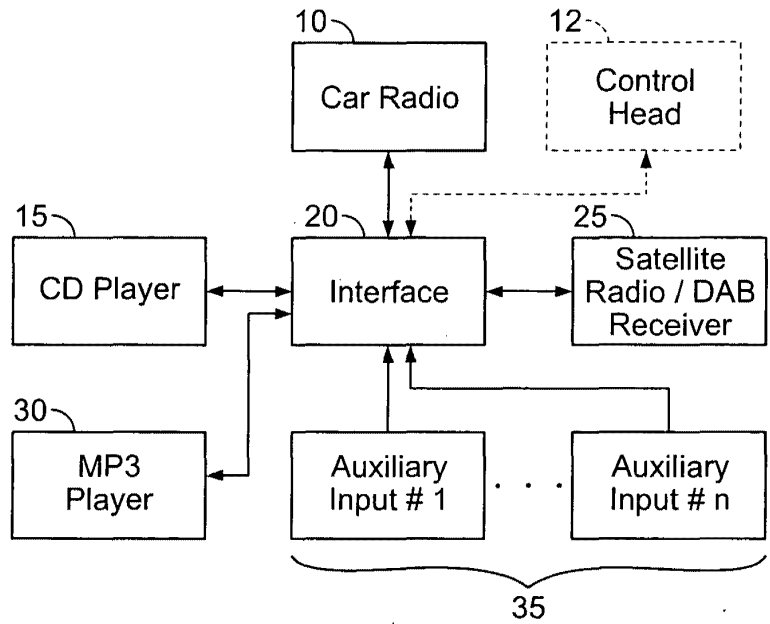


FIG. 1

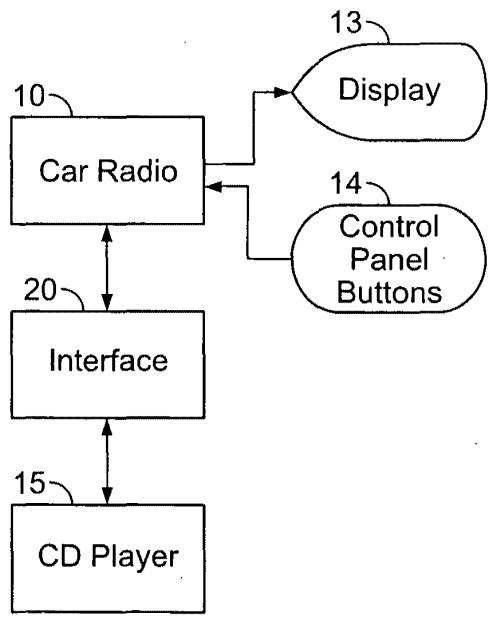


FIG. 2A

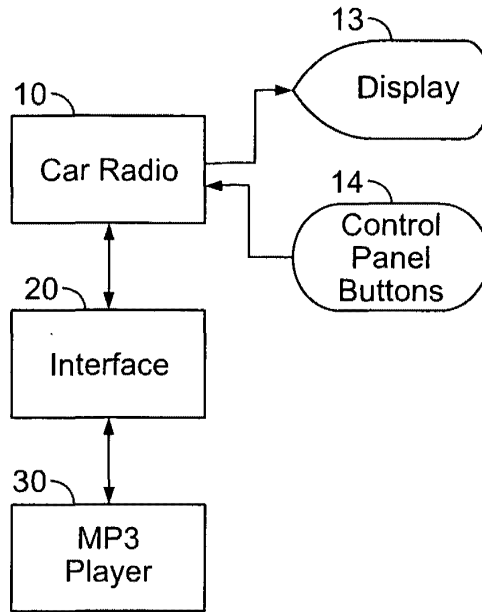


FIG. 2B

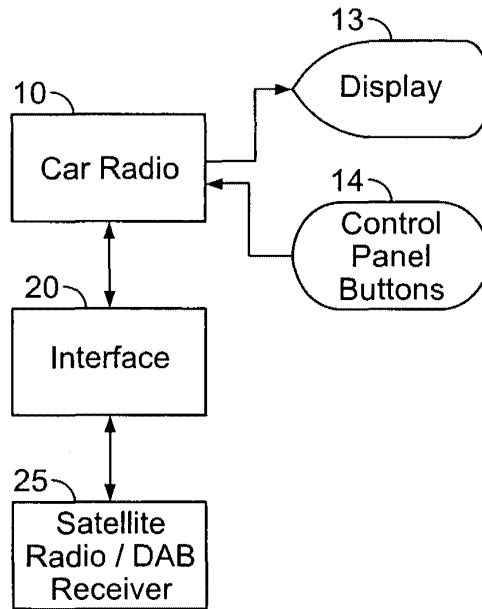


FIG. 2C

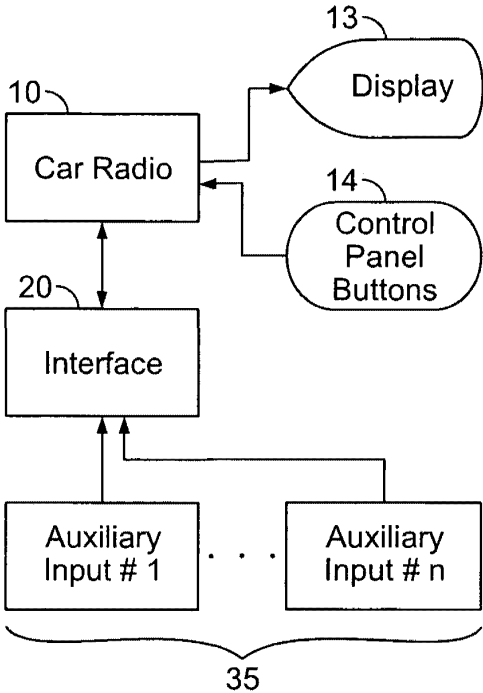


FIG. 2D

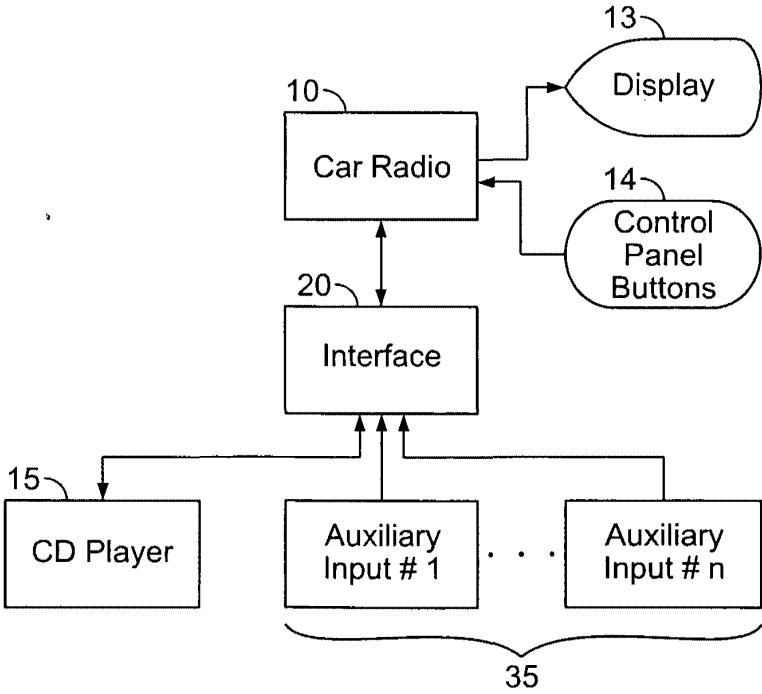


FIG. 2E

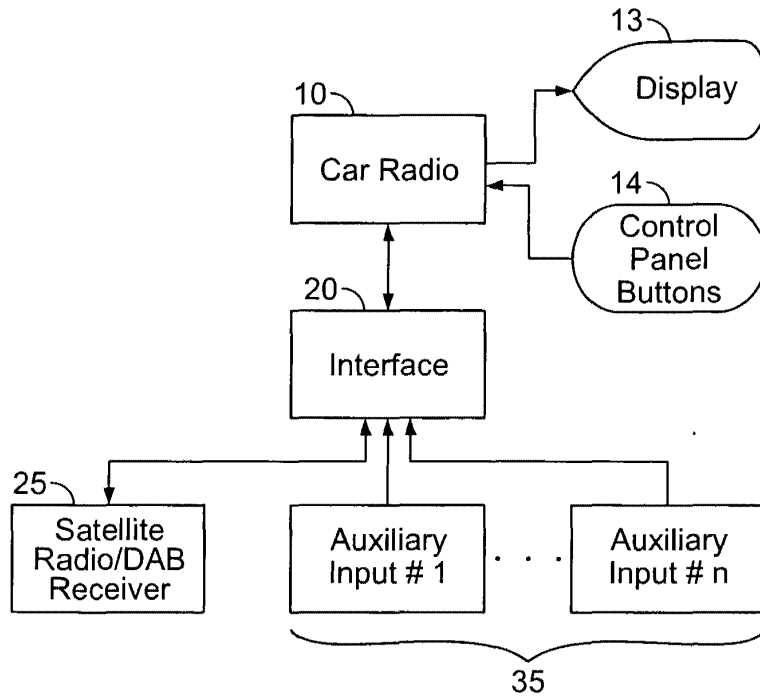


FIG. 2F

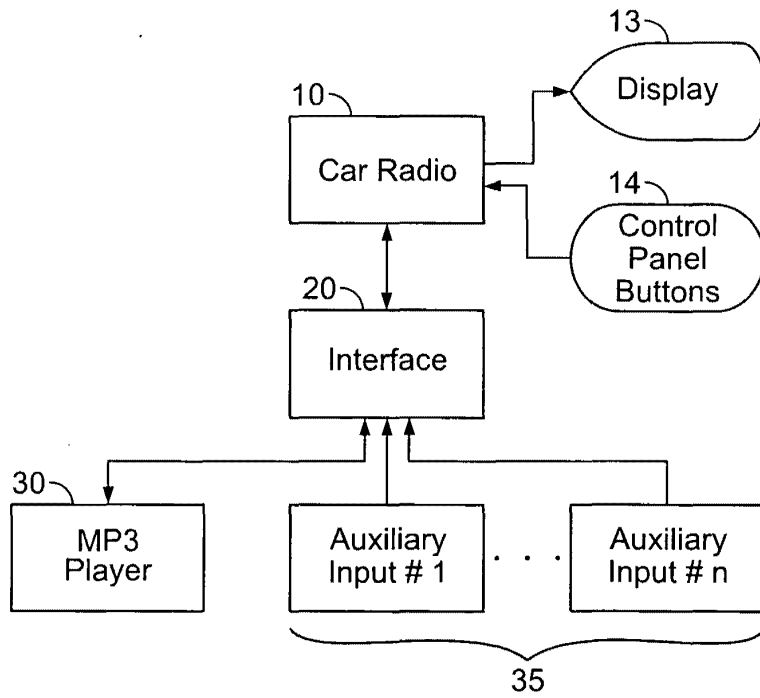


FIG. 2G

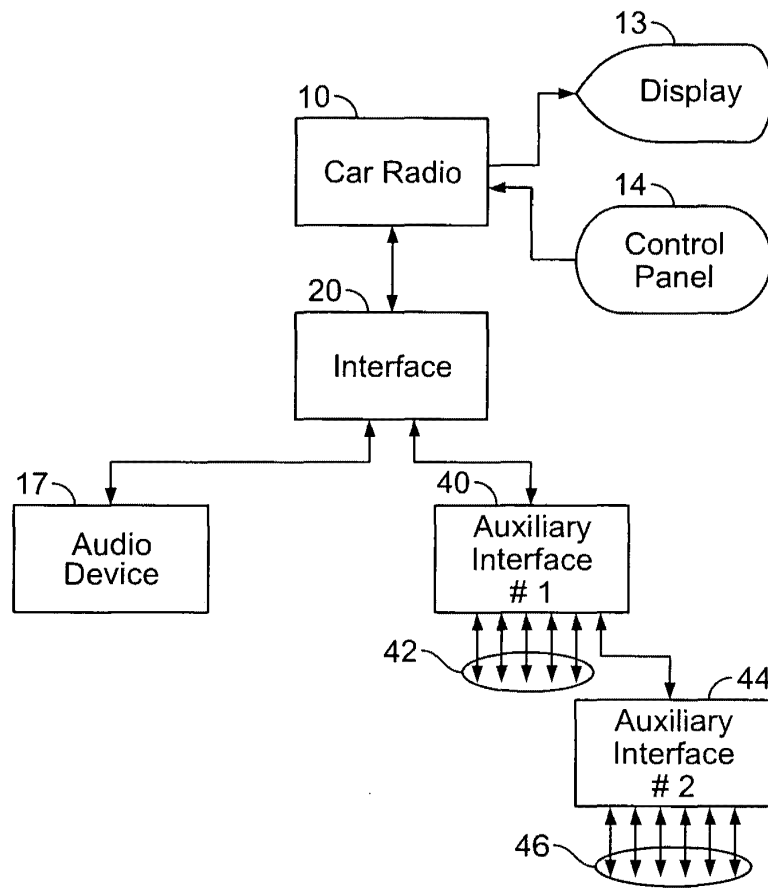


FIG. 2H

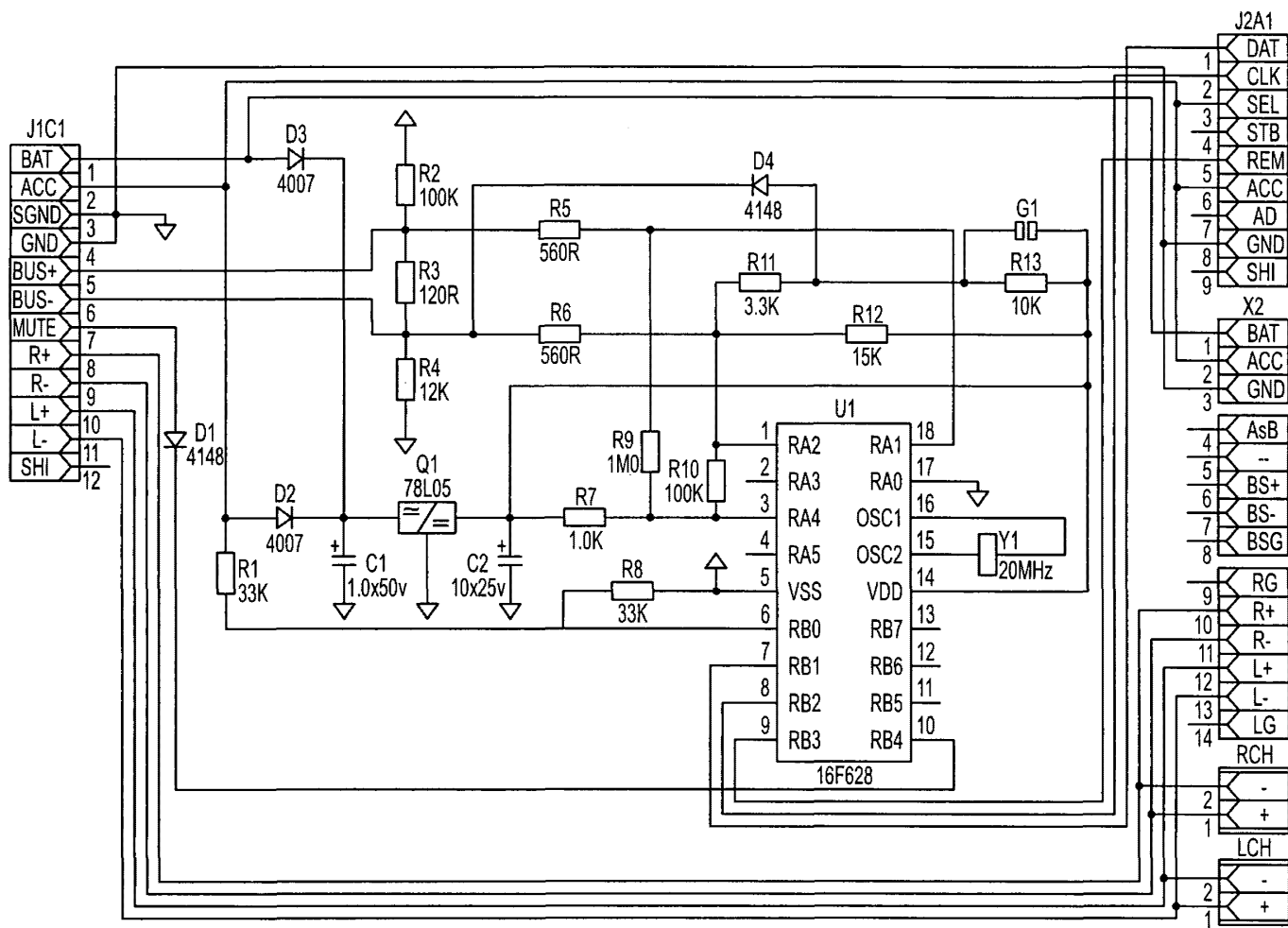


FIG. 3A

NEW SHEET
 Attorney Docket No.:99879-00026
 Inventor(s): Ira Marlowe
 Title: Multimedia Device Integration System

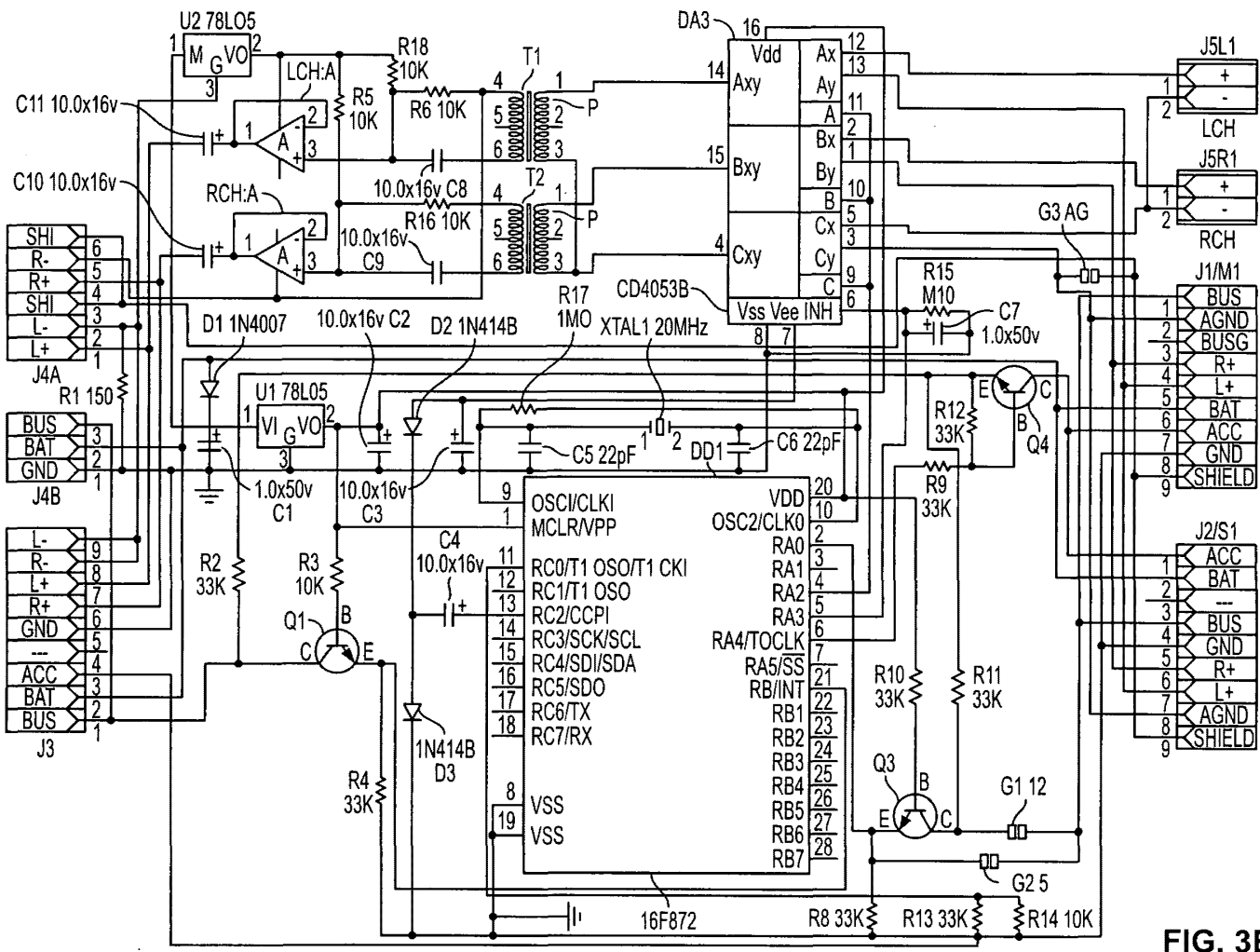


FIG. 3B

NEW SHEET
 Attorney Docket No.: 99879-00026
 Inventor(s): Ira Marlowe
 Title: Multimedia Device Integration System

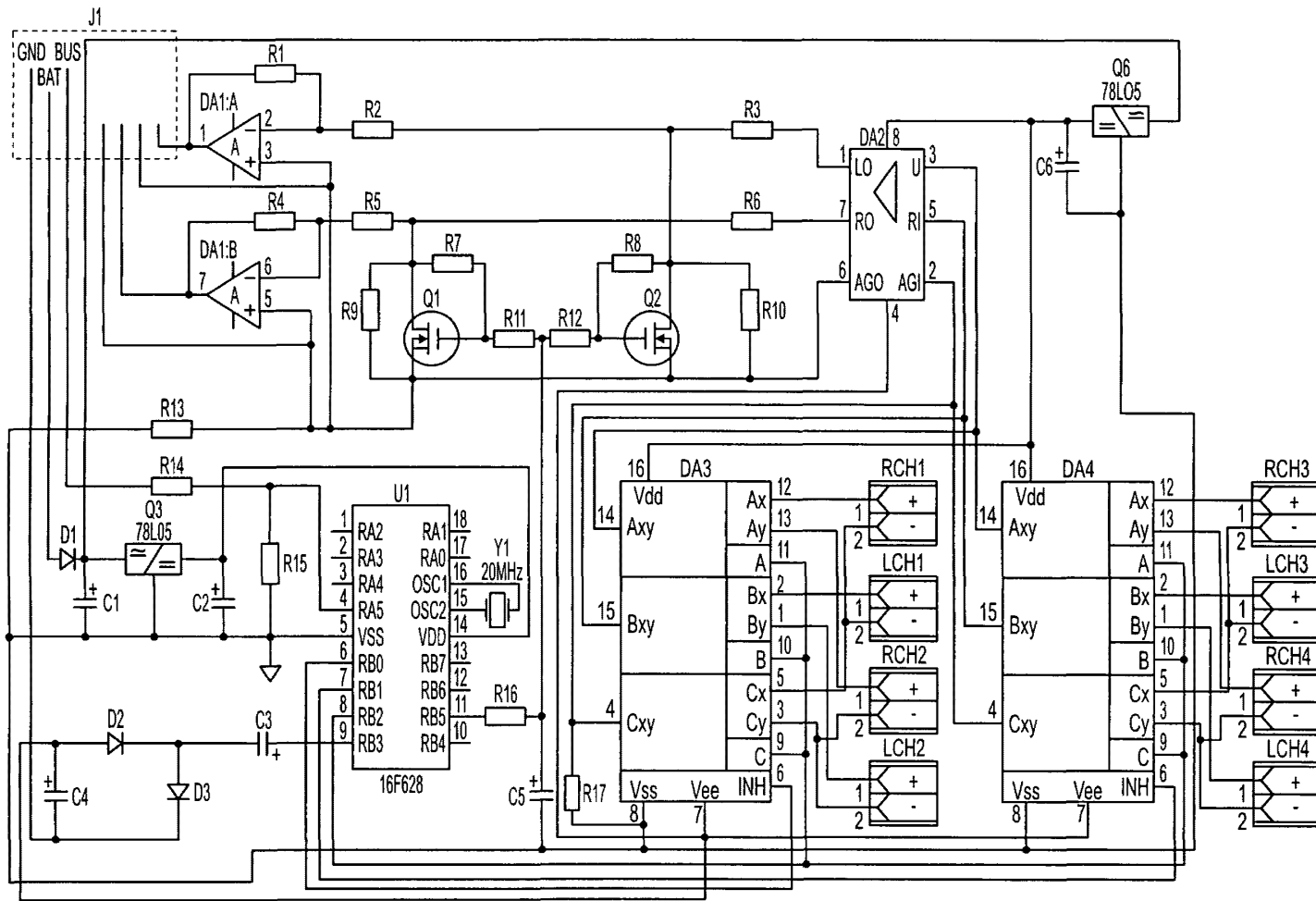


FIG. 3C

NEW SHEET
 Attorney Docket No.: 99879-00026
 Inventor(s): Ira Marlowe
 Title: Multimedia Device Integration System

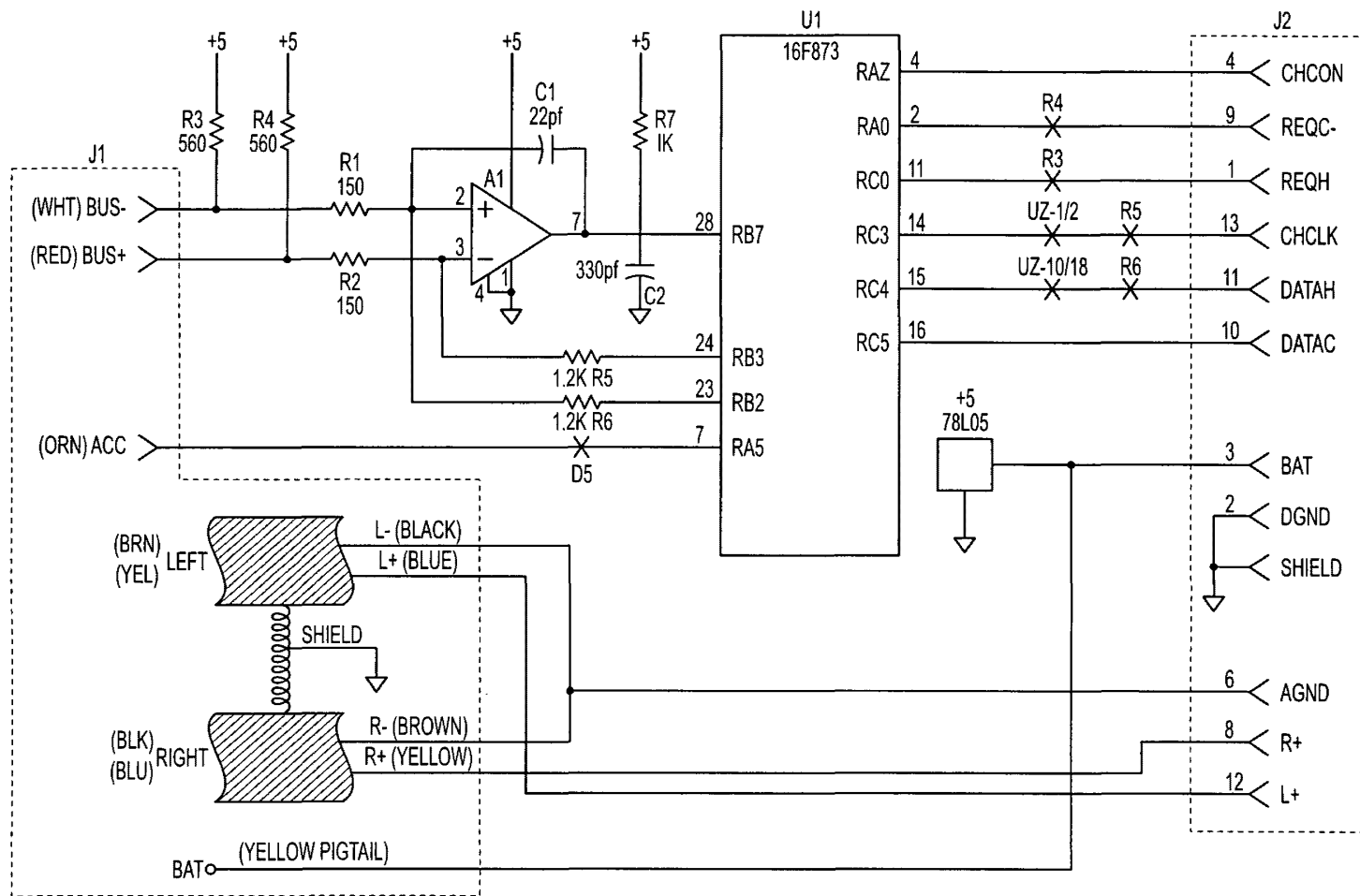


FIG. 3D

NEW SHEET
 Attorney Docket No.: 99879-00026
 Inventor(s): Ira Marlowe
 Title: Multimedia Device Integration System

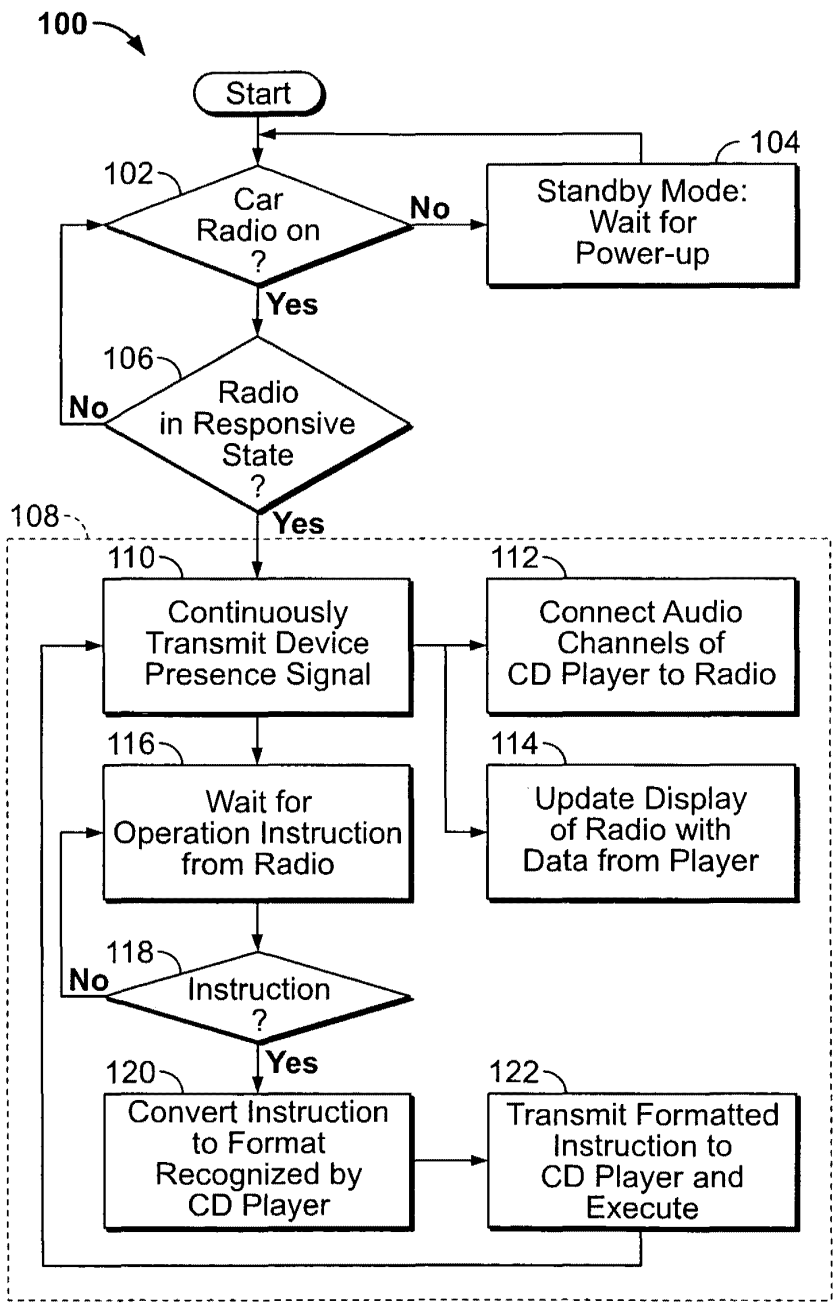


FIG. 4A

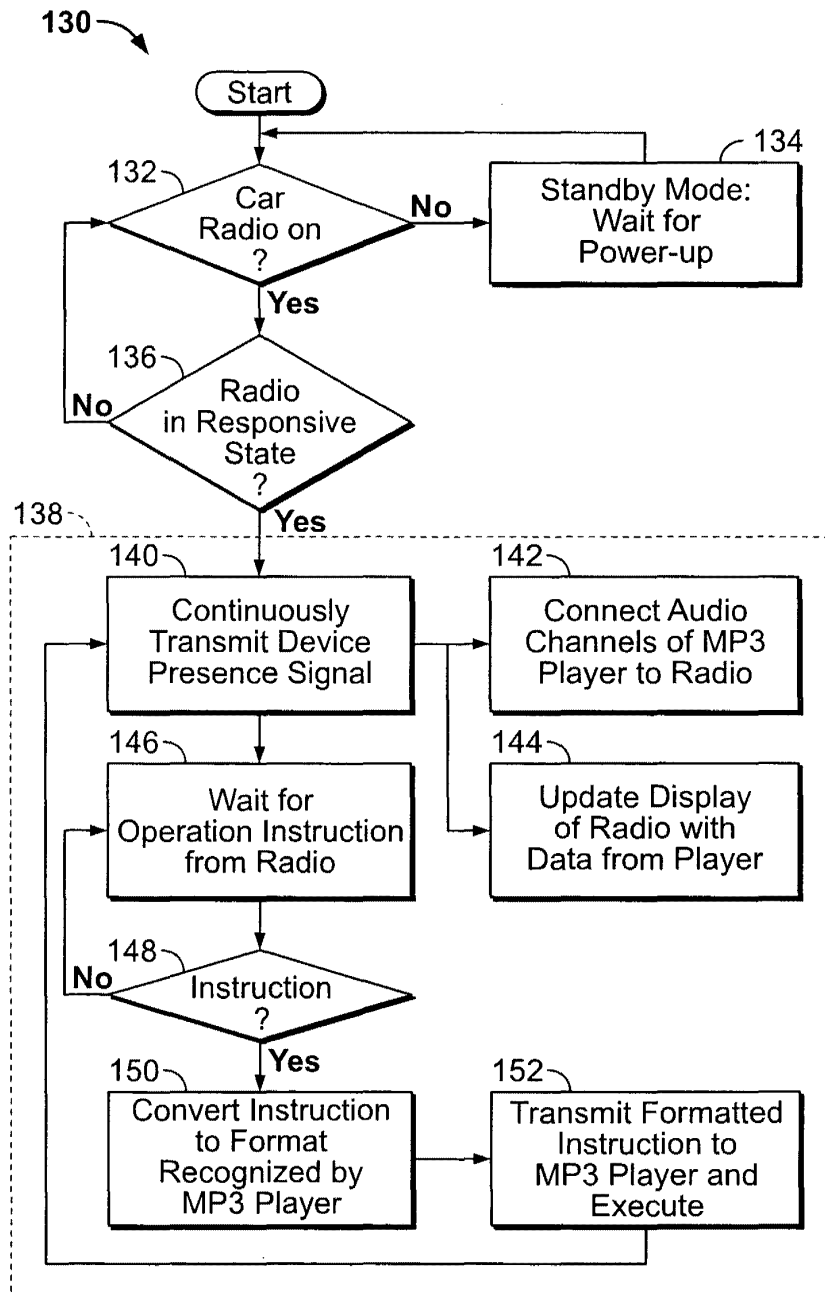


FIG. 4B

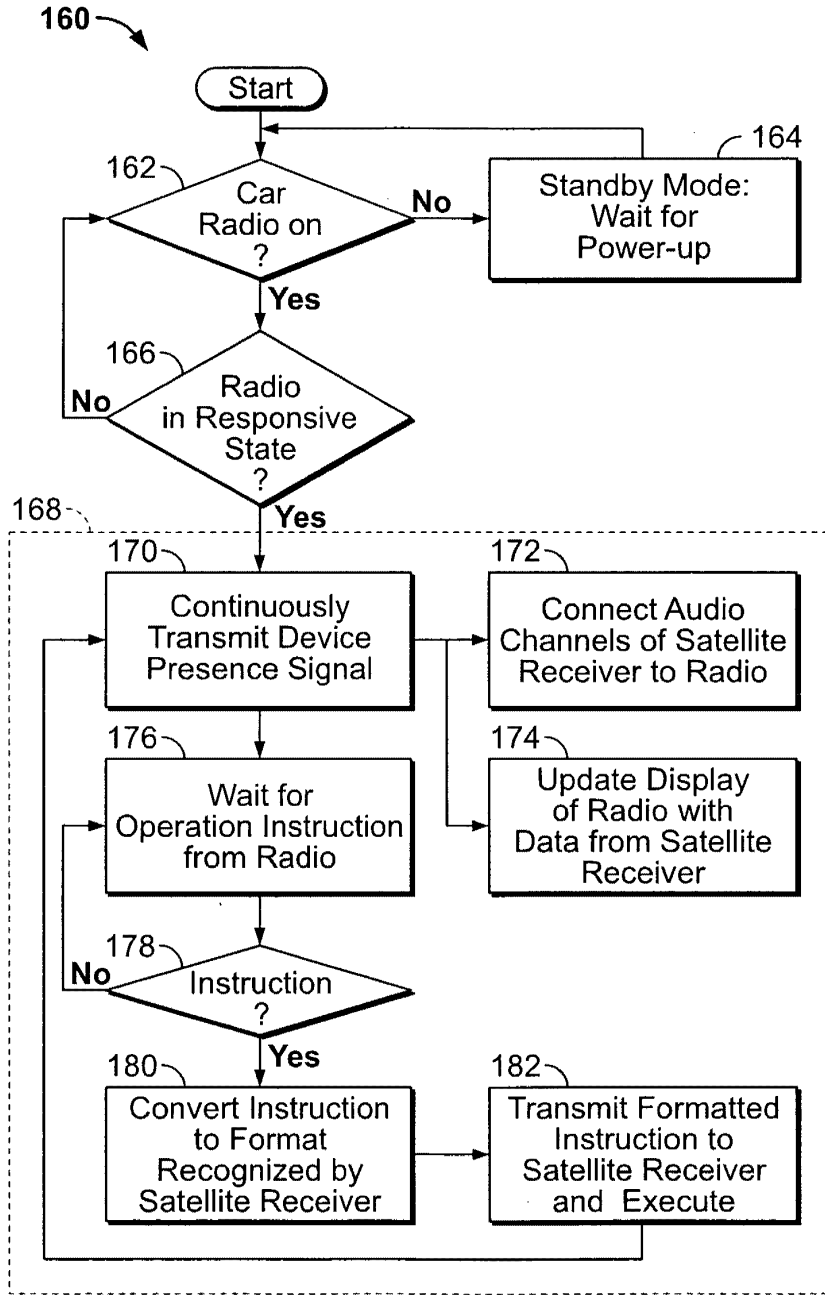


FIG. 4C

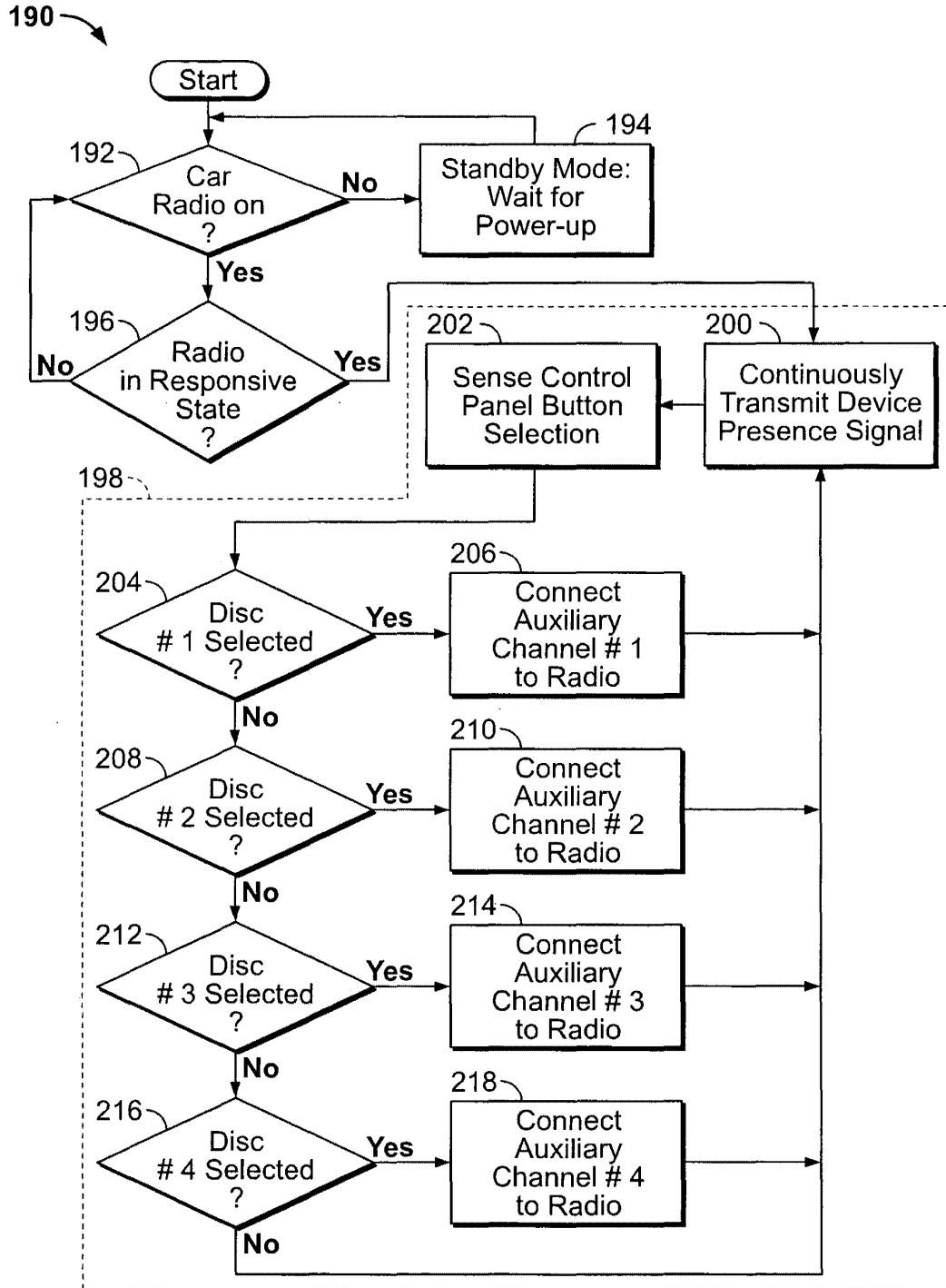


FIG. 4D

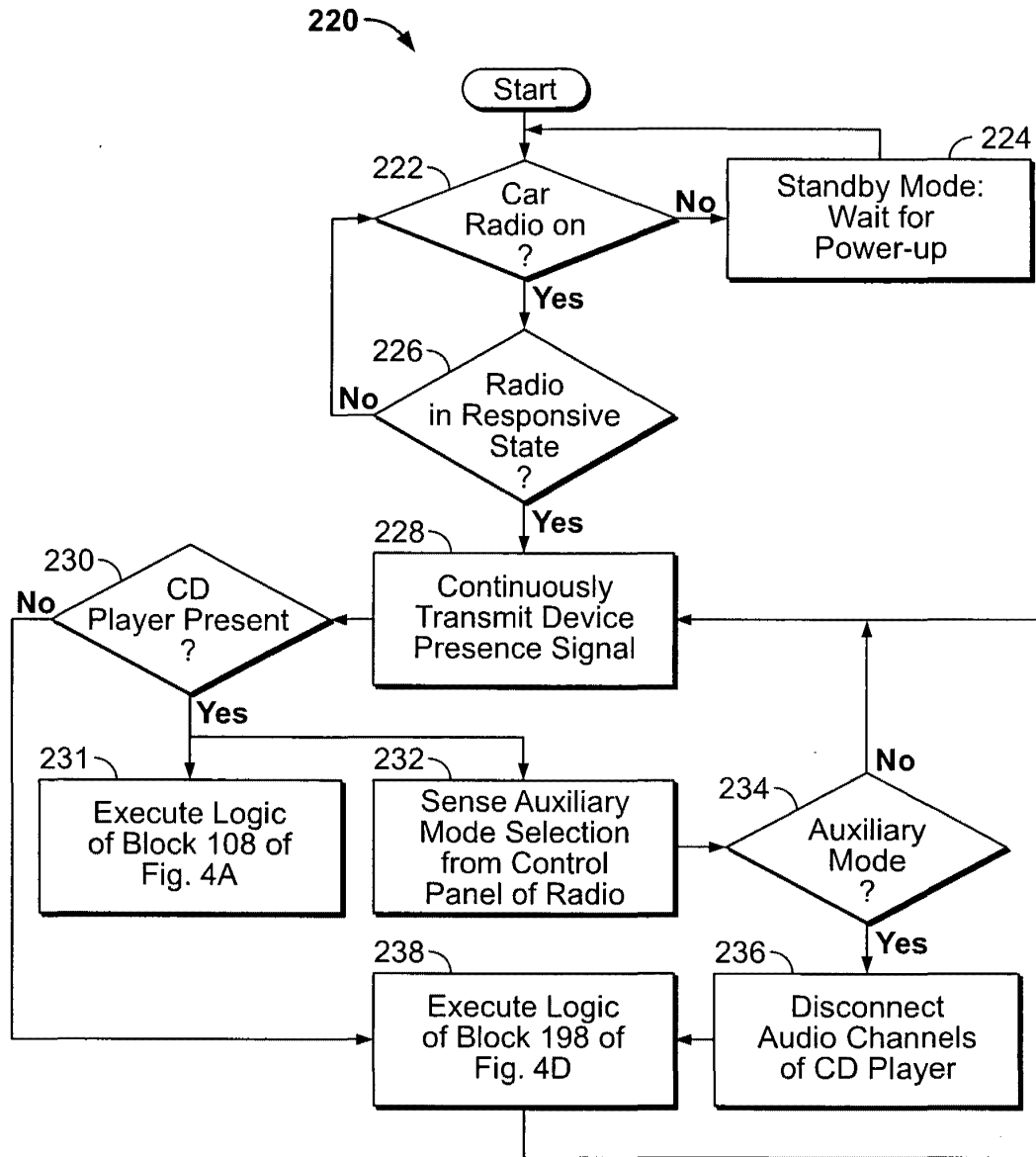


FIG. 4E

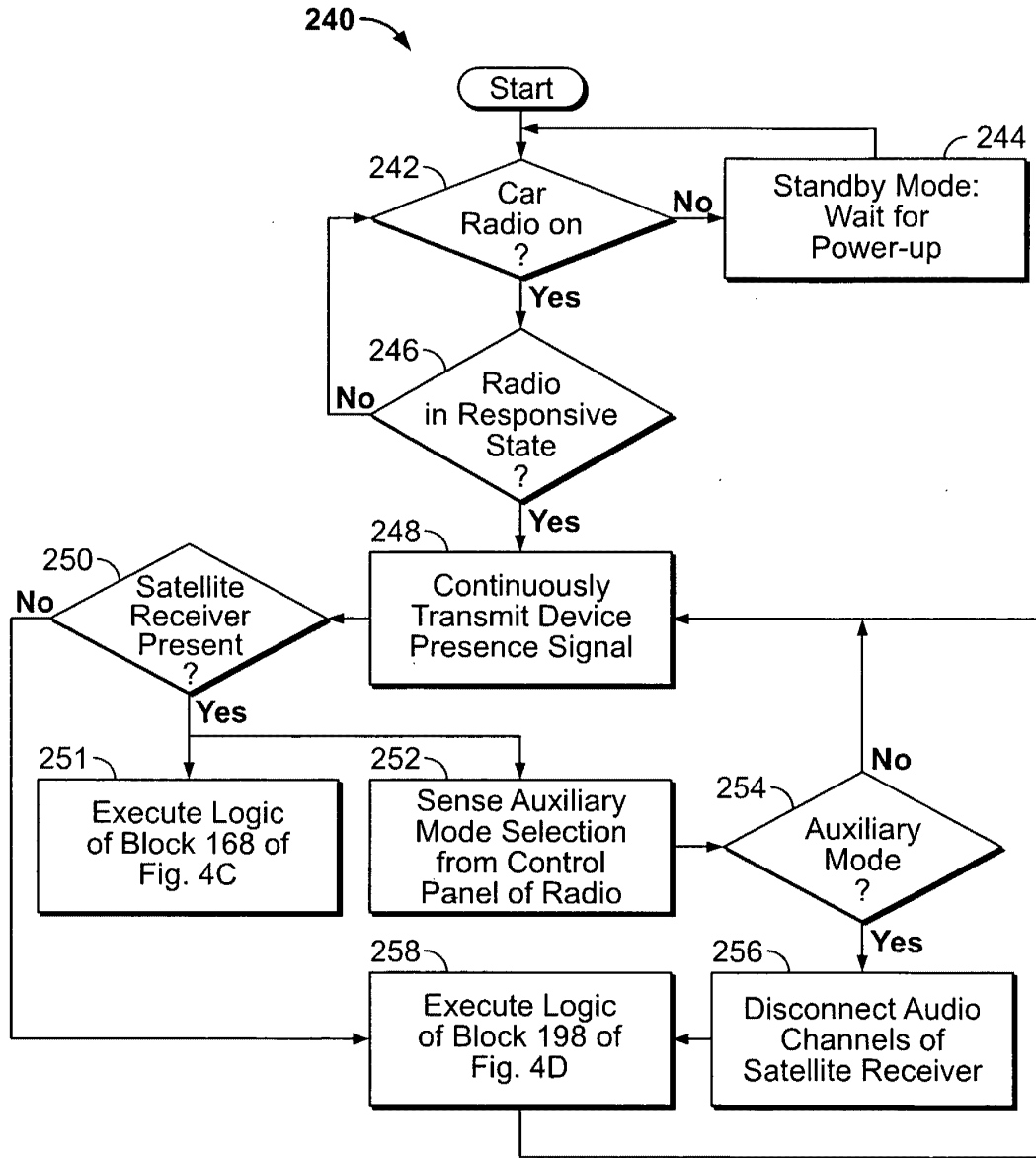


FIG. 4F

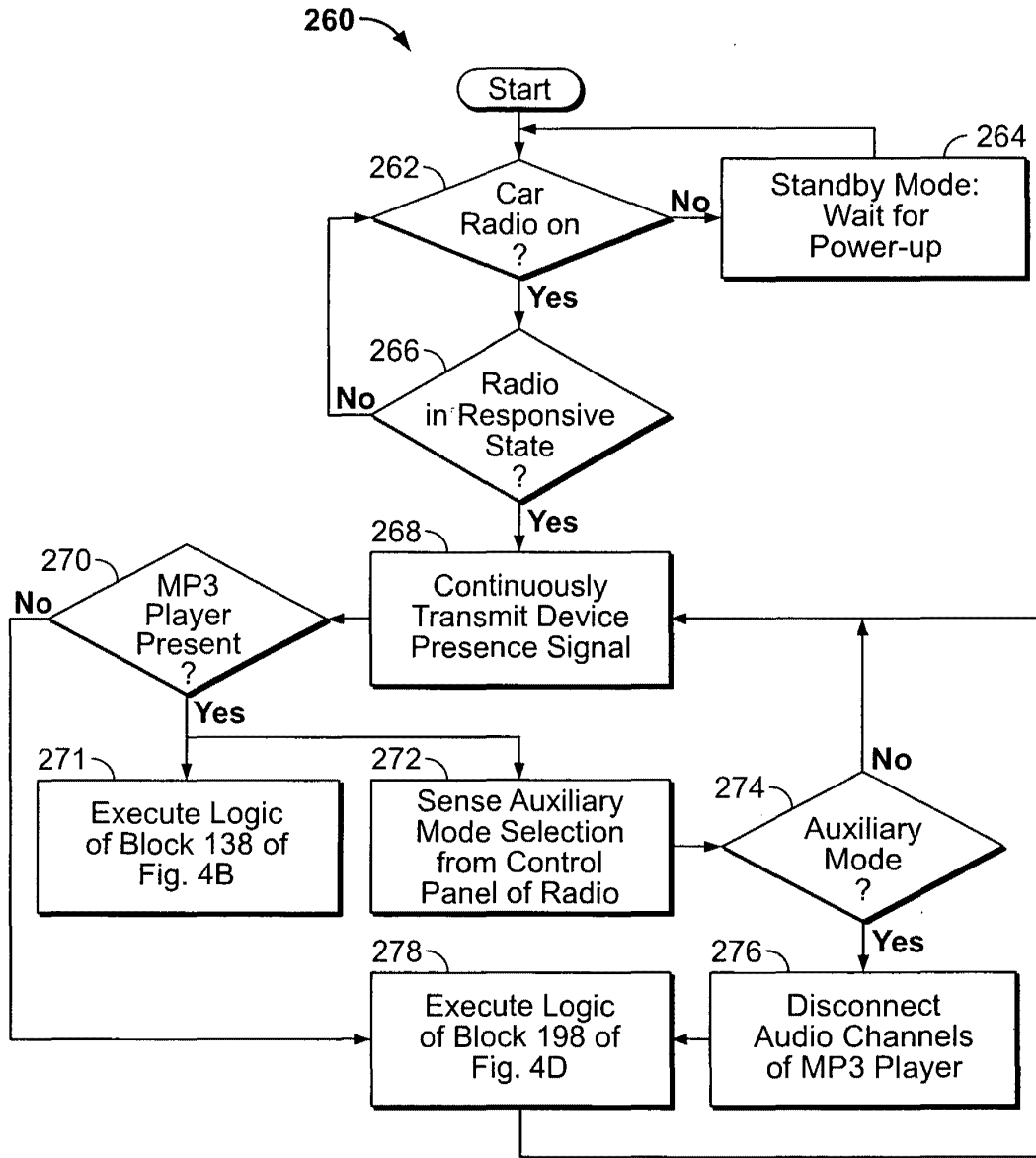


FIG. 4G

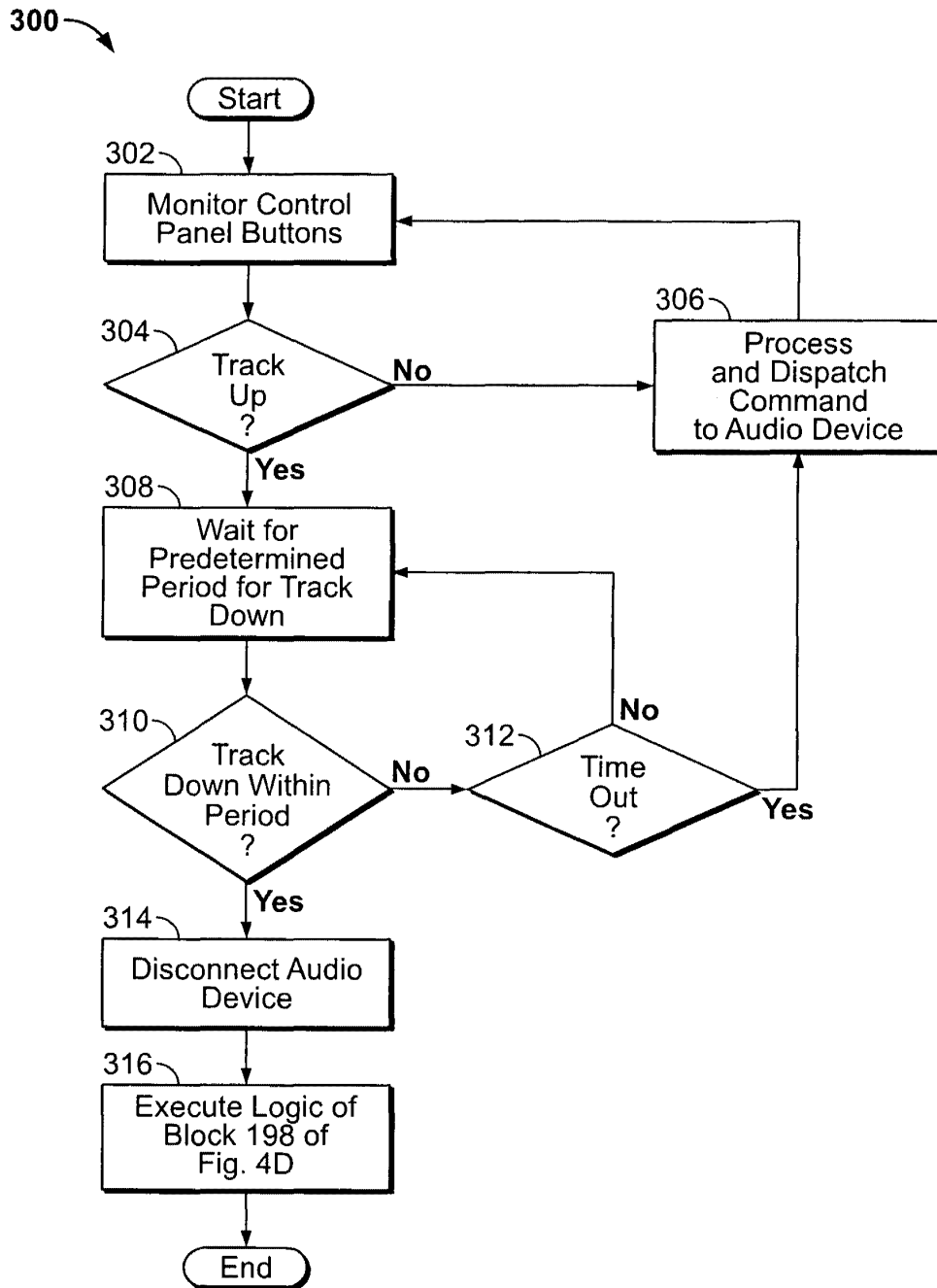


FIG. 5

320

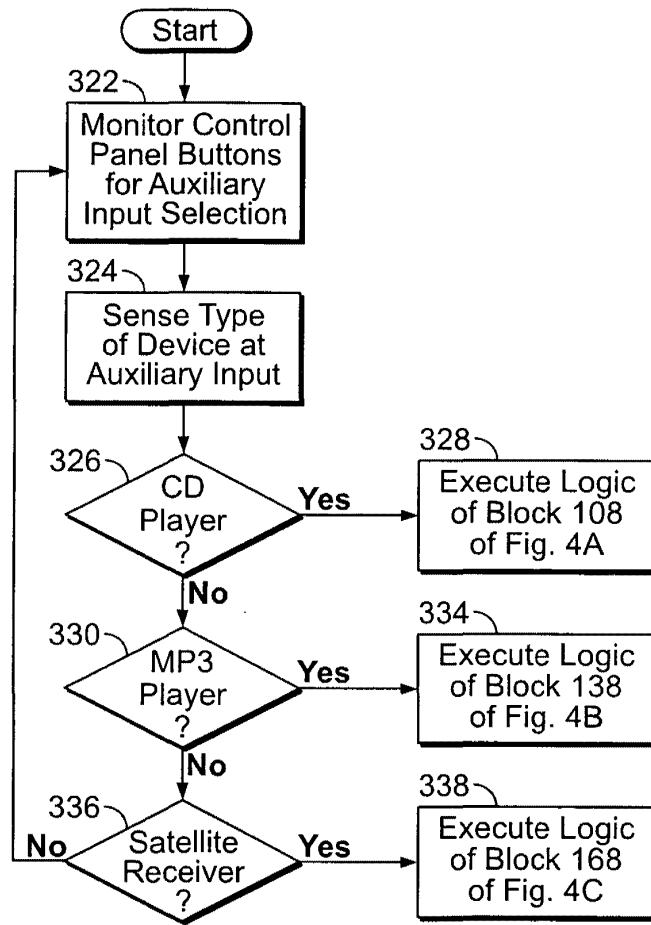


FIG. 6

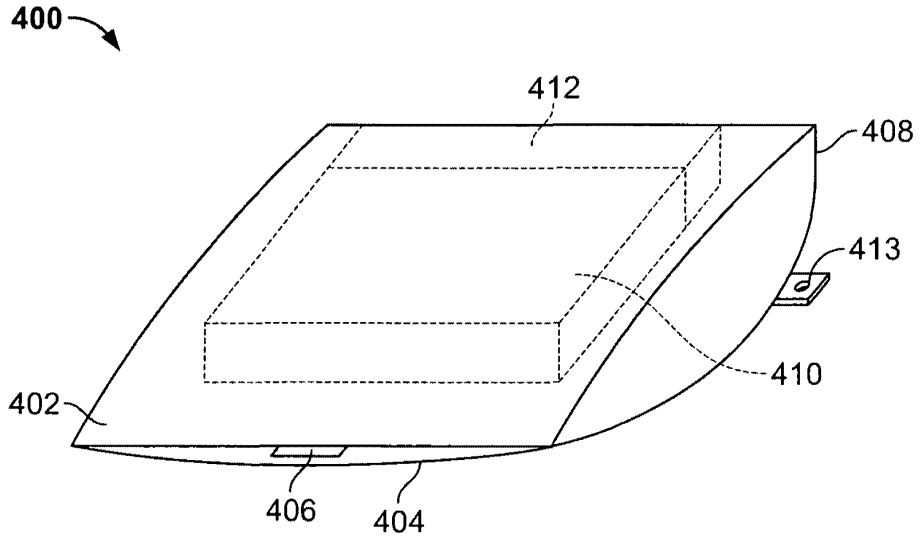


FIG. 7A

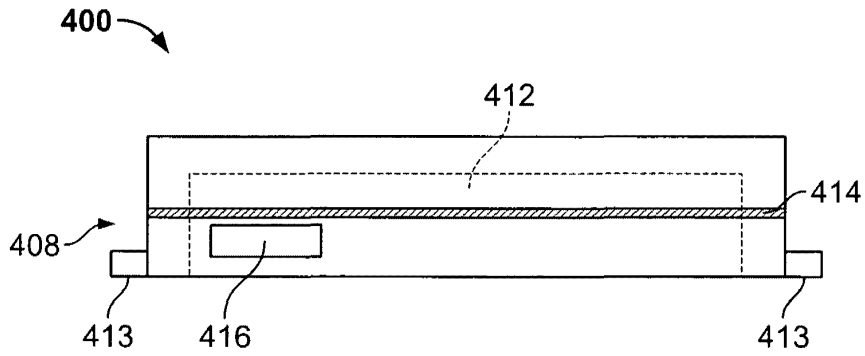


FIG. 7B

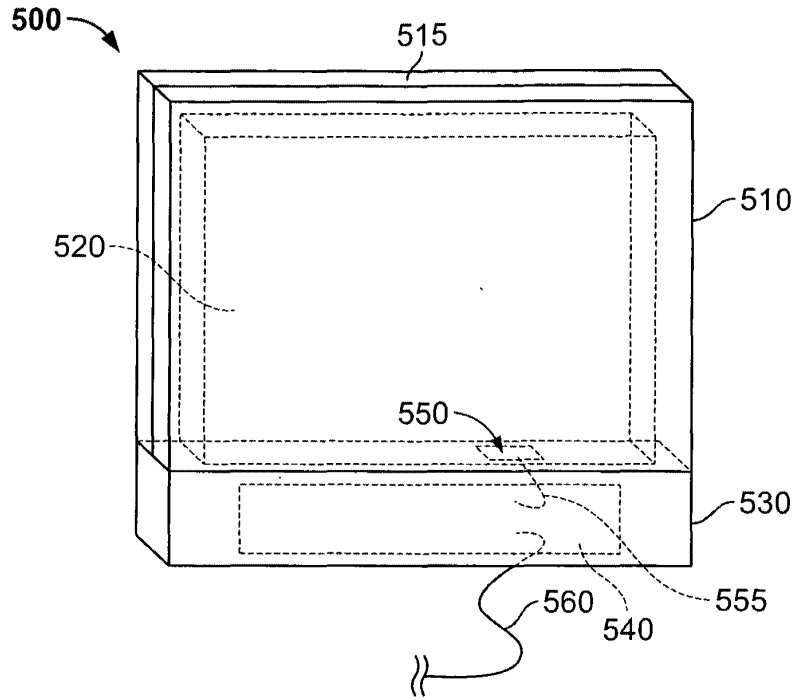


FIG. 8A

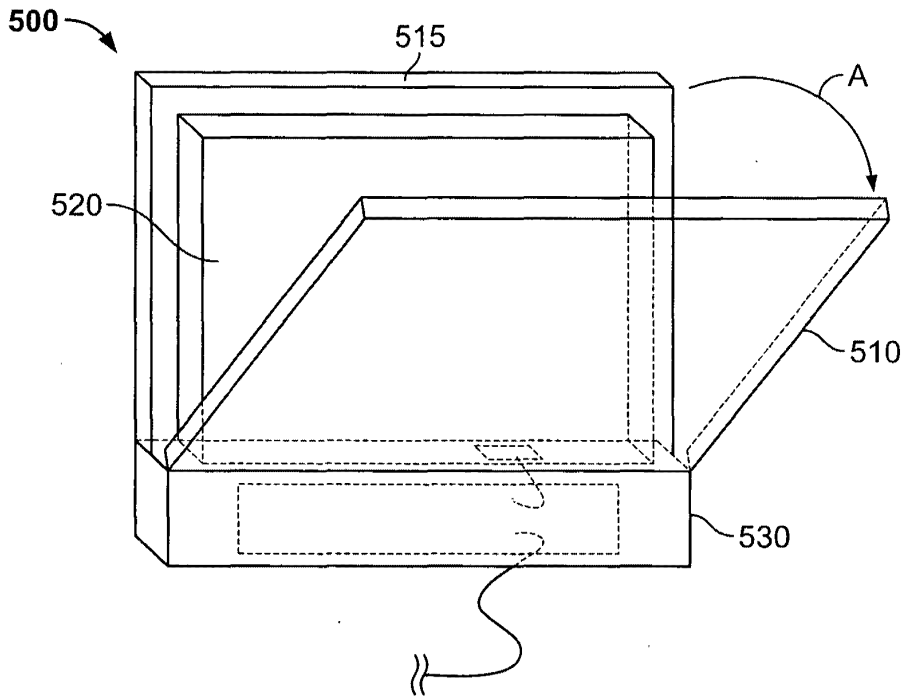


FIG. 8B

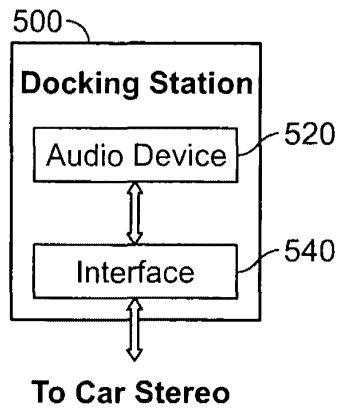


FIG. 9

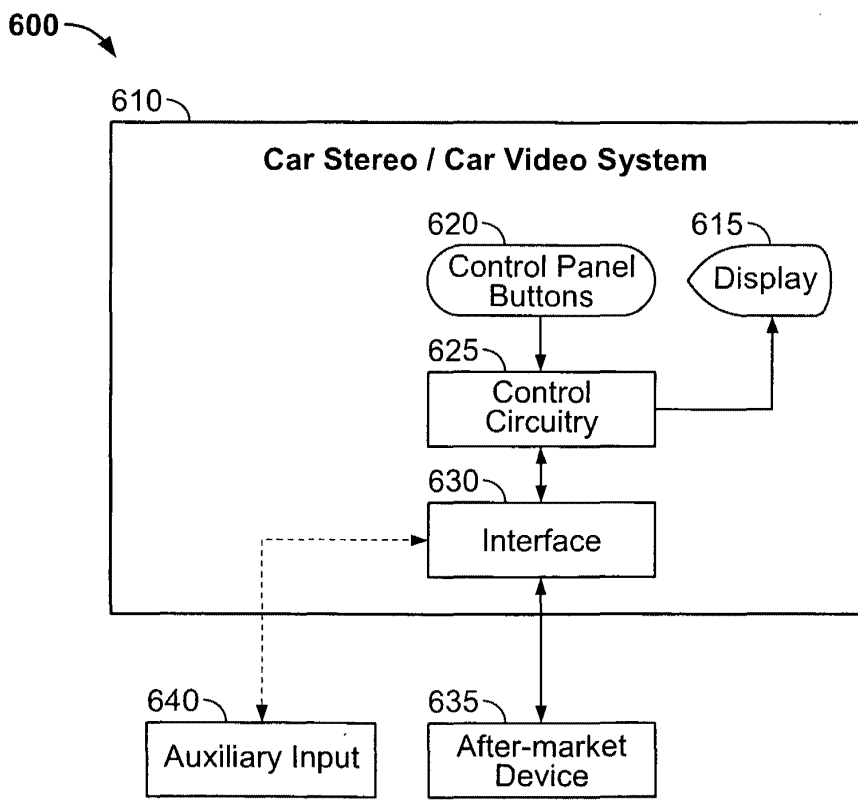


FIG. 10

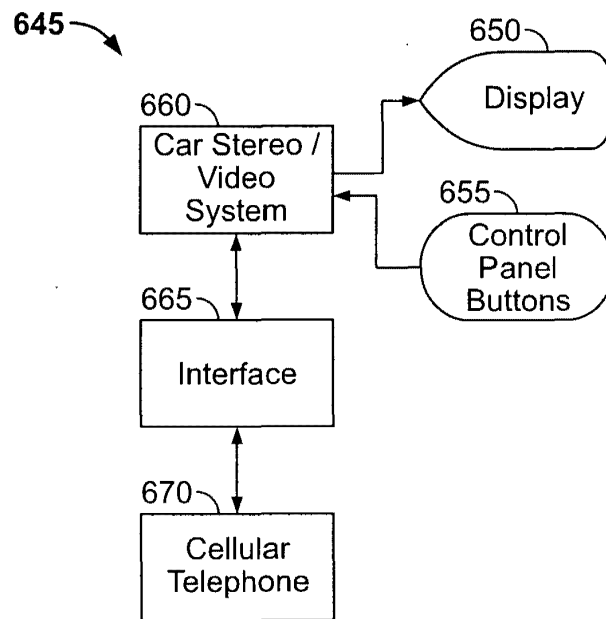


FIG. 11A

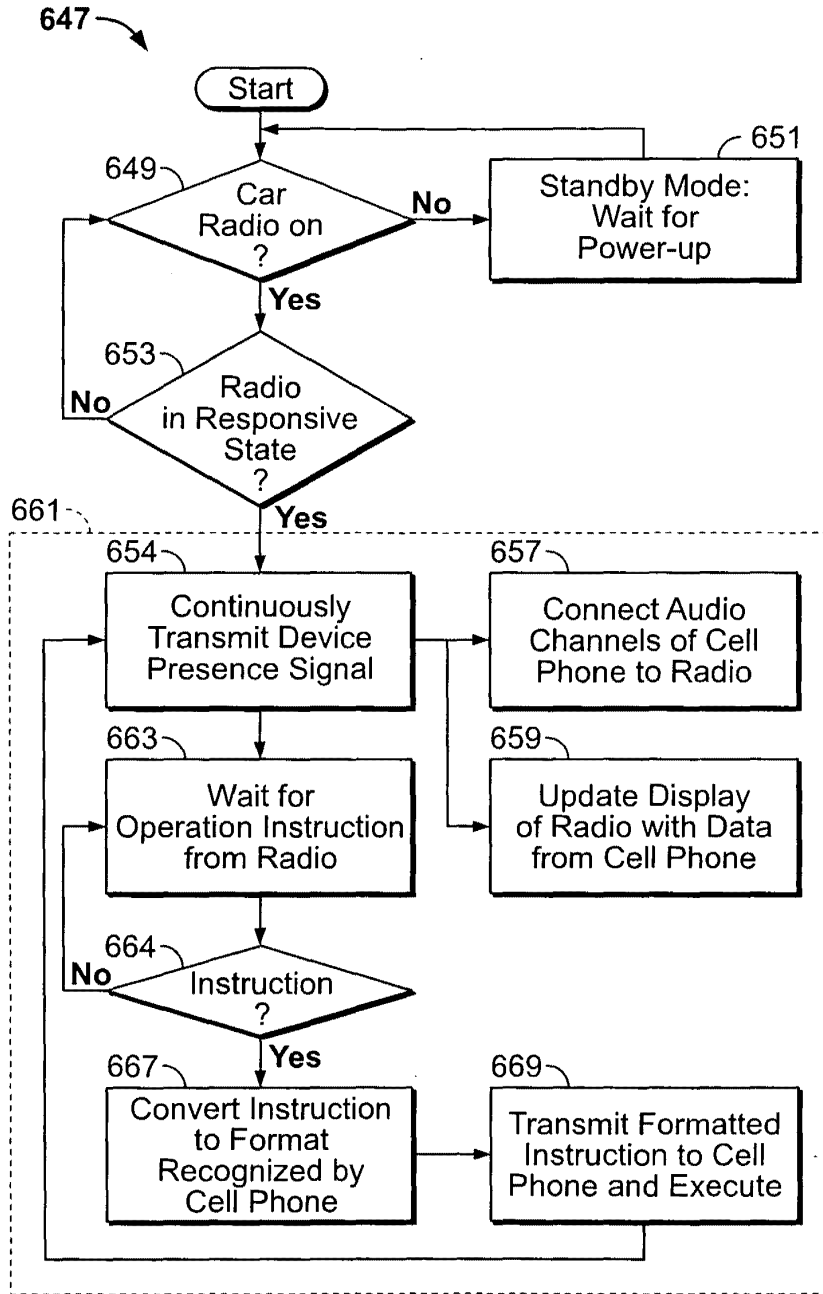


FIG. 11B

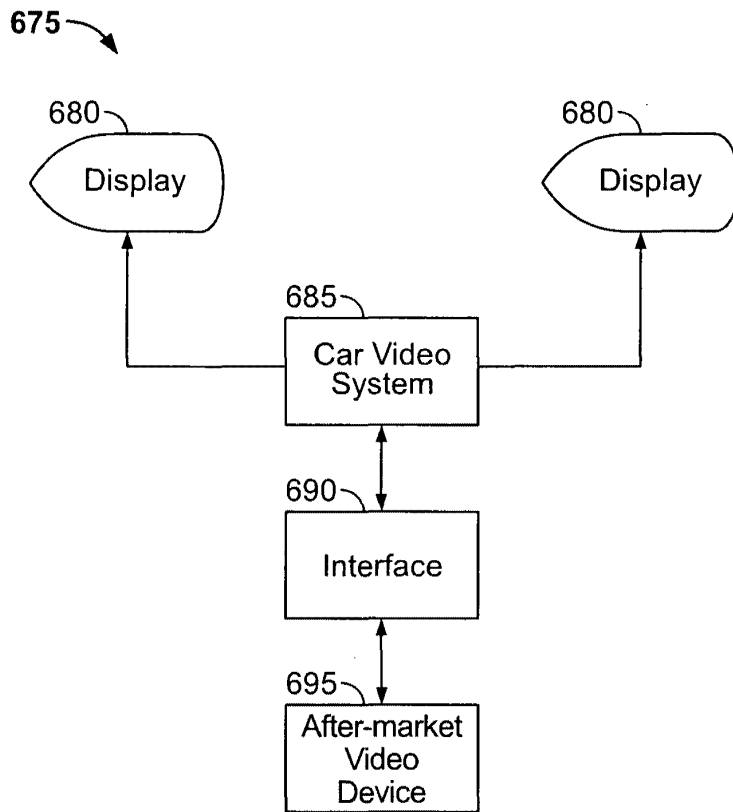


FIG. 12A

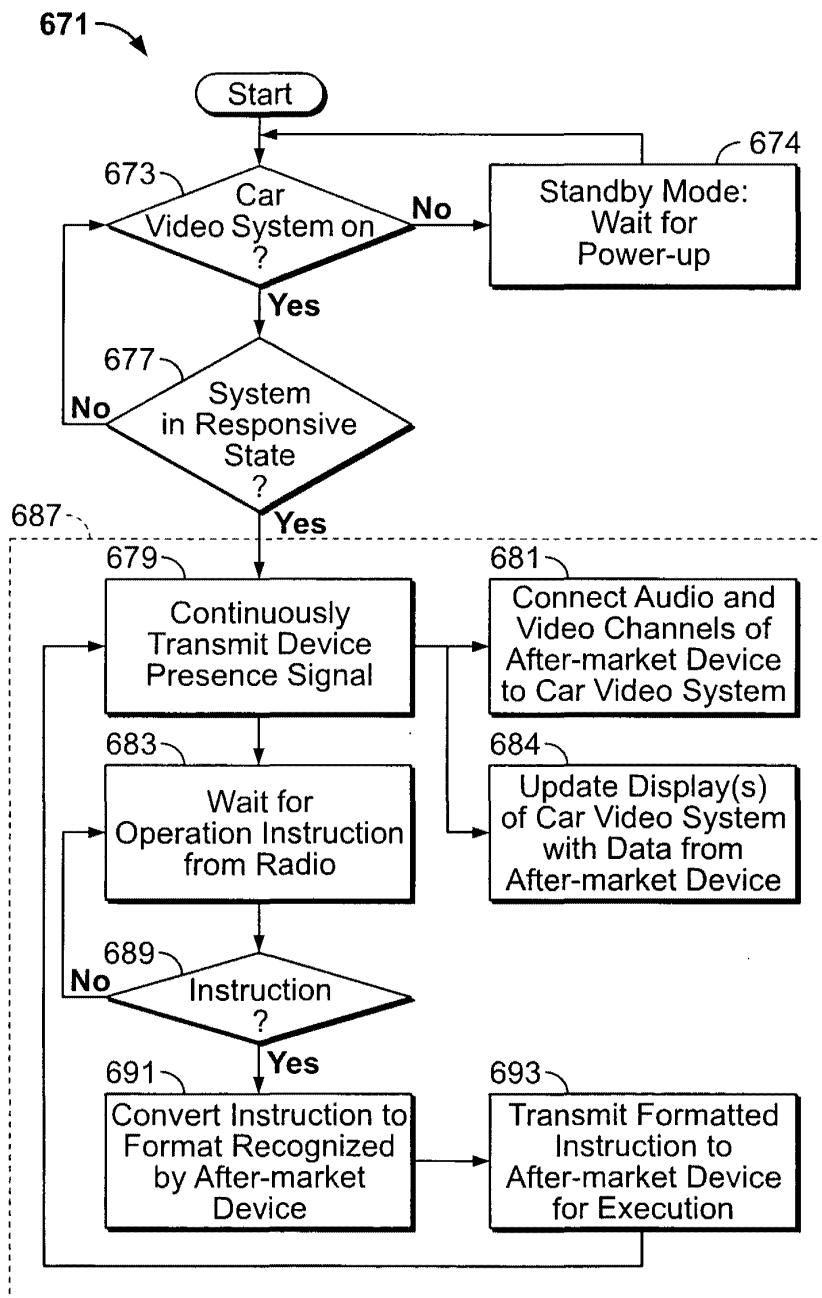


FIG. 12B

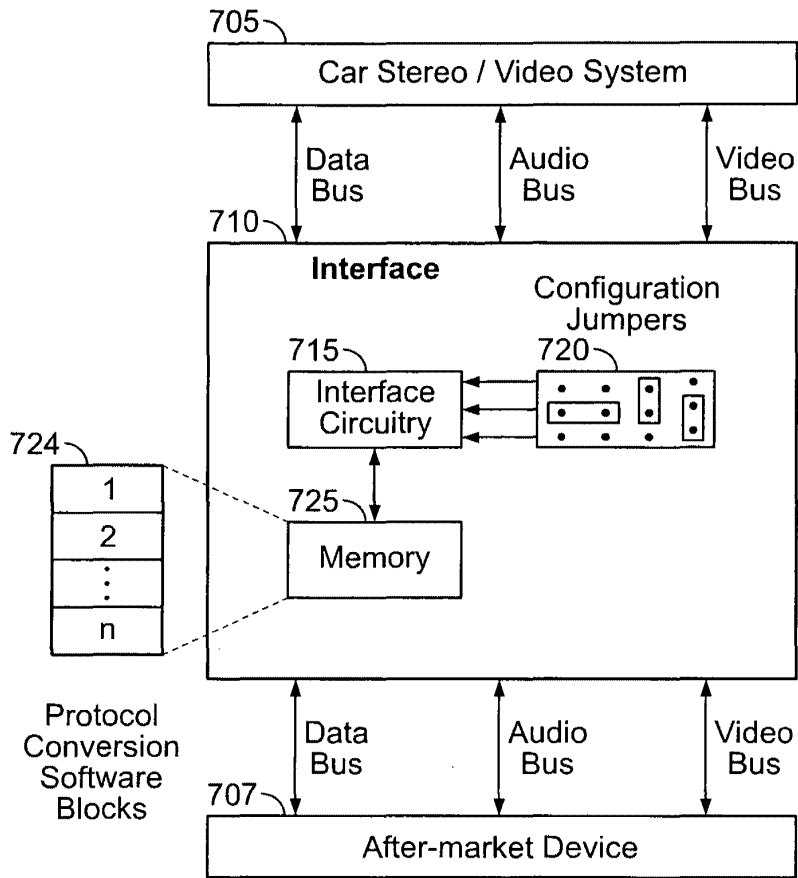


FIG. 13A

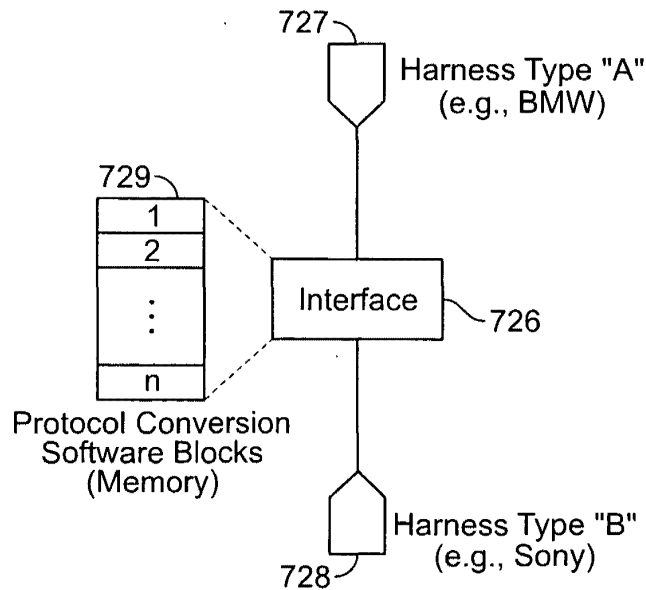


FIG. 13B

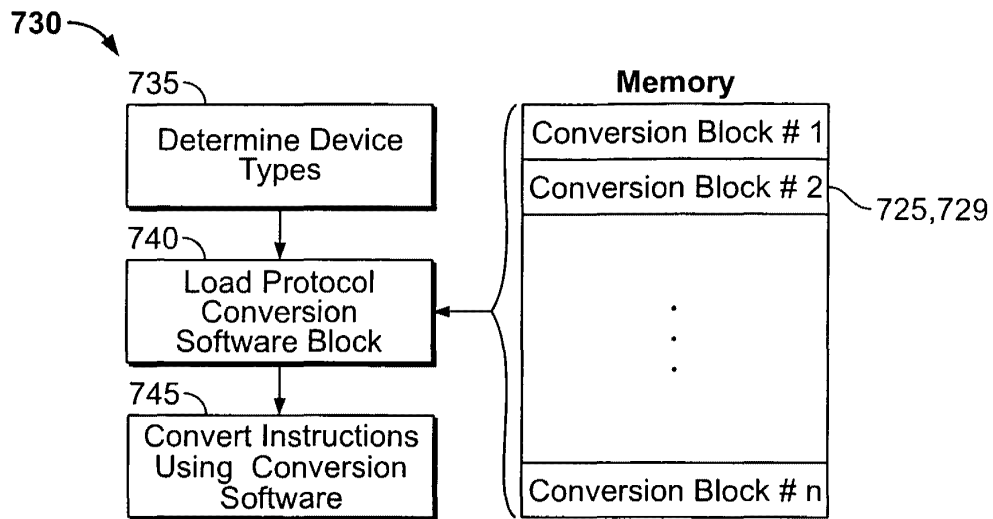


FIG. 14

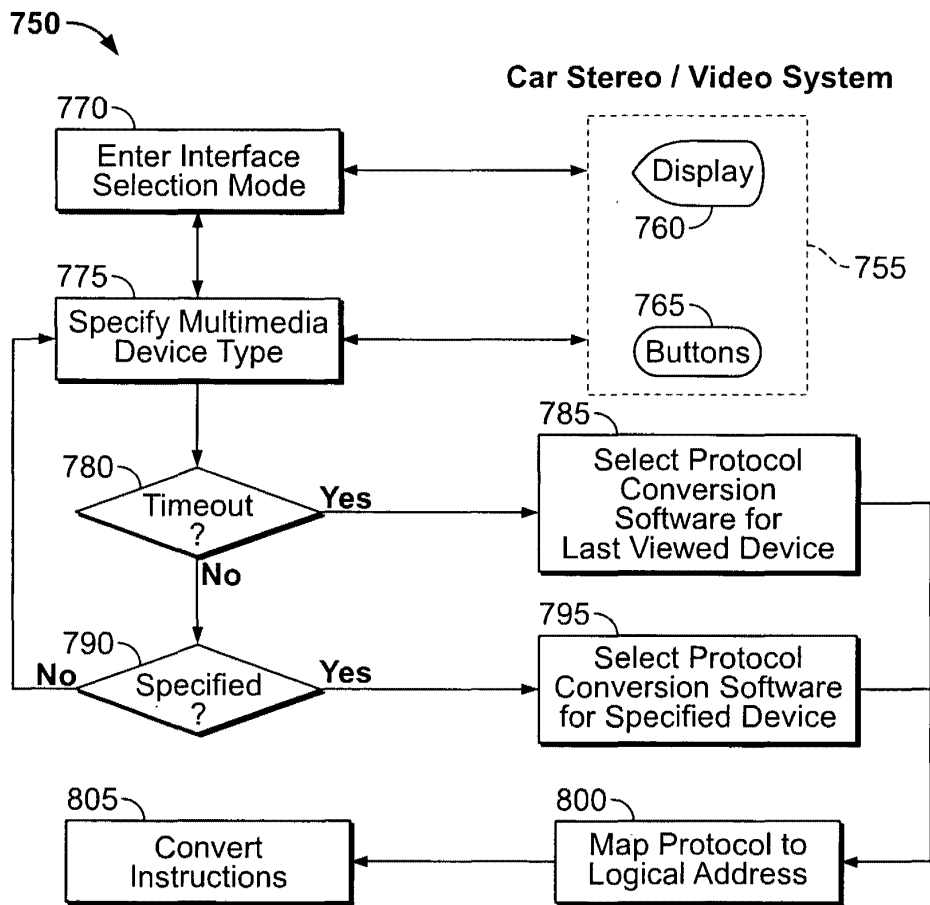


FIG. 15

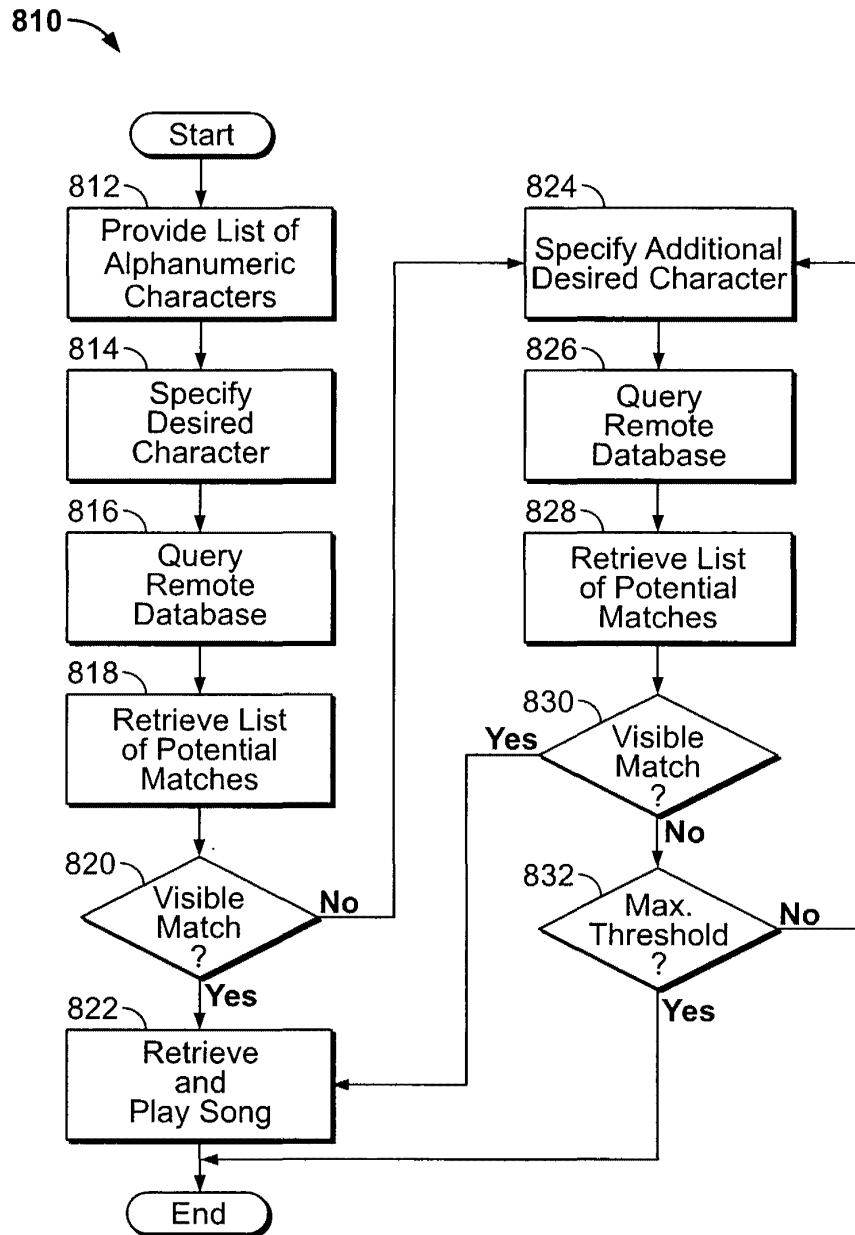


FIG. 16

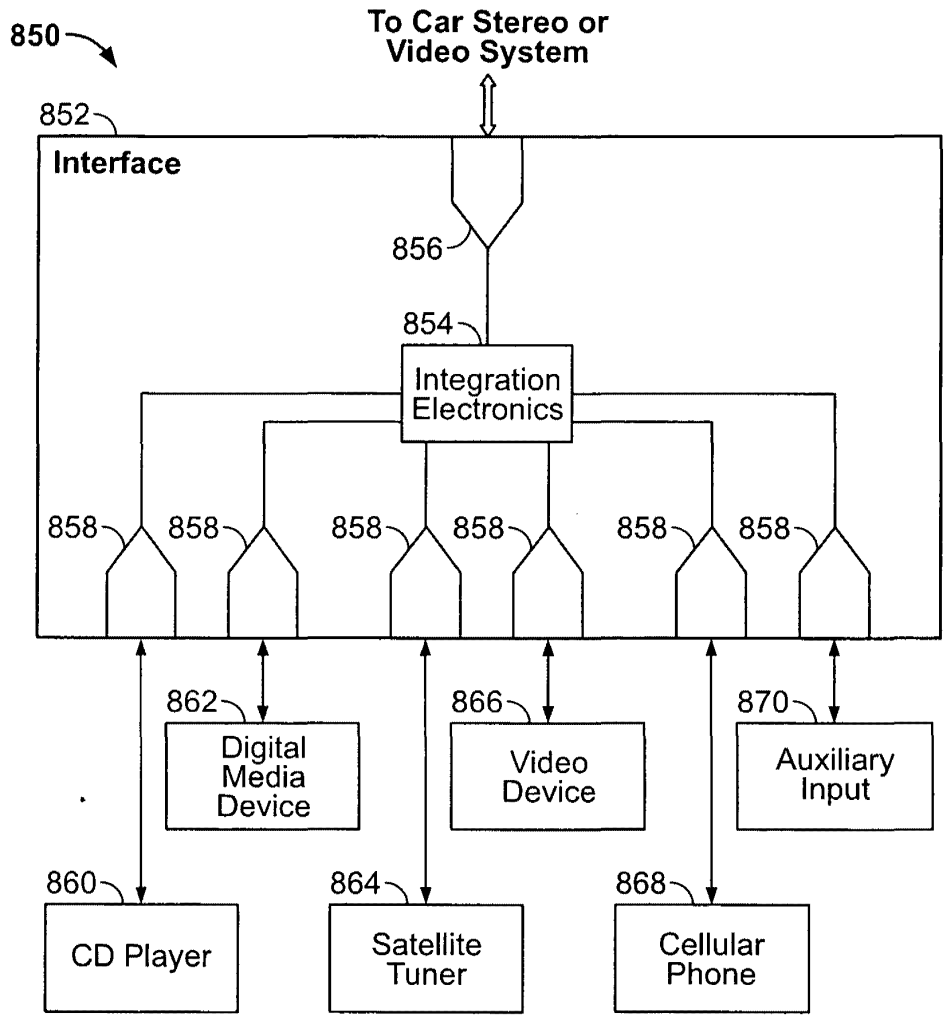


FIG. 17

FIG. 18

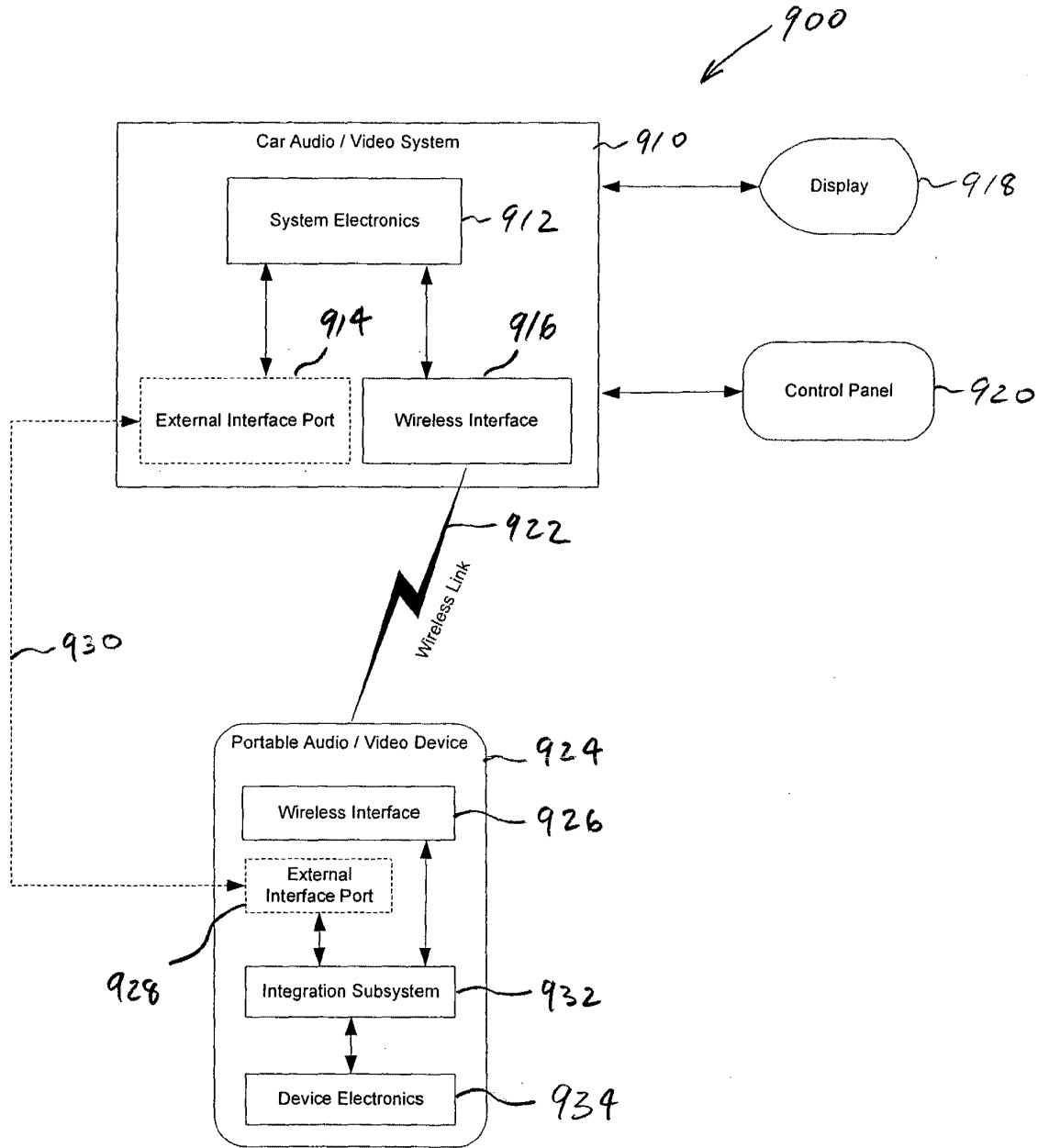


FIG. 19

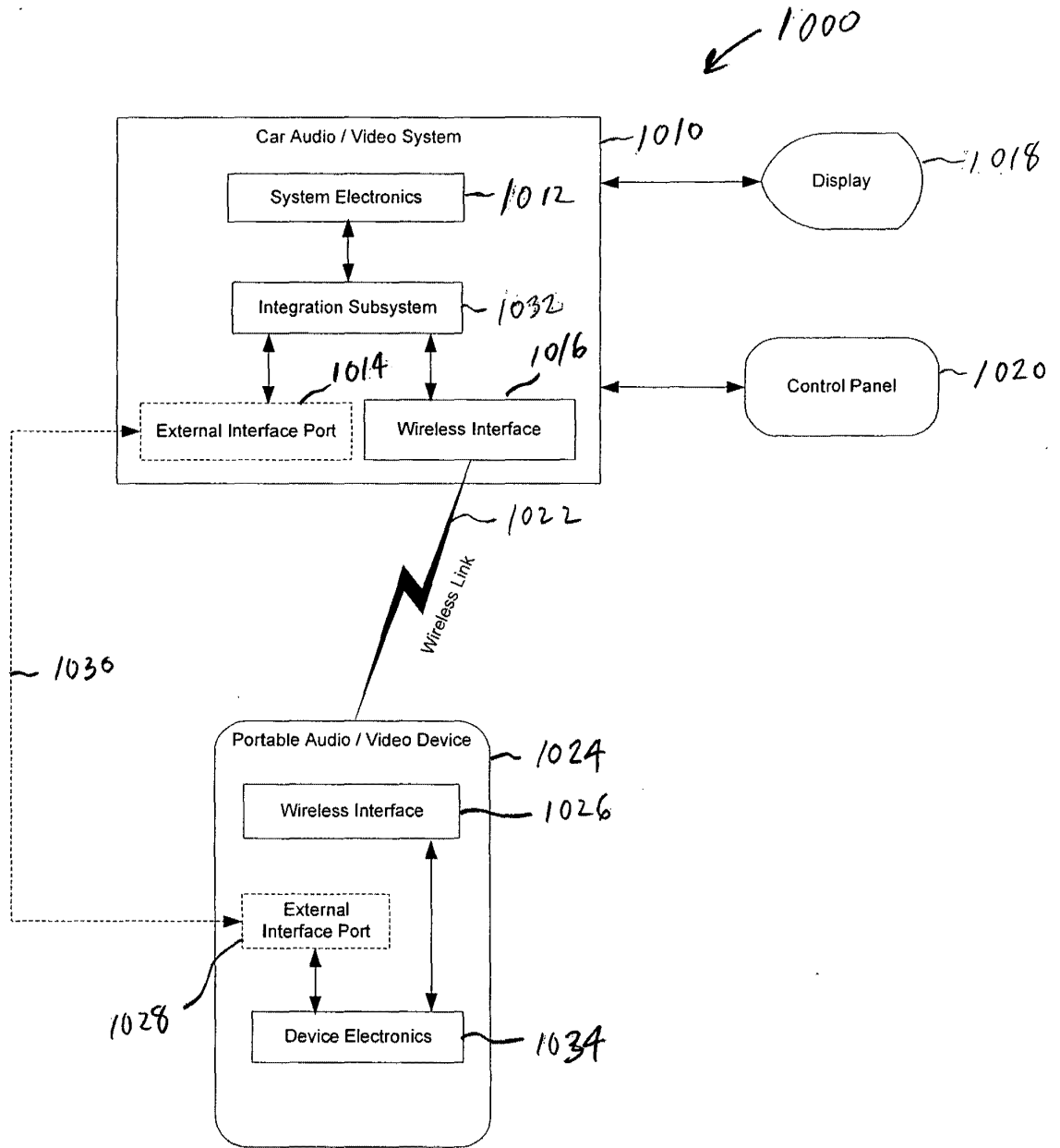


FIG. 20

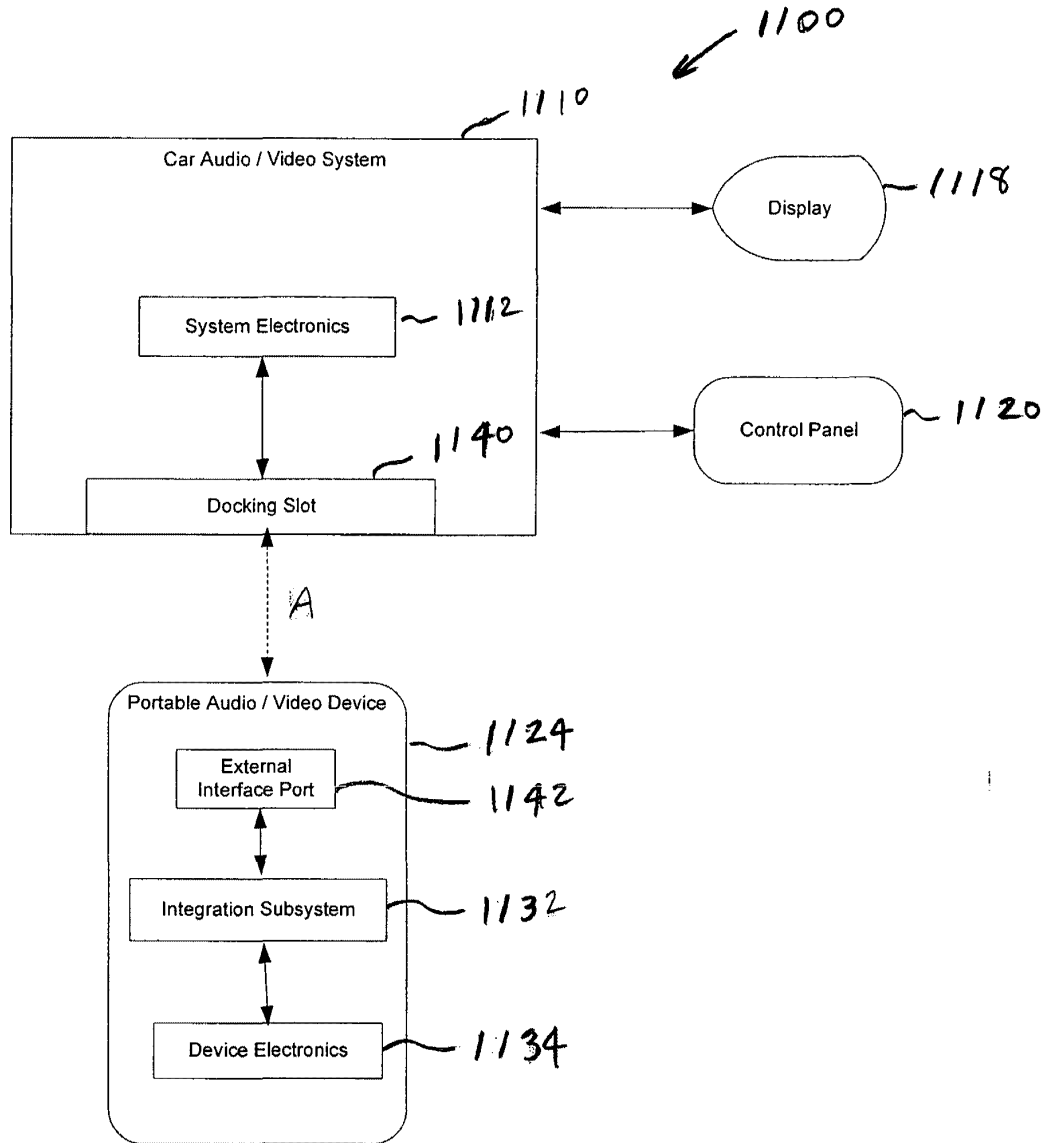


FIG. 21

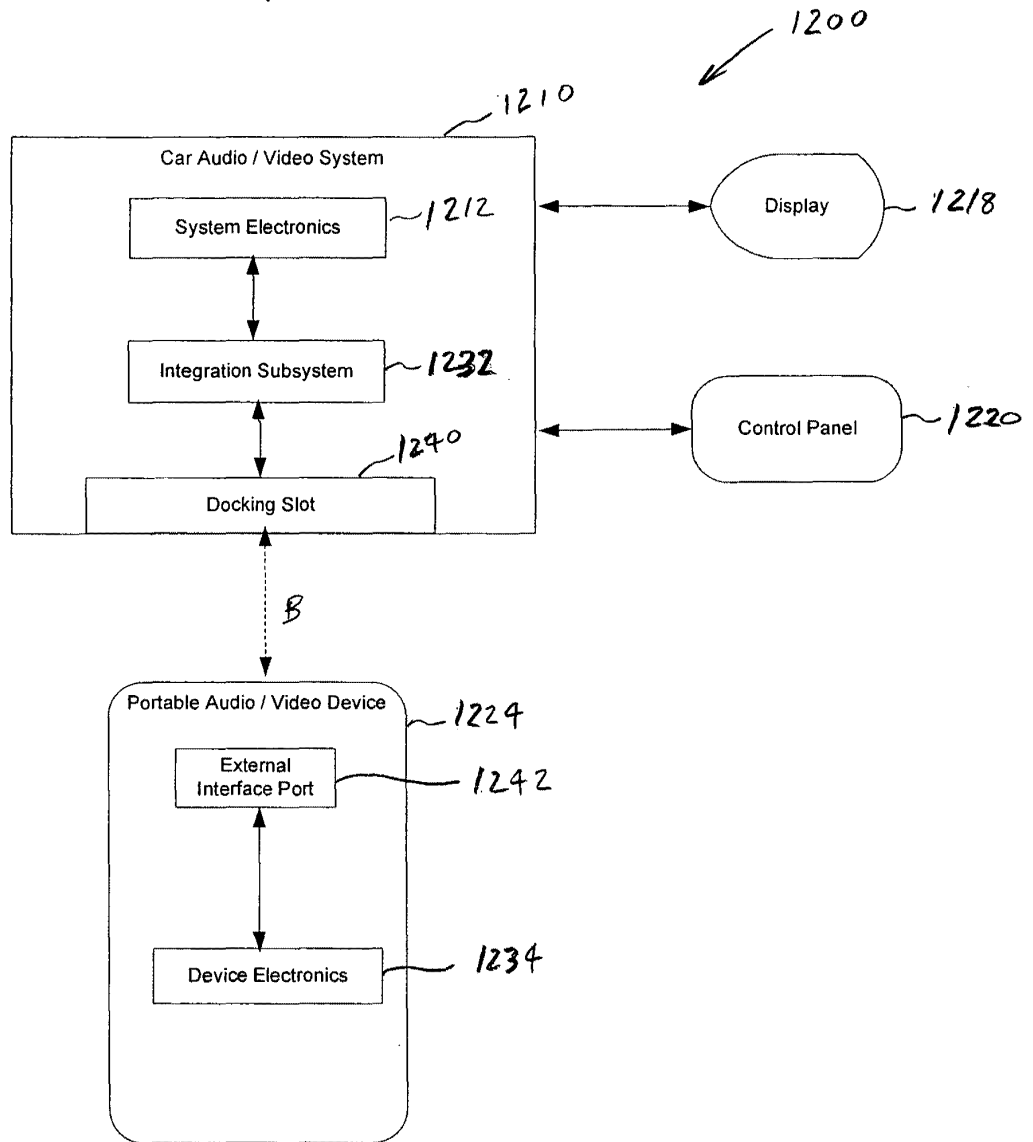


FIG. 22

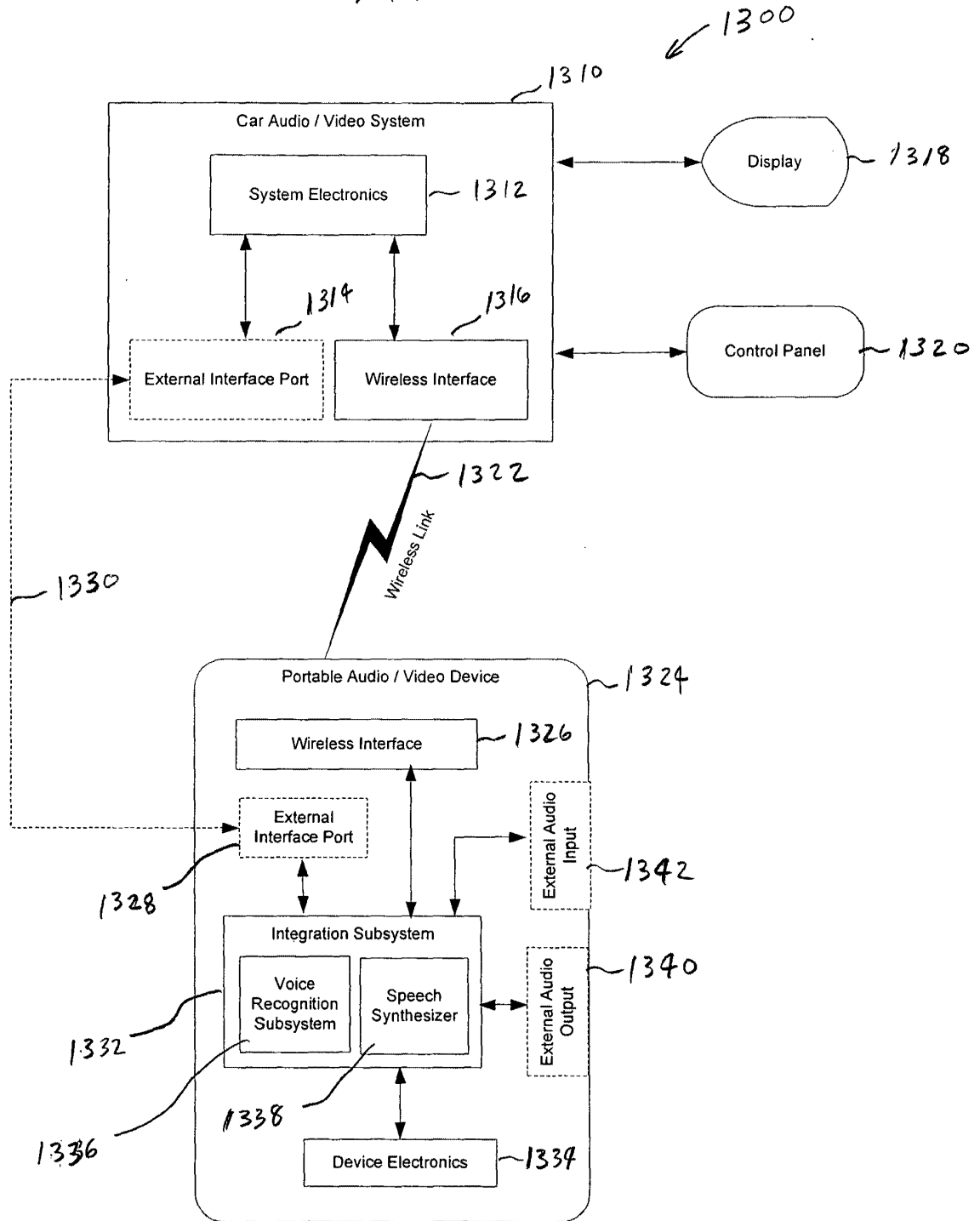


FIG. 23

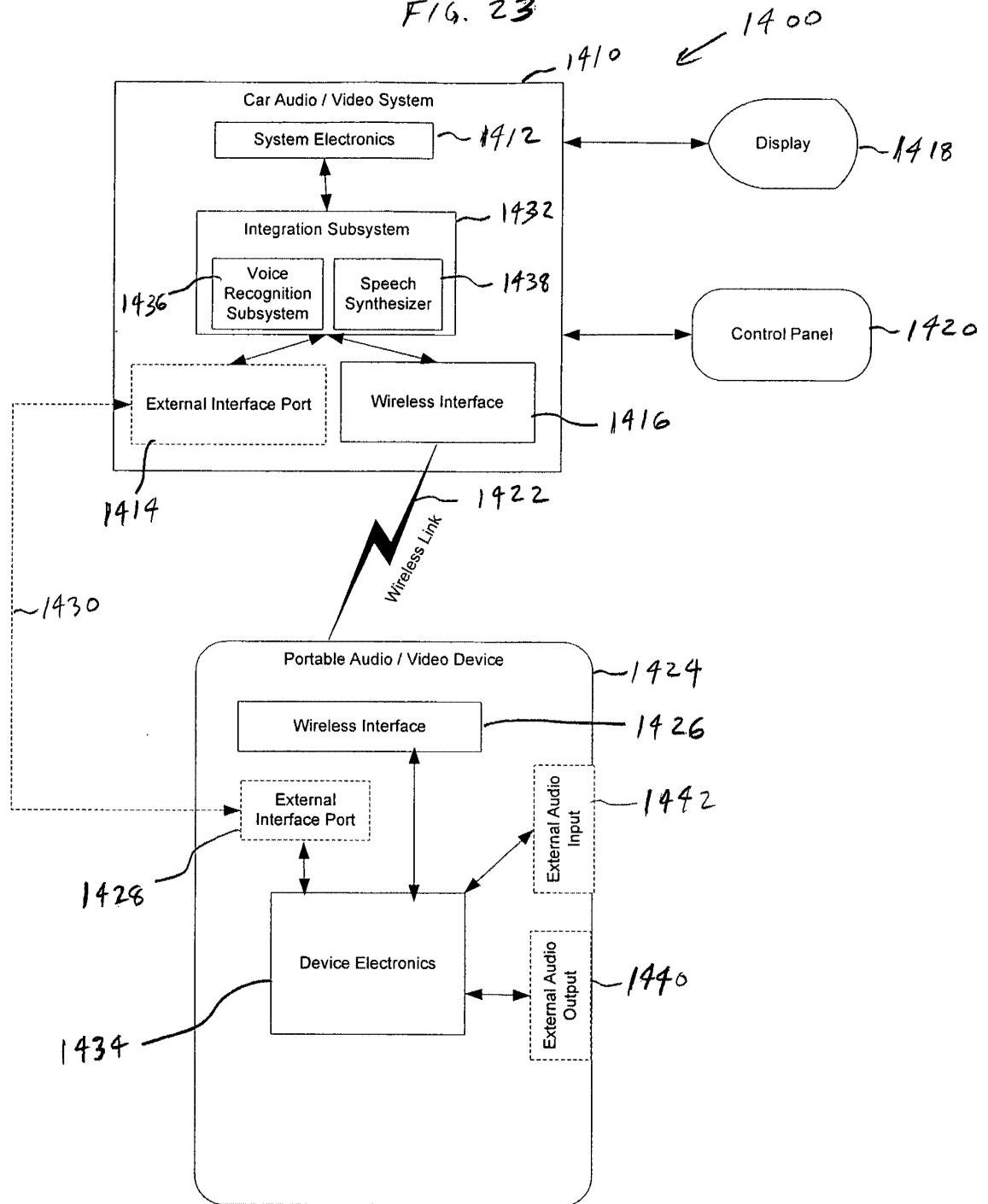
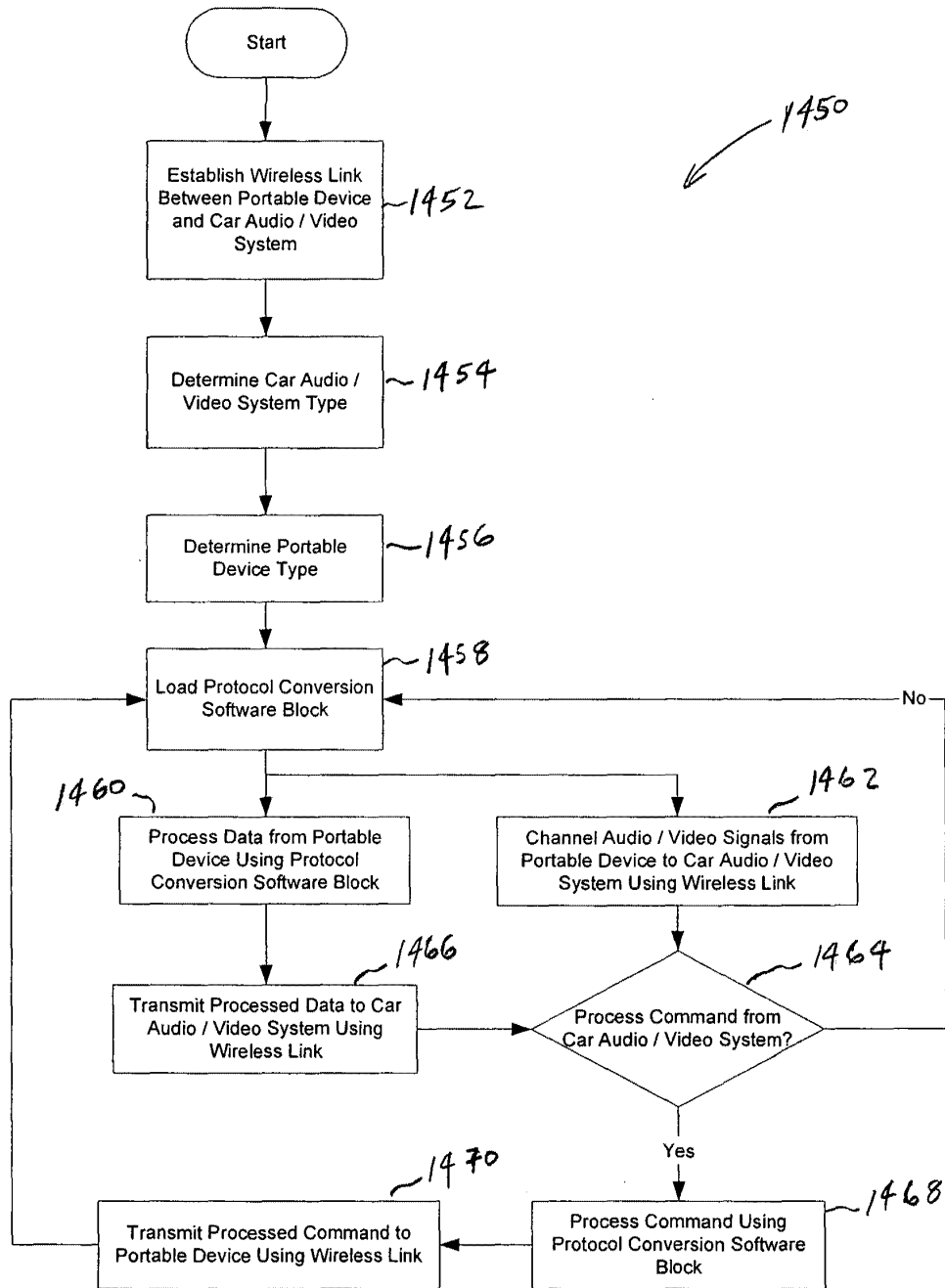


FIG. 24



DECLARATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY
(Patent, Design or C-I-P Application)

As a below-named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are stated below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled: MULTIMEDIA DEVICE INTEGRATION SYSTEM the specification of which

is attached hereto
_____ was filed on _____ as Application Serial No. _____ and was amended on _____
(if applicable)

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above-entitled specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in 37 C.F.R. §1.56.

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under 35 U.S.C. §119(a)-(d) or §365(b) of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate, or §365(a) of any PCT International application which designated at least one country other than the United States, listed below and have also identified below, by checking the box, any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate, or PCT International application having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

PRIOR FOREIGN APPLICATION(S)

COUNTRY	APPLICATION NO.	DATE OF FILING (day, month, year)	PRIORITY CLAIMED UNDER 35 U.S.C. 119
			YES ___ NO ___
			YES ___ NO ___

LISTING OF FOREIGN APPLICATIONS CONTINUED ON PAGE 2 HEREOF: YES ___ NO ___

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. §119(e) of any United States provisional application(s) listed below.

_____ (Application Serial No.) _____ (Filing Date)

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. §120 of any United States application(s), or §365(c) of any PCT International application designating the United States, listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application or PCT International application in the manner provided by the first page of 35 U.S.C. §112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in 37 C.F.R. §1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

<u>11/071,667</u> (Application Serial No.)	<u>March 3, 2005</u> (Filing Date)	<u>Pending</u> (Status: patented, pending, abandoned)
<u>10/732,909</u> (Application Serial No.)	<u>December 10, 2003</u> (Filing Date)	<u>Pending</u> (Status: patented, pending, abandoned)
<u>10/316,961</u> (Application Serial No.)	<u>December 11, 2002</u> (Filing Date)	<u>Pending</u> (Status: patented, pending, abandoned)

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following attorney(s) and/or agent(s) to prosecute this application and transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith: RALPH W. SELITTO, JR., Reg. No. 26,996; MICHAEL R. FRISCIA, Reg. No. 33,884; JOHN K. KIM, Reg. No. 37,002; and all other practitioners associated with Customer Number 27614.

SEND CORRESPONDENCE TO: Michael R. Friscia McCarter & English, LLP Four Gateway Center 100 Mulberry Street Newark, NJ 07102	DIRECT TELEPHONE CALLS TO: (973) 639-8493
--	--

Full Name of Inventor #1	Last Name: Marlowe	First Name: Ira	Middle Name:
Residence & Citizenship	City: Fort Lee	State or Foreign Country: NJ	Country of Citizenship: USA
Post Office Address	Post Office Address: 6403 Hilltop Court	City: Fort Lee	State or Country and Zip Code: NJ 07102
Full Name of Inventor #2	Last Name:	First Name:	Middle Name:
Residence & Citizenship	City:	State or Foreign Country:	Country of Citizenship:
Post Office Address	Post Office Address:	City:	State or Country and Zip Code:

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon.

Signature of Inventor #1	Signature of Inventor #2
Date:	Date:

LISTING OF INVENTORS CONTINUED ON PAGE 2 HEREOF: YES ___ NO X ___

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD Substitute for Form PTO-875	Application or Docket Number 11,475,847
---	---

APPLICATION AS FILED – PART I

(Column 1) (Column 2)

SMALL ENTITY

OR OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY

FOR	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA
BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))		
SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (l), or (m))		
EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))		
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(j))	91	71
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	7	4
APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is \$250 (\$125 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR	
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))		

RATE (\$)	FEE (\$)
	150
	250
	100
X\$ 25	1775
X\$100	400
180	
TOTAL	2675

RATE (\$)	FEE (\$)
	300
	500
	200
X\$50	
X\$200	
360	
TOTAL	1000

* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.

APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II

(Column 1) (Column 2) (Column 3)

SMALL ENTITY

OR OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY

AMENDMENT A	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	MINUS	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	EQUALS	PRESENT EXTRA
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=
Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	
Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))					
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))					

RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)
X =	
X =	
180	
TOTAL ADD'T FEE	

RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)
X =	
X =	
360	
TOTAL ADD'T FEE	

(Column 1) (Column 2) (Column 3)

AMENDMENT B	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	MINUS	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	EQUALS	PRESENT EXTRA
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=
Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	
Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))					
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))					

RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)
X =	
X =	
N/A	
TOTAL ADD'T FEE	

RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)
X =	
X =	
N/A	
TOTAL ADD'T FEE	

- * If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
 - ** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
 - *** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
- The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.16. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.